ŠKODA

OWNER´S MANUAL



ŠKODA Octavia


5E0012720AK

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

The description of the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help, as well as technical vehicle data, are included in this Owner's Manual.

Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because the operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

When using the vehicle, the general binding country-specific legal requirements (e.g. transporting children, deactivating the airbag, tyre use, road traffic, etc.) must always be observed.

Please always pay attention when driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO

5E0012720AK

Table of Contents

Liability for defects and ŠKODA Warranty for new cars 5

Printed Owner's Manual 7

Online Owner's Manual 8

Notes 9

Structure of the Owner's Manual and further information 10

Abbreviations

Safety

Passive Safety 12
- General information 12
- Correct and safe seated position 12

Seat belts 15
- Using seat belts 15
- Inertia reel and belt pretensioners 17

Airbag system 18
- Description of the airbag system 18
- Airbag deactivation 21

Transporting children safely 22
- Child seat 22
- Fastening elements 25

Using the system

cockpit 29
- Overview 28

Instruments and warning lights 30
- Instrument cluster 30
- Warning lights 32

Information system 41
- Driver information system 41
- Operation of the information system 43
- Driving data (Multifunction display) 44
- MAXI DOT display 46
- Service interval display 48
- SmartGate 48

Unlocking and opening 51
- Unlocking and locking 51
- Anti-theft alarm system 55
- Manually operated tailgate 56
- Electric boot lid 57
- Window operation 59
- Panoramic tilt / slide sunroof 61

Lights and visibility 64
- Light 64
- Interior lighting 69
- Viisibility 70
- Windscreen wipers and washers 72
- Rear view mirror 73

Seats and head restraints 76
- Front seats 76
- Rear seats 79
- Headrests 80
- Seat heaters 81

Useful features 82
- Interior fittings 82
- Electrical sockets 90
- Ashtray and cigarette lighter 91
- Tablet holder 92

Transport of cargo 93
- Luggage compartment and transporting objects 93
- Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate) 100
- Net partition 102
- Transport on the roof rack 103

Heating and ventilation 104
- Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic 104
- Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 108

Infotainment

Introductory information 112
- Important information 112
- Infotainment overview 113

Infotainment operation 116
- Infotainment operation 116
- Voice control 119
- Software update 122

Infotainment settings - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero 122
- Infotainment system settings 122
- Radio menu settings 125
- Media menu settings 126
- Image menu settings 126
- Video DVD menu settings 126
- Telephone menu settings 126
- SmartLink menu settings 128
- Navigation menu settings 128

Infotainment settings - Swing 130
- Infotainment system settings 130
- Radio menu settings 131
- Media menu settings 132
- Telephone menu settings 132

Radio 133
- Operation 133

Media 136
Operation 136
Audio sources 139

Images 144
Image viewer 144

Video DVD 145
Video player 145

Media Command 147
Operation 147

Telephone 149
Introductory information 149
Pair and connect 152
Use the SIM card in the external module 154
rSAP 155
Telephone functions 157
Text messages (SMS) 161

Hotspot (WLAN) and data connection 163
Hotspot (WLAN) 163
Data connection 164

SmartLink 165
Introductory information 165
Android Auto 166
Apple CarPlay 167
MirrorLink® 167

Navigation 169
Introductory information 169
Search for destination and enter 171
Import my destinations 175
Map 176
Route guidance 179
Route 181
Waypoint mode 183
Traffic reports 185

Vehicle systems 187
CAR Vehicle settings 187

Driving

Starting-off and Driving 188
Starting and stopping the engine 188
START-STOPsystem 190
Brakes and Parking 191
Manual shifting of gears and pedals 193
Automatic transmission 194
Running in and economical driving 196
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 198

Assist systems 199
General information 199
Braking and stabilisation systems 200
OFF ROADmode 203
Parking aid (Park Pilot) 204
Reversing camera 207
Park Assist 209
Cruise Control System 212
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 214
Front Assist 219
Select the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection) 221
Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist) 223
Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist) 224
Traffic sign recognition 226
Fatigue detection 228
Tyre pressure monitoring 229

Towing device and trailer 230
Hitch 230
Using hitch 235

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance 240
Service work, adjustments and technical alterations 240
Service intervals 242
Cleaning and care 244

Inspecting and replenishing 248
Fuel 248
Engine compartment 252
Engine oil 255
Coolant 256
Brake fluid 257
Vehicle battery 258

Wheels 260
Wheels and tyres 260
Operating in winter conditions 263

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help 265
Emergency equipment 265
Changing a wheel 266
Breakdown kit 270
Jump-starting 272
Towing the vehicle 273
Remote - replacing battery 275
Emergency unlocking / locking of doors 276
Replacing windscreen wiper blades 277

Fuses and light bulbs 278
Fuses 278
Bulbs 282

Technical data

Technical data 288
Basic vehicle data 288
Vehicle-specific details per engine type 296

Index

Liability for defects and ŠKODA Warranty for new cars

Materials defect liability
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a vendor, is liable to you for material damage to your new ŠKODA car, ŠKODA Genuine Parts or ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in accordance with statutory regulations and the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the materials defect liability, ŠKODA AUTO grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as "ŠKODA warranty)," according to the conditions described below.

As part of the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA AUTO will provide the following services.
- Free repair of faulty components or vehicle defects that occur within two years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of paint work defects on your vehicle that occur within three years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of corrosion caused by rust on the bodywork of your vehicle that occurs within twelve years from the start of the warranty. Only corrosion of body panels from the inside to the outside is included in the definition of corrosion caused by rust on the bodywork and covered by the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of warranty is the date on which the new car is handed over to the initial purchaser by the ŠKODA Partner[1]. This date must be noted down by the ŠKODA Partner in the Owner's Manual for your vehicle » *in the section on the documentation of the vehicle handover*.

Vehicle repairs may be carried out either by replacing the faulty part or by repairing it. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty. In particular, there shall be no claims for replacement, cancellation, provision of a courtesy vehicle for the duration of repairs or compensation for damages.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner in a country of the European Economic Area (i.e. the countries of the European Union, Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein) or in Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner in one of these countries.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland.

A prerequisite for carrying out work under the ŠKODA warranty is that all service work has been carried out in a timely and technically correct manner and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions. It must be proven that service work has been carried out properly and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions when making a claim on the ŠKODA warranty. In the event of a missed service or failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions, you may still be entitled to warranty claims as long as you can prove that the missed service or the failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions was not the cause of the defect.

Natural wear and tear to your vehicle is not covered by the ŠKODA warranty. The ŠKODA warranty also does not cover faults to bodywork, installations or conversions provided by third parties, or vehicle faults caused as a result. The same applies to accessories that were not installed and/or delivered ex-factory.

In addition, this warranty does not apply if the defect was caused by one of the following.
- Unauthorised use, improper handling (e.g. use in racing competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unauthorised modifications to your vehicle.
- Non-compliance with instructions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.
- External causes or influences (e.g. accidents, hail, flooding etc.).

[1] Due to the requirements of the country-specific regulations which are generally binding, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

- Parts fitted on or in the vehicle, whose use has not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, or modification of the vehicle in a manner not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- Damage caused by you that was not immediately seen to by a specialist garage or was not rectified properly.

It is the customer's responsibility to prove that he/she is not the cause of the damage.

This ŠKODA warranty does not affect the purchaser's statutory rights from materials defect liability from the vehicle vendor and other potential claims from product liability laws.

Mobility warranty
The mobility warranty provides a sense of security when travelling in your vehicle.

If your vehicle breaks down on the road due to an unexpected failure, services to keep you moving are provided under the mobility guarantee, which include the following services for you: Breakdown assistance at the roadside and towing to ŠKODA Service partners, technical assistance on the phone or on-site commissioning.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA Service Partner may provide further services as required, such as replacement transportation (bus, train etc.) or a courtesy vehicle etc.

More information regarding terms and conditions for the provision of a mobility warranty for your vehicle can be obtained from your ŠKODA Partner. They will also provide you with detailed terms and conditions for the mobility warranty with respect to your vehicle. In the event that there is no mobility warranty coverage in place for your vehicle, you should check with any ŠKODA Service Partner about the possibility of a supplementary agreement.

Optional ŠKODA extended warranty
If you opted for a ŠKODA extended warranty when purchasing your new car, the two-year ŠKODA warranty with regards to all free warranty repairs is extended by the period you chose or until the chosen mileage limit has been reached, whichever occurs first.

The paint warranty and the warranty against corrosion described above are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA extended warranty does not apply to external and internal foils.

The information on the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA extended warranty is provided by your ŠKODA partner.

Note
The ŠKODA extended warranty is only available in some countries.

Printed Owner's Manual

In the printed Owner's Manual, the most important information relating to vehicle operation is included. The Owner's Manual with further detailed information is available in the **Online Version** on ŠKODAweb pages » Fig. 1 *on page 8*.

This Owner's Manual applies to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

This Owner's Manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment variants. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The range of equipment installed in your vehicle depends on the purchase contract for the vehicle. For questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **illustrations** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO pursues a policy of ongoing product and model development with all vehicles. Changes to the scope of delivery with regard to design, equipment and technology are therefore possible at any time. The information listed in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

Therefore legal claims cannot be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this Owner's Manual.

We recommend that **web pages** that are referred to in this Owner's Manual are displayed using the classic view. Not all necessary information may be displayed correctly if the mobile view is chosen.

Online Owner's Manual



Fig. 1
Online manual on the ŠKODA websites

The online Owner's Manual contains some detailed information, which is not listed in the printed version of the manual.

To **display the online Owner's Manual** proceed as follows.

1. Read the QR-Code » Fig. 1 **or** Enter the following address in your web browser.
   http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals
   The web page with a model overview of the ŠKODA brand is opened.
2. Select the desired model - a menu for the user manuals is displayed.
3. Select the construction period as well as the language.
4. Select one of the following manual types.
   - File in **pdf**format
   - **Online**version of the manual
   - Variant for the mobile device - **My ŠKODA App application**

Notes

Terms used

"Specialist" - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA Service Partner" - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to service ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA Partner" - A company that has been authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

"Press" - Short press (e.g. a button) within 1 s

"Hold" - Long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 s

Explanation of symbols

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings
- Situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible
- ® Trademark
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display
- Text display in the segment display
- → Marker to the next operation step

WARNING

Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure of the Owner's Manual and further information

Structure of the manual
The Owner's Manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Section** (e.g. Operating instructions) - the title of the section is shown down in the left-hand corner
  - **Main chapter** (e.g. Checking and refilling) - the title of the main chapter is shown down in the right-hand corner
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Engine oil)
      - 🕮 **Introductory information** - Module overview within the chapter, introductory information about the chapter content and, where appropriate, information relevant to the whole chapter
      - **Module** (e.g. Checking and refilling)

Information search
When searching for information in the Owner's Manual, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front" and "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
The volume, weight, speed and length data is given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this Owner's Manual, the screen on the MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, unless specified otherwise.

Emergency assistance
In case of breakdown, the breakdown service contact information required can be found in the following places.

- ▸ Contact details for the ŠKODA Partner (e.g. window sticker)
- ▸ Infotainment (Telephone - breakdown service / information service menu)
- ▸ ŠKODA mobile application
- ▸ ŠKODA web pages

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ACC	Adaptive cruise control
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CNG	compressed natural gas
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
COC	Declaration of conformity
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
RD	Rim depth
EU	European Union
G-TEC	Labelling for natural gas vehicles
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for output
LED	Lighting element type
M1	A passenger car constructed primarily for the transport of people
MCB	Multi-collision brake
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
MSR	Engine drag torque control

Abbreviation	Definition
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	personal identification number
Qi	Standard for wireless charging by electrical induction
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo charging and common-rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbo charging and direct injection
VIN	Vehicle identification number
W	Watt, unit of power
Wi-Fi	Wireless data network
XDS	Functional expansion of the electronic differential lock

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before setting off 12
Driving safety 12

In this section of the instructions you will find important information on the subject of passive safety. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

Other important safety information can also be found in the subsequent sections of this Owner's Manual. Therefore, the Owner's Manual should always be kept in the vehicle.

Before setting off

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Check the lights and turn signal lights are functioning correctly.
- Check the wiper function and the wiper blades for wear. Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed. Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- Secure all items of luggage.
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Protect children using a suitable child seat » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position » page 12, *Correct and safe seated position*.

Driving safety

For safety in traffic, the following precautions must be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol, drugs or similar).
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driver's correct seated position 13
Adjusting the steering wheel position 13
Passenger's correct seating position 14
Passengers' correct seating position on the rear seats 14

Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not sit only on the front area of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to one side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.

WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 22, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

WARNING

By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.

Driver's correct seated position

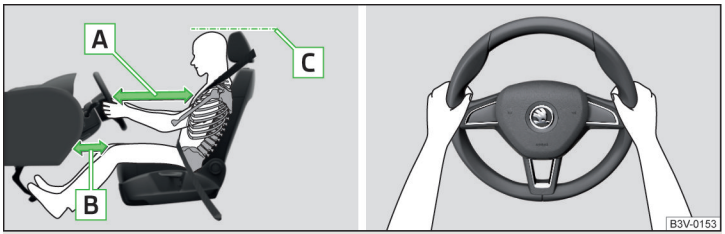


Fig. 2 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 13 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.

✓ For vehicles equipped with driver knee airbags, adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dashboard in the vicinity of the knee airbag» Fig. 2 - B.

✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.

✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm» Fig. 2 - A.

✓ Adjust the headrest so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of your head (not for seats with integrated headrests)» Fig. 2 - C.

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 15, *Using seat belts*.

WARNING

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position » Fig. 2. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). Otherwise, you could sustain serious injury to the arms, hands and head if the airbag is activated.
- Ensure there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get behind the pedals while driving. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Fig. 3 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 13 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swing the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 3.

› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in the direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the safety lever in the direction of arrow 3 to the stop.

WARNING

▪ Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
▪ The safety lever must always be locked so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – There is a risk of accident!

Passenger's correct seating position

Read and observe ! on page 13 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the headrests so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of the head» Fig. 2 *on page 13* - C (not for seats with integrated headrests).
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 15, *Using seat belts*.

WARNING

▪ A distance of least 25 cm to the dash panel should be maintained, otherwise the airbag system will not be able to protect you - There is a risk to life!
▪ Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

Passengers' correct seating position on the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 13 first.

For the safety of the passengers in the rear seats, and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the headrests so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of the head» Fig. 2 *on page 13* - C.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 15, *Using seat belts*.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct routing of seat belt 16
Fastening and unfastening seat belts 16

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

The seat belts reduce kinetic energy to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

When transporting a child the following instructions must be observed » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.

WARNING

- Fasten seat belts before every journey! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 12, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.

WARNING (Continued)

- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 79.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 247.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If damage to the parts of the seat belt system (e.g. the strap, the belt connectors, the retractor, the lock or similar) are detected, the seat belt in question must be replaced by a specialist immediately.
- Seat belts which have been subject to stress in an accident should be replaced by a specialist garage. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Correct routing of seat belt

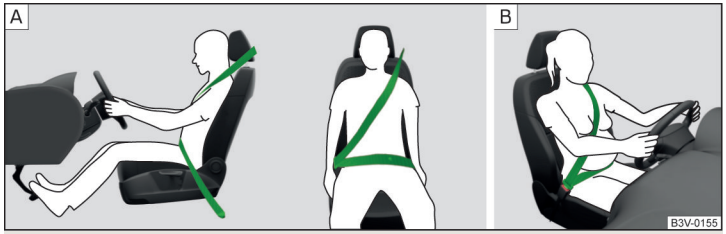


Fig. 4 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

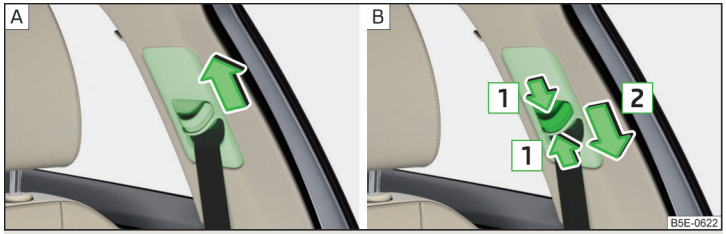


Fig. 5 **Seat belt height adjusters for front seats**

Read and observe ! on page 15 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The **shoulder belt** should be positioned approximately over the middle of your shoulder (under no circumstances across your neck) and lie flush to the chest» Fig. 4 - A.

The **lower part of the belt** should run across the pelvis (it should not lie on top of the stomach) and must always fit snugly» Fig. 4 - A.

For **pregnant women**, the lower part of the belt must be positioned as low down as possible across the pelvis, to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen» Fig. 4 - B.

Seat belt height adjusters for front seats

› Push the return pulley **upwards** in the direction of arrow» Fig. 5 - A.
› **Or**: push together the mechanism in the direction of arrows 1 and push the return pulley **downwards** in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 5 - B.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

! WARNING

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. pencils, spectacles, pens, keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

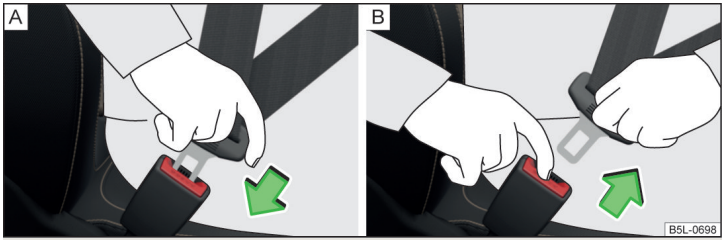


Fig. 6 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 15 first.

Before fastening the belt

› Adjust the head restraint properly (does not apply to seats with integrated head restraints).
› Adjust the seat (applies to the front seats).
› Adjust the belt height (applies to the front seats).

Fasten

› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.

› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 6 - A until it audibly clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

Release

› Grip the lock tongue and press the red button in the buckle» Fig. 6 - B, the lock tongue pops out.
› Guide the belt back by hand so that the seat belt does not twist and the webbing rolls up fully.

WARNING

The reel opening for the lock tongue must not be blocked otherwise the lock tongue will not lock into place properly.

Inertia reel and belt pretensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reels 17
Belt tensioners 17

Inertia reels

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel. The belts also block when during full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

If there is a collision of a certain severity, the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **minor** collisions, in the case of a roll-over and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including the removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description 18
Airbag deployment 19
Safety instructions 19

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side-on collisions.

The airbag will only provide optimum protection in conjunction with wearing the seat belt, the airbag is not a substitute for the seat belts.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 35.

System description

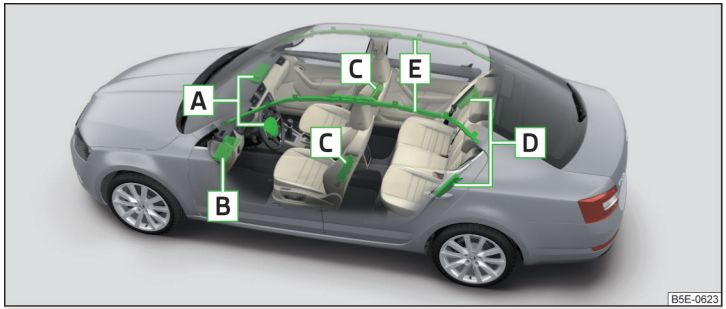


Fig. 7 **Airbag installation points**

Airbag installation points » Fig. 7

A Front airbags
B Driver's knee airbag
C Front side airbags
D Rear side airbags
E Head airbags

Front airbags - the forward thrust of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully-inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The front airbags can be identified by the lettering**AIRBAG** featured on the steering wheel and on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Driver´s knee airbag - The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

The knee airbag is provided with the lettering**AIRBAG** on the dashboard on the driver's side.

Side airbags - The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunged into the fully inflated airbag. The risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

The side air bags are marked by a label with the lettering**AIRBAG** on the front seat backrests. The rear side airbags are provided with the lettering**AIRBAG** in between the entrance area and the rear seat backrest.

Head airbags - The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The head airbags are provided with the lettering**AIRBAG**marked on the B-pillar cladding.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.

- Individual airbags.
- Warning light in the instrument cluster» page 35.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 21.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 21.

Airbag deployment



Fig. 8 **Inflated airbags**

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

When triggered, the airbag fills with gas and unfolds. The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

When the airbag inflates, smoke is released. This is not a sign of a fire in the vehicle.

Triggering conditions
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. The important factors here are the hardness of the object with which the vehicle collides, the angle of impact, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor in the deployment of the airbags is the degree of deceleration at the time. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag.
- Rear side airbag.
- Head airbag.

When an airbag is deployed, the following occurs.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- All the doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.
- The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - switch).

When there is no air bag deployment?
With **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

Safety instructions

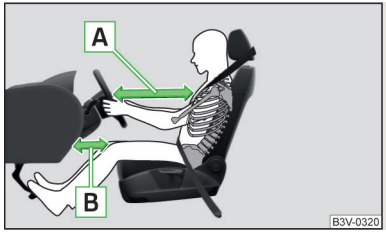


Fig. 9
Safe distance from the steering wheel and dash panel

! WARNING

General information

- **The seat belts and the airbag system can only offer optimum protection if the driver and passengers are seated properly** » page 12.
- The airbag unleashes enormous force when triggered, which can lead to serious injuries or fatalities if the driver and passengers are not seated properly. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 24.
- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.

WARNING (Continued)

- If the airbag has been deployed, the airbag system must then be replaced.
- In the area of the front airbag and the knee airbag, the surface of the steering wheel and the dashboard should be cleaned using only a dry cloth or one that has been dampened with water.

WARNING

Information about the front airbags

- For the driver and front passenger, it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or the panel » Fig. 9 - A, If you do not keep this distance, it means that the airbag system cannot protect you - There is a risk to life! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 21, *Airbag deactivation*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed.
- No other persons, animals or objects should be placed in front of the occupants in the front seats in the deployment area of the front airbags.
- The steering wheel and the surface of the dash panel on the passenger side must not be plastered, covered or modified in any way. No parts (e.g. cup holders, mobile phone mounts etc.) may be mounted near the airbag installation points and in the airbag deployment area.
- Never place objects on the surface of the dash panel on the passenger side.

WARNING

Information about knee airbags

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dashboard in the vicinity of the knee airbag» Fig. 9 - B. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. Nothing may be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

WARNING

Information on side and head airbags

- No objects (e.g. sun visors turned towards the windows) should be located in the deployment area of the side and head airbags. No accessories (e.g. cup holders etc.) should be fitted to the doors - risk of injury!
- Hang only light clothing on the hooks in the vehicle, do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets. Do not use hangers to hang up clothes.
- The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 241.
- No excessive force, e.g. through blows, kicks etc. should be applied to the seat backrests - there is a risk of damage to the side airbags. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of a type expressly authorised by ŠKODA AUTO. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers or stitching at the installation points for the side airbags should be immediately repaired by a specialist company.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- Any work on the airbag system, including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel), must only be carried out by a specialist garage. Further information » page 241.
- No changes of any sort should be made to parts of the airbag system, the front bumper or the bodywork.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.

Airbag deactivation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags ____ 21
Deactivating the front passenger airbag ____ 21

Deactivating airbags

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 10 *on page 21*- A.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags as appropriate.

A warning light indicates that the airbag has been deactivated » page 35.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones outlined below.

- If a child seat must be used on the front passenger seat, where the child is transported facing towards the rear» page 22.
- If not being able to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If other seats have been installed (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated at the time of the vehicle being sold, the purchaser must be informed!

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

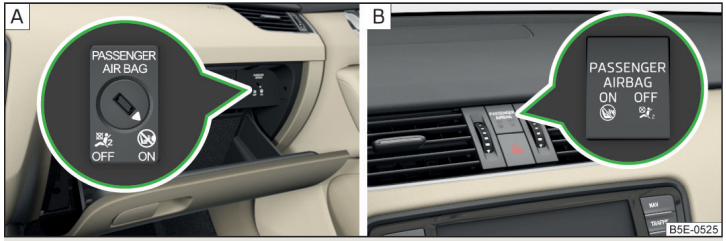


Fig. 10 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag/warning light for the front passenger airbag**

Switch positions » Fig. 10 - A

OFF The front passenger airbag is deactivated - after the ignition is switched on, the indicator light OFF » Fig. 10illuminates - B

ON The front passenger airbag is switched on - after switching on the ignition, the warning light illuminates for 65 seconds ON

Switch off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light OFF lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **ON**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light ON lights up after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The key cannot be inserted into the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag! The airbag could be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!
- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning lights ON OFF flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident, children should only be transported in child seats!

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 1) 23
Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 2) 24
Child safety and the side airbag 24
Classification of child seats 24
Use of child safety seats which are secured using a seat belt 24

Please refer to the instructions in this Owner's Manual and the child seat manufacturer's instructions with regard to the installation and use of the child seat.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport children in the rear seats. Only transport a child in the passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard have a test seal that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- When leaving the vehicle, do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. In an emergency, they might not be able to get out of the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. At very high or very low temperatures can be fatal!
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire travelling time! Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.
- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 80. After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 1)

Does not apply to Taiwan



Fig. 11 **Warning labels**

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This warning is also given on stickers that are located in the following places.

- On the passenger sun visor» Fig. 11 - A.
- On the B-column on the front passenger side» Fig. 11 – B.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel » !.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.

Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt does not "jam" in the return pulley. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

WARNING

- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- Once a child seat in which the child is transported with its back to the direction of travel is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be reactivated.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 2)

Applies to Taiwan



Fig. 12
Warning labels

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the passenger seat.

A label to this effect can also be found on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 12.

Child safety and the side airbag

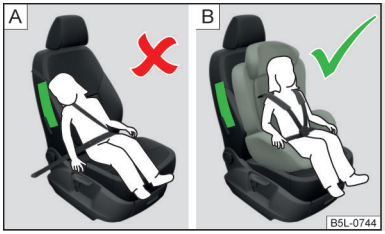


Fig. 13
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag» Fig. 13 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag to ensure that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 13 - B.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Use of child safety seats which are secured using a seat belt

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats External	Rear seat centre
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0 up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U Child seat category "Universal" - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening elements

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system 25
Use of child safety seats with the ISOFIXsystem 25
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system 26

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system



Fig. 14
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for securing child seats quickly and safely.

Two locking eyes are located between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing theISOFIX system child seat in place.

First, remove the caps A in order to access the locking eyes» Fig. 14. After removing the child seat, replace he caps.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!

i Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child safety seats with the ISOFIX system

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15-25 kg	-	X	IL-SU	X
3 22-36 kg	-	X	IL-SU	X

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.
b) If the front passenger seat is fitted with ISOFIXsystem attachment points, it is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suitable for the use of approved child seats in ISOFIXin the "Semi-Universal"category. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for theISOFIX installation of a child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with theTOP TETHERsystem attachment belt.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX-system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system

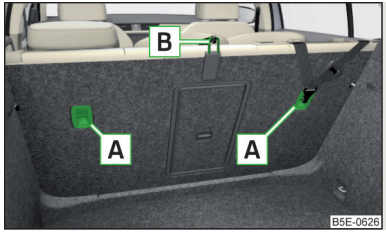


Fig. 15
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

TOP TETHER is a fastening system, which restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The locking eyes A for attaching the belt of a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 15.

Some country-specific models can also be equipped with a locking eye B on the back of the middle rear seat backrest » Fig. 15.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats that have the attachment points.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

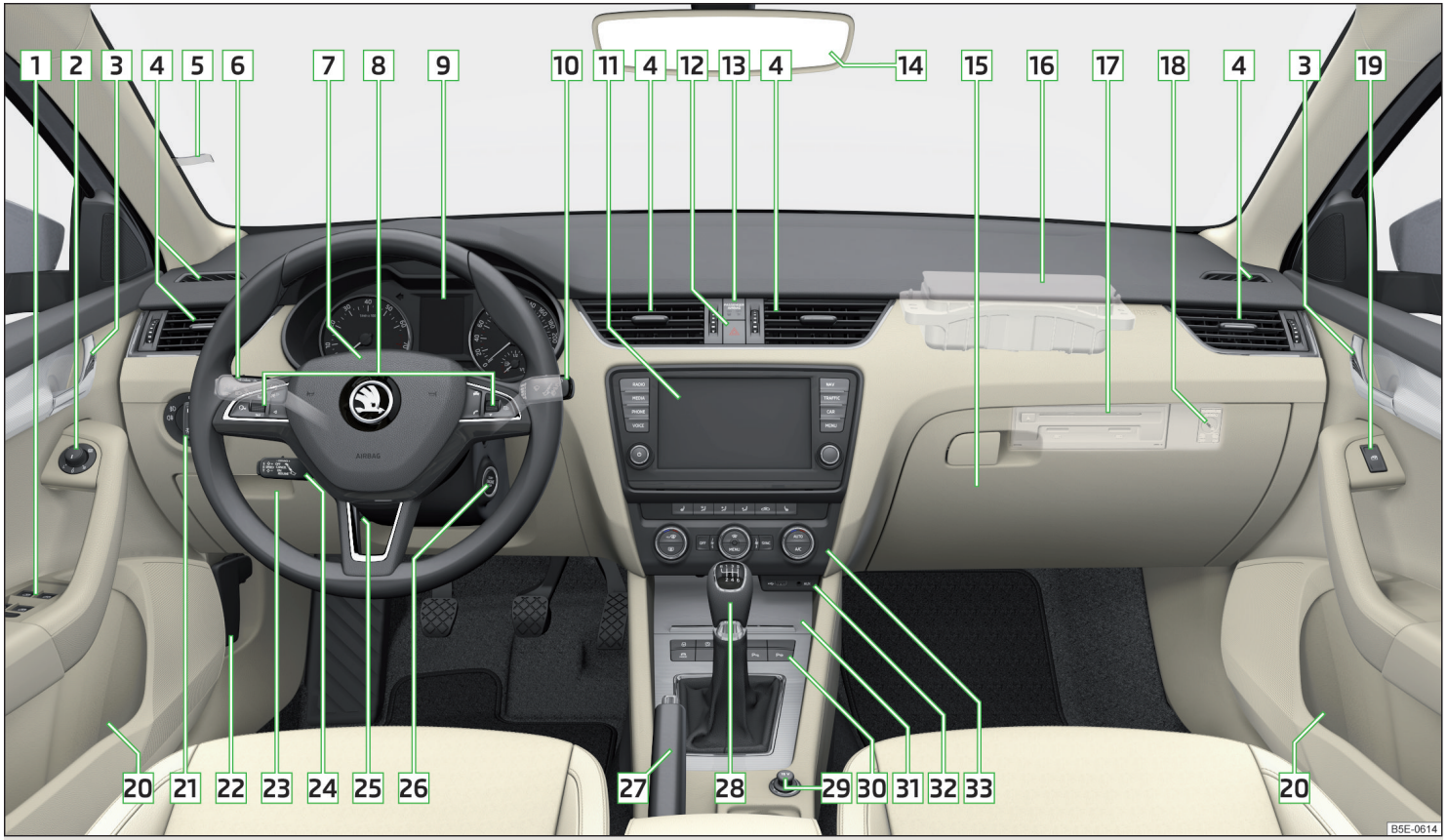


Fig. 16 **Cockpit example for LHD models**

Using the system

cockpit

Overview

1 Electric windows 59
2 Electric exterior mirror adjustment 74
3 Door opening lever 54
4 Air outlet vents 108
5 Ticket holder 83
6 Operating lever (depending on equipment):
- Direction and high beam 65
- Speed regulating system 212
- Headlight assist 67

7 Steering wheel with horn / with driver's front airbag 18
8 Buttons for operating the information system 41
9 Instrument cluster 30
10 Operating lever:
- Windscreen wipers and washers 72
- Information system 41

11 Infotainment 113
12 Button for hazard warning light system 68
13 Warning light for the front passenger airbag 21
14 Interior rear-view mirror 74
15 Storage compartment on the front passenger side 87
16 Front passenger airbag 18
17 External Infotainment module (in the front passenger storage compartment) 115
18 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) 21
19 Power window in the front passenger door 60
20 Storage compartment 83
21 Light switch 64
22 Bonnet release lever 253
23 Storage compartment 83
24 Operating lever for adaptive cruise control 216
25 Steering wheel locking lever 13
26 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Ignition lock 189
- Starter button 189

27 Handbrake lever 192
28 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) 193
- Selector lever (automatic gearbox) 194

29 Depending on equipment fitted:
- 12-Volt power socket 90
- Cigarette lighter 91

30 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
- Central locking system 53
- START STOP 190
- Traction control TCS 201
- Electronic Stability Control ESC 200
- Selection of travel mode 221
- Park Assist 209
- Parking aid 204
- Tyre pressure monitoring system 229

31 Storage compartmenttelephone box 84, 84
32 USB and AUX inputs 85
33 Controls for heating / air conditioning 105

Note

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in this layout» Fig. 16.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

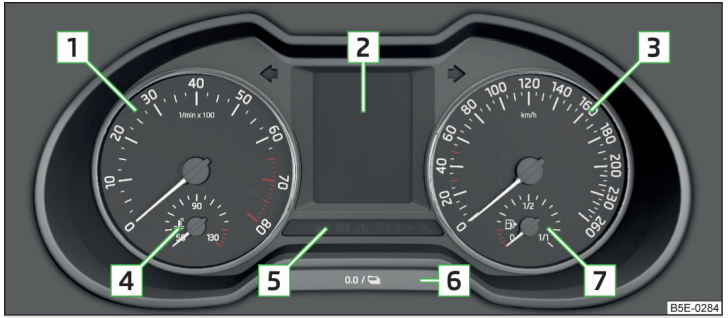


Fig. 17 **Instrument cluster**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Tachometer 30
Coolant temperature gauge 31
Fuel gauge - natural gas 31
Fuel gauge - Petrol/ Diesel 31

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 30
- with warning lights » page 32

2 Display » page 41

3 Speedometer
- with warning lights » page 32

4 Depending on equipment fitted
- Coolant temperature gauge » page 31
- Gas gauge[1)]

5 Bar with warning lights » page 32

6 Operation key:
- Setting the time » page 42
- Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 41
- Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 48

7 Petrol/ diesel reserve display » page 31

The brightness of the instrument illumination is set automatically depending on the ambient lighting throughout. If the visibility is poor and the lights are not on, the brightness of the instrument lighting reduces to alert the driver to switch on the lights in due time.

The brightness of the instrument lighting can be adjusted in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Light**.

Tachometer

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 17 *on page 30* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the red scale range of the tachometer indicates the maximum permitted engine speed of a driven-in and operating warm engine.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D / S** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 42.

CAUTION

The tachometer pointer may only move into the red area for a short time - otherwise risk of engine damage!

[1)] Applies to G-TEC vehicles.

Coolant temperature gauge

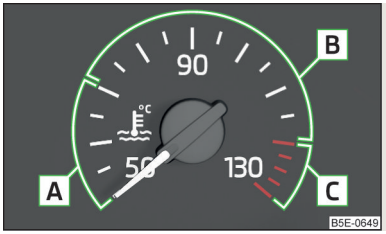


Fig. 18
Coolant temperature gauge

The display » Fig. 18 only works if the ignition is switched on.

Cold range - The pointer is in the range A, the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds and high engine loads.

Operating range - The pointer is in the range B.

High temperature range The pointer is in the range C. The coolant temperature is too high. The warning light » page 38illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Fuel gauge - natural gas



Fig. 19
Gas gauge

The display» Fig. 19 only works if the ignition is switched on.

The capacity of the natural gas fuel tank is approximately 15 kg.

If this fuel level reaches the reserve area, in the display the icon and a request for natural gas refuelling is displayed.

Note

The arrow▶next to the symbol within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Fuel gauge - Petrol/ Diesel



Fig. 20
Petrol/ diesel reserve display

The display » Fig. 20 only works if the ignition is switched on.

The contents of the fuel tank for petrol / diesel is approximately 50 litres.

If the fuel level reaches the reserve level A » Fig. 20, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster» page 36.

WARNING

For the vehicle systems to function correctly, and thus for safe driving, there must be sufficient fuel in the tank. Never drain the fuel tank completely – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! Irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

- After filling up, it's possible that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates a fraction less.
- The arrow▶next to the symbol within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 33
Braking system 33
Front seat belt warning light 33
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) 33
Power steering / steering lock (KESSY system) 33
Stability control (ESC) / Traction control (TCS) 34
Traction control (TCS) disabled 34
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 34
Rear fog light 34
Emission control system 35
Preheating unit (diesel) 35
EPC warning light (petrol) 35
Safety systems 35
Tyre pressure 35
Brake linings 36
Low fuel - petrol / diesel 36
Lane assist (Lane Assist) 36
Turn signal system 36
Trailer turn signal lights 36
Fog lights 37
Cruise control 37
Brake pedal (automatic gearbox) 37
Natural gas operation 37
Main beam 37
Automatic gearbox 37
Rear seat belt warning light 37
Generator 37
Coolant 38
Engine oil pressure 38
Engine oil level 38
Lamp failure 39
Diesel particle filter (diesel) 39
Windscreen washer fluid level 39
High beam assistant 39
START-STOPsystem 39
Display a low temperature 39
Water in the fuel filter (diesel) 40
Adaptive cruise control (ACC) 40
Distance warning (Front Assist) 40
Front assist 40
OFF ROAD mode 40
Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC) 40
Service 40

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test. If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

The warning lights are located at the following positions in the instrument cluster » Fig. 17 *on page 30*.

- Tachometer 1
- Display 2
- Speedometer 3
- Bar with warning lights 5

Warning lights in the display

Depending on the importance the warning light ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) illuminate along with some of the warning lights in the list with the warning lights.

Depending on vehicle equipment, some warning lights can be displayed in colour on the display. For example. the coolant warning lamp may be represented as follows.

- - Segment display / monochromatic ("black and white") MAXI DOT display
- - Coloured MAXI DOT display

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 68. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 252.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

(P) lights up – the handbrake has been applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

▸ Release the handbrake.

Braking system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

(!) illuminates – the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

▸ Park the vehicle, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

A fault to the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - There is a risk of an accident!

Front seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up - the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

At a speed of over 30 km/h the warning light flashes and an audible warning sounds at the same time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 minutes, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light illuminates permanently.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates - the ACC delay is not sufficient.

▸ Apply the brake.

For more information about the ACC system » page 214.

Power steering / steering lock (KESSY system)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

Fault in the power steering

lights up – this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist is no longer working (significantly higher steering forces).

lights up – this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

- ▸ Switch off the ignition, start the engine again and travel a short distance.
- ▸ If the warning light does not go off, stop the vehicle, **stop driving**. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- ▸ If the warning light does not go off, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock defect (KESSY system)

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

flashes	M	Steering column lock faulty. Stop!
	S	STOP VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY

▸ Park the vehicle, **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. Infotainment), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

flashes	M	Steering lock: Workshop!
	S	STEERING WORKSHOP

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering column lock not unlocked (System KESSY)

flashes	M Move the steering wheel! S MOVE STEERING WHEEL

- Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.
- If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Stability control (ESC) / Traction control (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

If your vehicle is equipped with the ESC system, the TCS is part of the ESC system.

flashes – the ESC or TCS is currently active.

System fault
lights up – there is an ESC or TCS fault.

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.
- Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

For more information on the ESC system » page 200 or TCS system » page 201.

Traction control (TCS) disabled

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the TCS system is disabled.

Note
On vehicles without the ESC system, the warning light **does not illuminate** upon deactivation of the TCS system, but a message is only displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – there is an ABS fault.

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING
- If warning light illuminates simultaneously with warning light » page 33, *Braking system*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – the rear fog light is switched on.

Emission control system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – there is a fault in the emission control system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Preheating unit (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

flashes – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light does not come on or illuminates continuously.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

EPC warning light (petrol)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

EPC lights up – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Safety systems

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

System fault
lights up - there is a fault in the airbag system.

M **Error: Airbag**
S **AIRBAG ERROR**

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch
illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool
illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately 12 seconds.

M **Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.**
S **AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF**

ProActive passenger protection
illuminates and the following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Proactive passenger protection not available.**
S **PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT NOT AVAIL**

or

M **Proactive passenger protection: function restricted.**
S **LIMITED PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT**

The seat belt for the driver and front passenger needs to be replaced.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING
When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

Change of tyre pressure values
lights up - there was a pressure change in one of the tyres.

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

▸ Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
▸ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressure » page 261.

▸ Correct the tyre pressure if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 266 or use the repair kit » page 270.
▸ Save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 229.

System fault
(!) flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains lit – there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

▸ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light (!) flashes after starting the engine again, there is a system error.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light (!) comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Other incidents
The illumination of the warning light (!) can have the following reasons.
▸ The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute the load evenly.
▸ The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
▸ Snow chains are mounted.
▸ A wheel has been changed.

CAUTION
Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light (!) in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Brake linings

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates - the brake pads are worn.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Low fuel - petrol / diesel

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 6 litres).

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

▸ Please refuel » page 249.

Note
The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Lane assist (Lane Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

The warning lights indicates the state of the Lane Assist system.

More information about the Lane Assist System » page 224.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

flashes – the left turn signal is turned on.

flashes – the right turn signal is turned on.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate (does not apply when towing).

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

flashes – the trailer turn signal lights are switched on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

▸ Check the trailer bulbs.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the fog lights are switched on.

Cruise control

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates - the vehicle speed is limited by the speed regulator system and/or the automatic distance control.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – apply the brake.

Natural gas operation

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates - the vehicle is running on natural gas.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – the main beam or the headlight flasher is switched on.

Automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

Gearbox overheated
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox overheated. You can drive on.**
	S	**GEARBOX OVERHEATED**

Transmission overheated. You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book!**
	S	**STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT**

▸ **Stop driving!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

▸ If the warning light does not go off, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Transmission problem
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox faulty. Stop the vehicle safely!**
	S	**GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP**

▸ Park the vehicle, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox in emergency mode. No reverse gear.**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL**
Illuminates	M	**Error: gearbox. Speed is limited.**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR**

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Rear seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – a rear seat belt is not fastened.

lights up – a rear seat belt is fastened.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular light lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – the battery is not being charged whilst the engine is running.

▸ As the vehicle battery during your journey, are all non-essential electrical loads (e.g. Infotainment) must be switched off.
▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

If in addition to the light the light lights up while driving, **stop driving** - risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

Coolant level too low

⚠ Illuminates	M	**ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK! Log book!**
	S	**ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and allow the engine to cool down.
- Check the coolant level » page 257.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light lights up again, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the warning light lights up again, **stop driving!**

- Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

⚠ Illuminates	M	**Engine overheat. Stop! Log book!**
	S	**ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and allow the engine to cool down.
- Continue your journey only after the warning light has disappeared.

Engine oil pressure

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

⚠ flashes – the engine oil pressure is too low.

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
- Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the warning light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.
- Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If, under the given conditions, it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

Engine oil level too low

⚠ Illuminates	M	**Oil level: add oil!**
	S	**ADD OIL**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If the engine oil is not refilled, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

⚠ Illuminates	M	**Reduce oil level!**
	S	**OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
- If the oil level is too high, you can driven on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Fault on the engine oil level sensor

⚠ Illuminates	M	**Oil sensor: Workshop!**
	S	**OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP**

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

If, under the given conditions, it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

⚠ illuminates – one of the lamps is faulty.

A message will appear in the display about the affected lamp.

Diesel particle filter (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

⚠ illuminates – the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.

✓ 4. or gear 5 engaged (automatic gearbox: Position **D / S**).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light extinguishes.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.
- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials, such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc.

! CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

i Note

We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

⚠ illuminates – the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

▸ Top up the windscreen washer fluid» page 254.

High beam assistant

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the high beam assistant is activated » page 67, *High-beam assistant (Light Assist)*.

START-STOPsystem

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

The warning lights indicates the state of the START STOP system » page 190.

Display a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

❄ illuminates – the outside temperature is below +4 °C.

! WARNING

Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! You should therefore not only rely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

Water in the fuel filter (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

⚠ Illuminates	**Water in fuel filter. Log book!** **WATER IN FUEL FILTER**

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

!Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

The warning lights ! indicate the condition of the ACC system » page 214.

Distance warning (Front Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the safe distance to the vehicle in front is below the minimum.

Information on the Front Assist system» page 219.

Front assist

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

⚠ Illuminates
- Front Assist has recognised the risk of a collision or automatically triggered an emergency braking manoeuvre » page 219.
- An automatic deactivation of Front Assist took place with ESC Sport activated » page 200 and with ASR activated» page 201.
- Front Assist is currently not available » page 221.

with the letteringOFF ⚠ illuminates- Front Assist is deactivated» page 220.

OFF ROAD mode

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the conditions for the engagement of OFF ROADmode are met» page 203, *OFF ROADmode*.

flashes – the hill descent assistant is engaged at the moment.

Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

The warning light is only shown in theMAXI DOTdisplay.

⚠ illuminates – there is a DCC fault.

- You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Service

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – information regarding a service appointment that is due » page 48, *Service interval display*.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Display in the instrument cluster 41
Setting the clock 42
Gear recommendation 42
Vehicle condition 42

Display in the instrument cluster

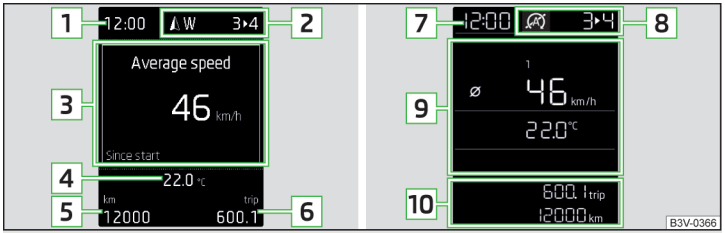


Fig. 21 **Display types: MAXI DOT / Segment display**

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system uses the display in the instrument cluster to provide the following information » Fig. 21.

1 Time / symbols of the Infotainment voice control
2 Engaged/ recommended gear
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
Warning lights of the START-STOP system
Compass display[1)]
Detected traffic signs
3 Driving data (multifunction display)
Warning lights
Information messages
Door alarm
Eco tips
Service interval display
4 Outside temperature
5 Cruise control / speed limiter
Total distance travelled
6 Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
7 Time
8 Warning lights of the START-STOP system
Engaged/ recommended gear
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
9 Outside temperature
Warning lights
Driving data (multifunction display)
10 Total distance travelled
Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
Cruise control / speed limiter
Service interval display
Information messages

Door, luggage compartment and bonnet alarm
When the door or luggage compartment / bonnet is open, a graphic warning appears in the display.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)
› Press button A » Fig. 22 *on page 42*.

[1)] Applies to vehicles with factory-installed navigation system.

Setting the clock

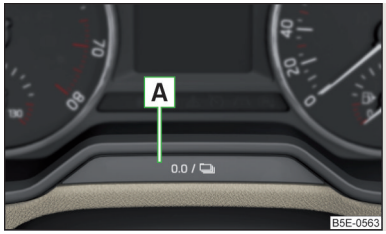


Fig. 22
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 22 until the time is shown in the display.
› Release the button A and the system switches to the hour setting function.
› Press the button A again and set the hours.
› Wait around 4 seconds, the system switches to the minutes setting.
› Press the button A again and set the minutes.
› Wait around 4 seconds, the system switches to the initial setting.

The time can also be adjusted in infotainment by tapping CAR → ⚙ → **Time and date**.

Gear recommendation

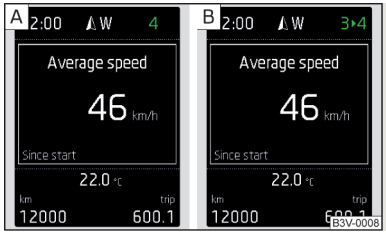


Fig. 23
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

A suitable engaged gear or, where appropriate, a recommended gear is displayed, with the aim of conserving the life of the engine and increasing driving efficiency.

Display » Fig. 23

A Optimal gear engaged
B Recommended gear (e.g. 3▶4 means that it is advantageous to switch from 3. to 4. gear)

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

WARNING
The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations (e.g. when overtaking).

Vehicle condition

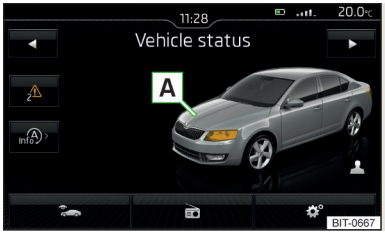


Fig. 24
Vehicle condition

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on. If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

As long as the faults are not rectified the messages are always shown. After the message is displayed for the first time, the warning lights ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be displayed.

The vehicle condition can be displayed in infotainment by tapping CAR → 🚗 → **Veh. status**.

In the screen, information regarding vehicle condition or function of the tyre pressure monitor is displayed.

› Using the function surfaces ◁ ▷, select the menu item *Veh. status*.

Function surfaces and display » Fig. 24

A Vehicle representation (the zones of the vehicle are shown in different colours, corresponding to any warning messages that occur. The warning messages are displayed once you touch the "vehicle")

✓/⚠ No message/warning messages relating to vehicle status and the number (if there is only one message, one warning message text is displayed)

Display information about the status of the START-STOP system

Activation / deactivation of notes relating to START-STOP-System messages in another screen display

Operation of the information system

Operation via the operating lever

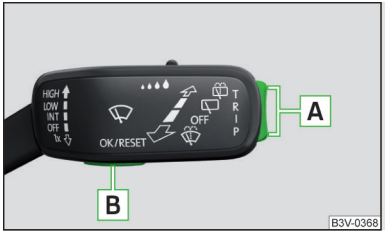


Fig. 25
Buttons on the control lever

Operating the multifunction display

A **Press** (up or down) - Select data / Setting values

B **Press** Show / confirm entry

Operating the MAXI DOT display

A **Press** (up or down) - move to the selected menu
Hold (up or down) - display main menu

B **Press** - confirm selected menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



Fig. 26 **Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel**

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel

Switch on/off voice control

A **Turn** - sets the volume
Press - sound on / off

▷ Skip to next track/station

◁ Switch to previous track/station

Display the assistance systems menu

Press - display the telephone menu; accept call/ hang up; call selected contact
Hold - repeat last call; reject call

Operating the multifunction display

B **Turn** - select data / set values
Press Show / confirm entry

Operating the MAXI DOT display

Hold - display main menu
Press - return to a previous level in the menu

B **Turn** - move in the selected menu
Press - confirm selected menu item

Note

Depending on equipment not all functions may be available. The system indicates this by means of a text message on the Infotainment screen.

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Data overview 44
Display Infotainment 45
Warning at when exceeding the set speed 45
Memory 45

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

If vehicles with MAXI DOTdisplay do not show the driving data after switching on the ignition, select the menu item **Driving data** in the main menu and confirm » page 46.

The units and the display of some information can be adjusted in Infotainment by tapping CAR → ⚙ → **Units**.

Data overview

Overview of driving data (depending on the vehicle equipment).

Range - Drive distance in km which can be covered with the existing tank capacity and with the same driving style. If you drive more efficiently this value can increase. With G-TEC vehicles the following details are displayed - total range / with natural gas / petrol.

Average fuel consumption - Is calculated continuously since the last time that the memory was erased. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 100 m driven. With G-TEC vehicles, the average consumption of fuel currently being used is displayed.

Current fuel consumption - When the vehicle is stationary or moving slowly, the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (in models in some countries the following appears --,- km/l). With G-TEC vehicles the current consumption of the fuel currently being used is displayed (with regards to a stationary or slow moving vehicle, the natural gas consumption is displayed in kg/h).

Oil temperatureif the temperature is lower than 50 °C or if there is a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature, the**---** symbols are displayed.

Warning at when the preset speed is exceeded allows the setting of a speed limit where, if exceeded, an acoustic warning signal and a warning message appears on the display of the instrument cluster.

Dynamic Road Sign Display - traffic signs display » page 226, *Traffic sign recognition*.

Current Speed - Digital speedometer.

Average speed - Value constantly recalculated, for distance since last clearing the memory. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Distance driven - Distance driven since the memory was last cleared.

Driving time - Driving time since last clearing the memory.

Conv. consumers - information about the total consumption of the comfort consumers in l/h and a list of three consumers (e.g. air conditioning etc.), which have the largest share of fuel consumption.

Refill amount[1] After the consumption of about 10 litres of fuel from the fully refuelled tank, an amount of fuel is displayed in l. This amount can now be safely refilled.

Natural gas quality The details of the quality of natural gas are displayed as a percentage of between 70% to 100%. The higher the value of natural gas, the lower is the consumption.

Coolant temperature - If the coolant temperature is in the range 70-120 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached. If the temperature is below 70 ° C, high engine speeds and straining the engine should be avoided. If the temperature is over 120°C, the warning light » page 38illuminates in the instrument cluster .

There is the option to show/hide the representation of the menu items of the multifunction display in Infotainment in the instrument cluster display by tapping CAR → ⚙ → **Instrument cluster** and reset the driving data.

[1] Only valid for some countries.

Display Infotainment

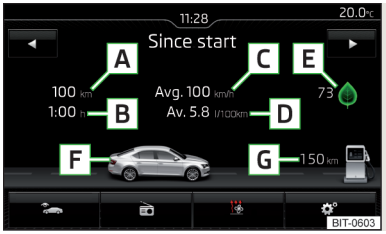


Fig. 27
Driving data

› Press the CAR button, then tap on the function surface → **Driving data**.

Screen display » Fig. 27

- A Distance travelled
- B Driving time
- C Average speed
- D Average fuel consumption
- E Transit point rating (**DriveGreen** Function)
- F Range (if the estimated range is less than 300 km, the vehicle starts to approach the symbol)
- G Approximate range[1)]

Use the function surfaces ◁ ▷ to select one of the following presets.

- *Since start* - Driving data for the individual trip
- *Long-term* - Long-term driving data
- *Since refuel* - Data since refuelling

Warning at when exceeding the set speed

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Set the desired speed limit is 5 km/h steps.
› Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

Reset speed limit

› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› By confirming the speed stored in the memory, the speed limit is reset.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

Memory

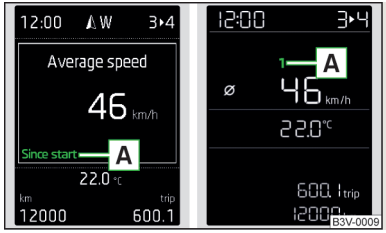


Fig. 28
Memory display: MAXI DOT display (M)/segment display (S)

The system saves the data in the three memories described below which are displayed at the position A » Fig. 28.

Since start (M) Or "1" (S)

Driving data is stored from when the ignition is switched on to when it is switched off. If the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition, new data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

[1)] For vehicles with CNG drive the approximate range with gasoline and CNG is displayed separately.

Long-term (M) And "2" (S)
The memory gathers driving data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9 999 kilometres driven.

The indicator is automatically set back to zero if one of the indicated values is exceeded.

Since refuel (M) or "3" (S)
The driving data is stored in the memory since the last fuel refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

› To **choose the memory bank**, confirm the selected indication again and select the desired memory.
› To **delete the memory bank** of the chosen selection, hold down the button confirming the selection.

The following driving data is stored in different memory banks.
▸ Average fuel consumption.
▸ Distance driven.
▸ Average speed.
▸ Driving time.

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Menu item**Navigation** 46
Menu item**Audio** 46
Menu item**Telephone** 47
Menu item**Assist systems** 47
Menu item**Lap timer** (Stop watch) 47

The MAXI DOT display is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, provides information about Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc.

The menus with details can be operated and displayed using the buttons on the operating lever or the multifunction steering wheel » page 43.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **Driving data** » page 44
- **Assist systems** » page 47
- **Navigation** » page 46
- **Audio** » page 46
- **Telephone** » page 47;
- **Vehicle** » page 42
- **Lap timer** » page 47

Note
- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must first be confirmed to access the main menu.
- The display language can be set in Infotainment » page 123, *Setting the Infotainment language* and » page 130, *Setting the Infotainment language*.

Menu item Navigation

The following information is displayed in the **Navigation** menu item.

▸ Driving recommendations
▸ Compass
▸ Last destinations

Menu item Audio

The following information is displayed in the **Audio** menu item.

Radio
▸ Station currently being played (name/frequency).
▸ The selected frequency range (e.g. FM) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. FM 3), if the station is stored in the memory list.
▸ List of available stations (if more than 5 stations can be received).
▸ TP traffic announcements.

Media
▸ Name of the track being played, if necessary, further information regarding title (e.g. artist, album name), if this information is stored as a so called ID3 tag on the audio source.

Menu itemTelephone

The call list with the following symbols is displayed in the **Telephone** menu item.

- Incoming call
- Outgoing call
- Missed call

Symbols in the display

- Charge status of the telephone battery[1)]
- Signal strength[1)]
- A telephone is connected to the unit
- Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)
- Switch-off microphone

Menu itemAssist systems

The following systems are activated/deactivated in the **Assist systems** menu item.

- ▸ Front Assist
- ▸ Lane Assist

Menu itemLap timer (Stop watch)

The Lap timer function offers the possibility of calculating the lap time, for example when driving on a race course. The measured time is shown in the display.

The calculated times are displayed in minutes, seconds and tenths of seconds.

The following functions are available.

- **Start time** - start the timing manually or continue the interrupted measurement
- **Since start** - Start the timer automatically upon start-up
- **Statistics** - Evaluate and reset the measured times

Time measurement

- ▸ To start the measurement manually, choose the menu item**Lap timer** - **start** .
- ▸ To start the measurement automatically, choose the menu item **Lap timer** - **Since Start** . Timing will begin automatically when starting up.
- ▸ To start the measurement of the next lap during time measurement, choose the menu item **new lap**.

During timing, information about the fastest and the last lap time are also shown in the display.

Measure split time

- ▸ During the timing, select the menu item **Split time**. The split time data is displayed for about 5 seconds in the display.

The split time can be measured repeatedly during a round.

Stop measurement

- ▸ During the timing, press the menu item **Stop**.

The time measurement is stopped, the following functions are now available.

- **Continue** - Continue measurement of the current lap time
- **New lap** - Start measurement of the next lap time.
- **Abort lap** - Cancel the timer (the aborted lap time is not stored)
- **Hang up** - End timing (the aborted lap time is stored)

Evaluate recorded times

- ▸ Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Statistics**.

The following information is displayed.

- ▸ **Fastest:** - The fastest lap
- ▸ **Slowest:** - The slowest lap
- ▸ **Average:** - The average lap time
- ▸ **Overall time:** - The total of all the lap times

Reset measured times

- ▸ Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Statistics** - **Reset**.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Only use the **Lap timer** when you are in any traffic situation where you have full control over the vehicle.

[1)] This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Note

- The system allows the measurement of up to 11 lap times.
- measurement of the individual lap time is ended after 99 h., 59 min. and 59 sec. After this time has been reached, measurement of the new lap time starts automatically.
- The measured times cannot be reset individually.
- If the measured times are not reset, then these are stored even after turning off the ignition.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval ____ 48
Service messages ____ 48
Resetting the service interval display ____ 48

The service interval display shows the kilometres or days until the next service event.

Information regarding service intervals » page 242.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

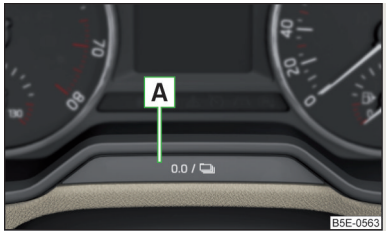


Fig. 29
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 29 until the **Service menu item** is shown in the display.
› Release the button A.

In the display, the symbol appears for 4 seconds along with the following message for the kilometres or days to the next service appointment.

Information regarding the remaining kilometres and days until the next service can also be displayed in Infotainment by tapping CAR → ⚙ → **Service**.

Service messages

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date
Before the next service date has been reached, after switching on the ignition, the symbol as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date
Once the service interval is reached, the symbol appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, together with the message.

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval
For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

SmartGate

Introduction to the subject



Fig. 30
Information about SmartGate on the ŠKODA websites

SmartGate is a system that transmits certain driving data (such as fuel consumption, speed or similar) via Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct.

The ŠKODA applications installed in a supported external device (e.g. telephone, tablet) give the option to further transmit the received data.

Some ŠKODA applications can be displayed on the Infotainment screen using a SmartLinkconnection» page 165.

Read in the QR code» Fig. 30 **or** enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with an overview of the available applications, compatible devices and other information about SmartGate.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity-smartgate

CAUTION

- To increase the access security to the transmitted vehicle data, once the ŠKODA application has been started, you are requested to change the password/PIN code if the default password/PIN code has not yet been changed » page 50. It is not possible to start the ŠKODA application without changing it.
- ŠKODA accepts no responsibility for any problems caused by incompatibility or improper functioning of the external devices.

connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi

This type of connection is intended for external devices running Android and iOS operating systems.

Connecting to an Android external device

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on Wi-Fi in the external device that is to be connected and search for available Wi-Fi networks (see Owner's Manual for the external device).
› In the menu of the detected networks, select the "SmartGate_..."[1] menu item.
› Enter the password (vehicle identification number using upper-case letters» page 50).
› In the external device that is to be connected to, start the SmartGate application.
› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which is included in the SmartGate application.

With SmartGate, a maximum of four external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

Connecting to an external iOS device

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on Wi-Fi in the external device that is to be connected and search for available Wi-Fi networks (see Owner's Manual for the external device).
› In the menu of the detected networks, select the "SmartGate_..."[1] menu item.
› Enter the password (vehicle identification number using upper-case letters» page 50).

With SmartGate, a maximum of four external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi. In these external devices, up to four ŠKODA applications can be started simultaneously.

Disconnection

The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off Wi-Fi in the connected external device.

Automatic connection

If the communication device has already had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Wi-Fi is switched on in the external device that is to be connected to.
✓ The external device that is to be connected to stores the password required for the connection check.

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi direct

This type of connection is intended for external devices running the Android operating system.

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.
› In the external device that is to be connected to, start the SmartGate application.
› In the application, change the connection type to Wi-Fi direct.

[1] The last 6 characters of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which is included in the SmartGate application.

The password for the connection to SmartGate _...[1] includes the last six digits of the vehicle identification number » page 50.

With SmartGate, a maximum of two external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi direct, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

If you want to connect to SmartGate in a different vehicle, you must make a new connection in the SmartGate application.

Disconnection
The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off Wi-Fi in the connected external device.

Automatic connection
If the external device once had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored after the ignition is started.

SmartGate web interface

SmartGate parameters can be set in the SmartGate web interface.

The following address must be entered in the web browser of the external device that is connected with SmartGate.

HTTP://192.168.123.1

The setting changes are only effective after pressing the buttons "Save" → "Reboot".

Password/PIN code

The password for the **Wi-Fi** connection preset by the factory is the complete vehicle identification number (entered in upper case); the PIN code for the **Wi-Fi direct** connection is the last 6 digits of the vehicle identification number.

After changing the password/PIN, the connection to SmartGate must be re-established on the external device to be connected using the new password or new PIN code.

Changing the password for the Wi-Fi connection
› Open the SmartGate web interface » page 50.
› In the"WPA / WPA2 key:" menu item, enter the new password (8 to 63 alphanumeric characters and special characters, small and capital letters).
› Confirm the password change by tapping on the "Save" interface.
› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[2] interface.

Changing the PIN code for the Wi-Fi Direct connection
› Open the SmartGate web interface » page 50.
› In the "WiFi Direct PIN:"menu item, enter the new PIN code (6 digits).
› Confirm the PIN code change by tapping on the "Save" interface.
› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[2] interface.

Note
If you have forgotten your password for the connection to SmartGate, SmartGate must be reset to factory settings in a specialised workshop.

[1] The last 6 characters of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....
[2] If the "Reboot" interface is not displayed, you must manually restore the web browser display.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

unlock / lock with the key on the lock cylinder 51
Unlocking/locking with the remote control key 52
Locking / unlocking - KESSY 52
Vehicle locking / unlocking with the central locking button 53
SafeLock 53
Individual settings 53
Opening / closing door 54
Child safety lock 54
Malfunctions 55

The vehicle is equipped with a central locking system which makes it possible to unlock / lock **all** the doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid simultaneously.

The door unlocking can be adjusted individually » page 53.

The **unlocking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing twice.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically.

The **locking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing once.

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

If the doors or the luggage compartment lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorised persons (e.g. children) could lock the vehicle, turn on the ignition or start the engine - danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These individuals might not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the key grooves clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.

unlock / lock with the key on the lock cylinder

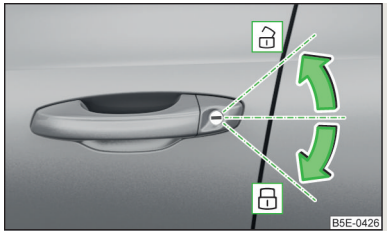


Fig. 31
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 31

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle

CAUTION

If the locking cylinder is provided with a cap» page 276, to unlock / lock the vehicle with key, the cap must be removed beforehand.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

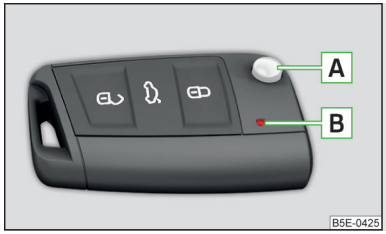


Fig. 32
Key with pop-out key bit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Description of the key » Fig. 32

- Unlock button
- Lock button
- Depending on equipment fitted:
  - Unlock boot lid (by pressing) / unlatch and partially open (by holding) (vehicles with manual valve operation)
  - Open/close/ the boot lid Stop movement of the boot lid (vehicles with electric folding operation)

A Button for popping out/pushing in the key bit

B Battery status warning light - if the warning light does not flash when you press a button on the key, the battery is discharged

Unlock/unlatch the boot lid (vehicles fitted with manual folding operation)
By **pressing lightly** on the button the lid is unlocked.

By **pressing down** on the button the lid is unlocked and unlatched (part-opened).

If the lid is unlocked or released with the button , then the lid is automatically locked after closing. The period of time after which the flap is locked can be set » page 57.

! CAUTION

- The remote control may be affected by signal superimposition by transmitters close to the car.
- The range of the remote control key is about 30 m. The battery must be replaced if the central locking only reacts to the remote control at a distance of less than 3 m away » page 275.

Locking / unlocking - KESSY

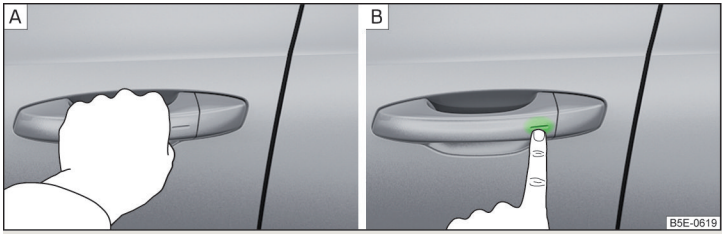


Fig. 33 **Vehicle unlocking / vehicle locking**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

› Grip the door handle to **unlock** » Fig. 33 A the vehicle.
› Touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger to **lock** » Fig. 33 - B the vehicle.

When unlocking/locking the vehicle, the key must be at a maximum distance of approximately 1.5 m from the front door handle.

Information on locking
On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside if the ignition has not been turned off.

After locking the car, it is not possible to unlock within the next 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If one of the doors is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the passenger compartment, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the boot lid is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the lid is automatically unlatched (partially opened). After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. The boot lid **remains unlatched** (partially opened); the other doors remain locked.

CAUTION

Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device via the sensors in the door handle.

Vehicle locking / unlocking with the central locking button



Fig. 34
Central locking button

Read and observe and on page 51 first.

Conditions for the locking/unlocking using the central locking button.

✓ The vehicle is not locked from the outside.

✓ None of the doors are open.

› To **lock**, press the button » Fig. 34.

Locking is displayed in the button by the illumination of the symbol.

The following applies after locking.

- Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

WARNING

Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!

SafeLock

Read and observe and on page 51 first.

SafeLock prevents the doors from behind opened from inside as well as window operation. This makes an attempted break-in to the vehicle more difficult.

Activating

SafeLock is activated when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

This function is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off.

M **Check SAFE lock! Log book!**

S **CHECK SAFELOCK**

Activation display

When SafeLock is activated the warning light in the driver's door flashes for 2 seconds in rapid succession, then starts to flash at longer intervals.

Switching off

- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- **or:** by deactivating the interior monitor and the towing protection » page 56.

The warning light in the driver door flashes rapidly for about 2 seconds, then goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

The SafeLock switches on the next time the vehicle is locked.

WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe and on page 51 first.

The following functions of central locking can be individually adjusted in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Opening and closing.**

All doors
This function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door
The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control. KESSY allows the unlocking of a single door which is in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Doors on a vehicle side
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control unit. KESSY allows the unlocking of both doors which are in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Automatic locking/unlocking
This function enables the locking of all doors and the boot lid from a speed of 15 km / h. Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.

The renewed unlocking of the doors and the boot lid is carried out when the ignition key is removed or when the door is opened from inside (depending on the individual setting for the central locking system).

Opening / closing door

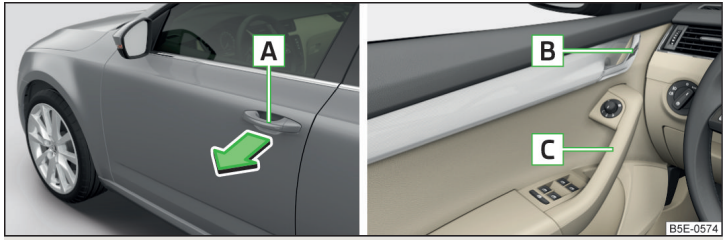


Fig. 35 **Door handle/door opening lever**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

› To **open from the outside**, unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 35.

› To **open from the inside** pull the door opening lever B and push the door away from you.
› To the **lock from the inside** grab handle C and close the door.

! WARNING
- The door must be closed properly, otherwise it could open whilst the vehicle is in motion - There is a risk to life!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – There is a risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - there is a risk of death!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!

Child safety lock

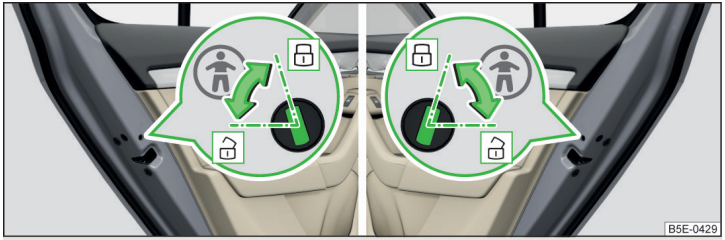


Fig. 36 **Rear door: Child safety system switch on / off**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Manually controlled parental settings
› To **turn on** the child safety lock, turn the vehicle key to position » Fig. 36.
› To **turn off** the child safety lock, turn the vehicle key to position.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 51 first.

Synchronising the remote control
If the buttons on the remote control key have been depressed several times beyond the effective range of the equipment or the battery has been replaced in the remote control key and the vehicle cannot be unlocked with the remote control, the key must be synchronised.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key via the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Fault with the central locking
If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then illuminates for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

A failure in the central locking system can lead the vehicle doors and the boot lid can emergency lock or emergency release » page 276.

Failure of the system KESSY
If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the appropriate error message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Low voltage of the key battery
If the voltage of the key battery is too low, a message appears in the display of the instrument cluster referring to the need to replace the battery. Replace the battery » page 275.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Alarm trigger 55
Interior monitor and towing protection 56

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to as alarm).

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. This is automatically disabled after release.

! CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

i Note
The alarm system has its own power source, the service life of which is 5 years. In order to ensure functionality of the alarm system, we recommend that you get the alarm checked after this time by a specialist garage.

Alarm trigger

Read and observe ! on page 55 first.

The alarm is triggered when one of the following unauthorised actions is activated on the vehicle with an activated warning system.
▸ Opening the bonnet.
▸ Opening the boot lid.
▸ Opening the doors.
▸ Manipulation of the ignition lock.
▸ Towing the vehicle.
▸ Movement in the vehicle.
▸ Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
▸ Uncoupling the trailer.

An alarm is triggered also when the driver's door is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder.

The alarm is switched off by pressing the button on the key or switching on the ignition.

Interior monitor and towing protection



Fig. 37
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 55 first.

The **interior monitor** detects movements inside the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

The **anti-towing** detects tilts in the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

Both systems should be deactivated if there is a possibility that the alarm will be triggered by movements (e.g. by people or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

Deactivation

› Switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.
› Press the button on the centre column on the driver side» Fig. 37,the symbol illuminates in the button.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Disabling the two systems switches off SafeLock.

! CAUTION

The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Manually operated tailgate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening / closing the boot lid 56
Delayed locking of the boot lid 57

! WARNING

- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – There is a risk of an accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, it could crack – There is a risk of injury!

Opening / closing the boot lid

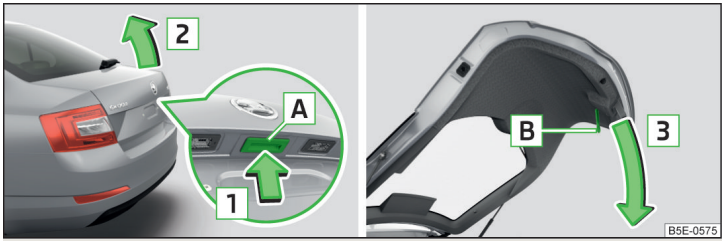


Fig. 38 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

› To **open** the lid, press button A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 38.
› Raise the lid in the direction of the arrow 2.
› To **close**, grab the mount B and pull in the direction of arrow 3.

Note

Button A » Fig. 38is disabled when starting off or driving at a speed of over 5 km/h. The button is reactivated when the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 56 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the button on the key, then the boot lid is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically.

Electric boot lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description of operation 58
Set the top position of the lid 58
Malfunctions 58

The boot lid (hereinafter referred to as lid) can be operated electrically and manually in the event of an emergency » page 58.

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – There is a risk of an accident!
- Never drive with the lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Only open and close the lid when no one is located in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!

WARNING (Continued)

- Make sure that when closing the lid, no body parts are crushed – risk of injury!
- When you open the boot lid make sure that there are no persons in the opening area of the lid - there is a danger of injury!

CAUTION

Do not attempt to close the lid manually during the electrical closing process - there is a risk of damaging the electric lid operation.

CAUTION

- Check that no objects are located in the opening/closing area which could hinder the movement (e.g. cargo on the roof rack or on the trailer etc.) - there is a risk of damage to the lid!
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the snow from the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.
- Always close the flap before disconnecting the battery.

Description of operation

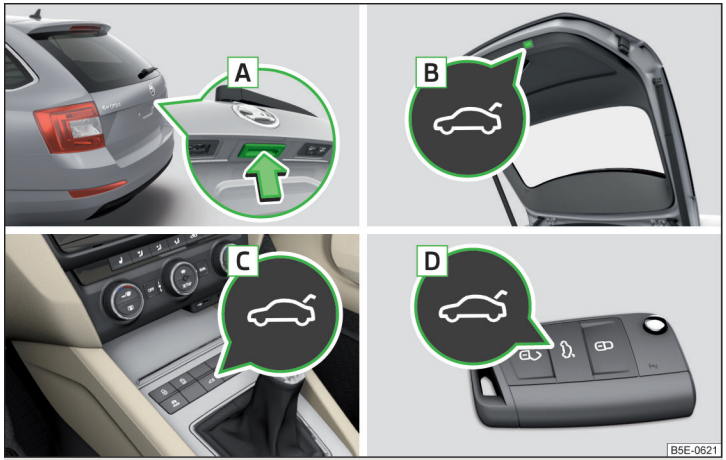


Fig. 39 **Lid operation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 57 first.

Ways to open the lid
- By pressing the handle A » Fig. 39.
- By holding the button C.
- By holding the button D on the key.

Ways to close the lid
- Press pressing the button B » Fig. 39.
- By pressing the handle A.

Ways to stop the lid movement
- Press pressing the button B » Fig. 39.
- By pressing the button C.
- By holding the button D on the key.
- By pressing the handle A.

Audible signals
An acoustic signal is sounded when opening/closing the lid by means of the button C or D.

Note
If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and, as a result, the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Set the top position of the lid

Read and observe ! and ! on page 57 first.

The top position of the lid can be adjusted (e.g. in a limited space to open the lid due to the garage height or for a more comfortable operation, depending on the height of the person).

Adjusting the top position of the lid
› Stop the lid in the desired position.
› Press and hold button B » Fig. 39 *on page 58*until you hear an acoustic signal.

Adjusting the top starting position of the lid
› Carefully raise the flap manually to the limit.
› Press and hold button B » Fig. 39 *on page 58*until you hear an acoustic signal.

Note
The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 57 first.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be opened	Unlocking the lid » page 276
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Removing a possible obstacle (e.g. snow), reopening the lid » page 58 Press the handle A » Fig. 39 *on page 58*and pull the lid upwards

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid
The lid is open and the battery was disconnected	

Close manually
Close the door slowly, push down the lid, push in the lock on the centre of the edge, above the ŠKODA logo.

Window operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mechanical windows 59
Electric Windows 60
Opening/closing the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors 60
Force limiter 60
Window convenience operation 61
Malfunctions 61

The windows can be operated mechanically by means of the handle attached to the respective door panel.

The windows can be operated electrically from the following locations; all windows from the driver's seat and also via the buttons for the windows in the passenger door or the rear doors.

WARNING

- Always close the window carefully and in a controlled manner. Otherwise, you may cause considerable crushing injuries to yourself or fellow passengers.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 60. If there is an obstacle (e.g. If a body part gets trapped), the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean (free of ice and similar) to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- Always close the electric windows before disconnecting the battery.

Note

If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Mechanical windows

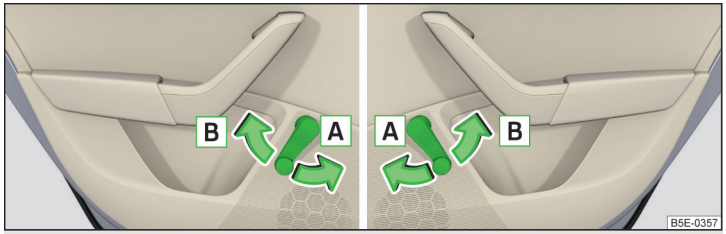


Fig. 40 **Window operation: left/right**

Read and observe and on page 59 first.

› To **open**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 40.
› To **close**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow B.

Electric Windows

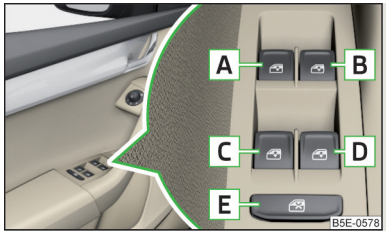


Fig. 41
Buttons for window levers

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat. The window in the front passenger door and the windows in the rear doors are operated via the button in each door.

Electric window buttons » Fig. 41

- A Left front door
- B Right front door
- C Left rear door
- D Right rear door:
- E Deactivate/activate the buttons in the rear doors (the deactivation may be advantageous if, for example, children are transported on the rear seats)

Opening/closing window

› To **open**, lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** press the button to the stop, the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.
› To **close**, pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** pull the button briefly to the stop, the window automatically closes fully. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Disable / enable buttons in the rear doors

› To **deactivate/activate** the buttons in the rear doors, press the E button. If the buttons in the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light illuminates in the E button.

Note

▪ After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes.
▪ After the driver or front passenger door is opened, the operation of the window is only possible with the button A» Fig. 41, in which case this is pressed or pulled for approx. 2 seconds.

Opening/closing the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors



Fig. 42
Power window button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

› To **open**, lightly press the appropriate button **underneath** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** press the button **underneath** to the stop, the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.
› To **close**, push the corresponding button **above** briefly and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** press the button **above** to the stop, the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The convenience operation for the window offers the option to open/close all the windows at once (or only the window in the driver's door). The function of convenience operation can be individually adjusted in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Opening and closing**.

Opening

› Press and hold the button on the key.
› **Or** Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the open position » Fig. 41 *on page 60*.
› **or**Keep the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the unlock position until all electrically operated windows are open.

Closing

› Press and hold the button on the key.
› **Or** Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the closed position » Fig. 41 *on page 60*.
› **or**Keep the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position until all the electrically operated windows are closed.
› In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 33 *on page 52*.

The convenience operation will only function correctly if all the windows automatically open/close properly.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's door locking cylinder is only possible within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the respective button is released.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

Repeatedly opening and closing the window can cause the window mechanism to overheat and become temporarily blocked. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the operating mechanism has cooled down.

After disconnecting the vehicle battery, automatic opening / closing of the window can be deactivated. In this case, the system must be **activated** as follows.

Window in the driver door

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Windows in the other doors

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the respective key **above** and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button **above** and hold for 1 second.

Panoramic tilt / slide sunroof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 62
Force limiter 62
Convenience operation of the sliding / tilting roof 62
Activate operation of the tilt / slide sunroof 62
Manually operated sunblind 63
Electrically operated sunblind 63
Activating operation of the sunshade 63

The panoramic tilt / slide sunroof (hereinafter referred to as tilt / slide sunroof) can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is above -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. After opening the driver or front passenger door, it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

WARNING

When operating the tilt/slide sunroof and the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

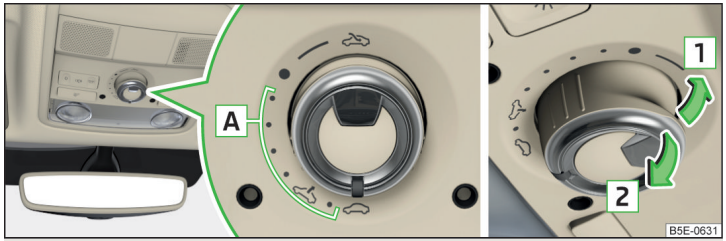


Fig. 43 **Operation of the tilting / sliding sunroof**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

Operation of the tilting / sliding sunroof » Fig. 43

- Open fully
- ● Open to the low-noise position
- A Open partially
- Close completely
- 1 Opening (switch in position)
- 2 Resetting (switch in position)

After turning the switch one stop to position (spring-tensioned position), the tilt / slide sunroof stops in the position in which the intensity of the wind noise is low. After turning the switch further to position , the tilt / slide sunroof opens up to the stop.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

WARNING

If the tilting / sliding sunroof is closed, by pulling on the recess of the switch in the direction of arrow 2, » Fig. 43 *on page 62* and the closing process is hindered by an obstacle, then at the third attempt at closing, the force limitation will cease to function (if less than 5 s passes between the individual attempts to close). The tilt / slide sunroof closes with full force - this can cause injury.

Convenience operation of the sliding / tilting roof

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

The convenience operation makes it possible to open or close the sliding/tilting roof using the key or the KESSY system via the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

› To **open out**, press and hold the button on the key.
› **Or:**Hold the key in the unlock position in the driver's door lock.
› To **close**, press and hold the button (with KESSY, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door).
› **Or**Hold the key in the lock position in the driver's door lock.

By interrupting the locking process, the closing operation is interrupted.

Activate operation of the tilt / slide sunroof

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

If the tilt / slide sunroof stops working (e.g. after disconnecting and connecting the battery), then the operation must be reactivated.

› Turn on the ignition and set the switch to position » Fig. 43 *on page 62*.
› Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.

The sliding/tilting roof opens/closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the lever.

Manually operated sunblind

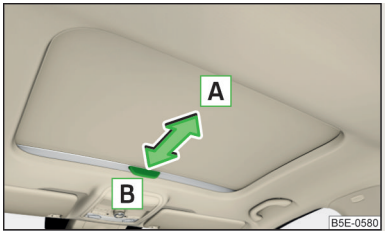


Fig. 44
Operation of the sun blind

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

› To **open**, pull the handle in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 44.
› To **close**, pull the handle in the direction of arrow B.

Electrically operated sunblind

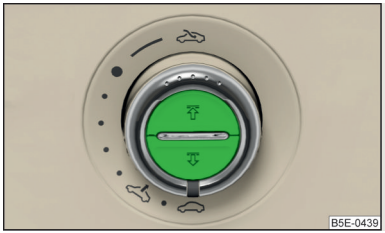


Fig. 45
Button for operating the sunshade

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

Operation of the sunshade » Fig. 45
Open - by pressing (press again - sunshade stops moving)
Close - by pressing (press again - sunshade stops moving)

The sunshade can also be operated by pressing and holding the appropriate button (starts movement of the sunshade) and releasing it when the sunshade reaches the desired position.

Activating operation of the sunshade

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

If the operation of sunshade is deactivated (e.g. after disconnecting and connecting the battery), then the operation will have to be activated.

› Turn on the ignition and set the switch to position » Fig. 45 *on page 63*.
› Press the button and hold down.

The sunshade opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the button.

Lights and visibility

Light

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating the lights 64
Daytime running lights(DAY LIGHT) 65
Turn signal and main beam 65
Automatic driving light control 66
Xenon headlight 66
High-beam assistant (Light Assist) 67
Fog lights/rear fog light 67
Fog lights with CORNER function 68
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 68
Hazard warning light system 68
Parking light 68
Entry space lighting 69
Driving abroad 69

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in this layout» Fig. 46 *on page 64*.

WARNING

The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the light conditions.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the light is on, the light-emitting surface demists after a short time.

Operating the lights

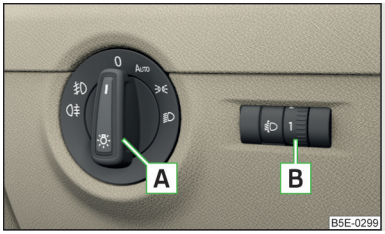


Fig. 46
Light switch and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

To **switch the lights on/off**, turn the A » Fig. 46 switch to one of the following positions (equipment-dependent).

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Switching lights on/off automatically » page 66

Switching on the parking lights or parking lights on both sides » page 68

Switching on the low beam

To **adjust the headlight range control**, turn dial B » Fig. 46 in line with the vehicle load » !.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty

1 All seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot loaded

3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

The **Xenon headlights** feature no manual headlight range control. After switching on the ignition, adjust these **automatically** to the load and driving condition of the vehicle.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to meet the following conditions - otherwise there is a risk of an accident.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- If, with a dipped beam, the ignition is turned off, then the dipped beam will automatically switch off[1] and the parking lights will come on. The parking lights are switched off when the ignition key is removed (for vehicles with the KESSY system, after opening the driver's door).
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daytime running lights(DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The daytime running lights (hereinafter only referred to as "function") lights the front and rear vehicle area (only valid for some countries).

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position **0** or **AUTO**.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The function is activated.

Activating/deactivating function on vehicles with Infotainment
The function can be deactivated/activated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Light**.

Deactivating on vehicles without Infotainment
› Turn off the ignition, pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition and hold the lever in the above position until an audible signal sounds (about 3 s).

Activating on vehicles without Infotainment
› Turn off the ignition, pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition and hold the lever in the above position until an audible signal sounds (about 3 s).

! WARNING
Always switch on the low beam when visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

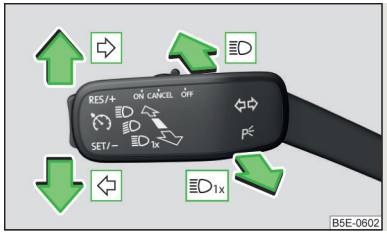


Fig. 47
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

Control stalk positions » Fig. 47
⇨ Switch on right turn signal
⇦ Switch on left turn signal
≡D Switch on main beam (spring-tensioned position)
≡D1x Switch on main beam or headlight flasher (spring-loaded position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The **headlight flasher** can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal** switches off automatically, depending on the steering angle after completing the turn.

Use the control stalk to switch on/off the **headlight assistant**» page 67.

Comfort flashing
When the operating lever is pressed lightly up or down, the indicator in question flashes three times.

If during comfort signalling the operating lever is pressed in the opposite direction, the indicating will stop.

Comfort flashing can be activated / deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Light**.

[1] Does not apply to the position **AUTO**, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function » page 68.

WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving light control



Fig. 48
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 48, then depending on the equipment the automatic switch on / off the lights corresponding to the light or weather conditions (rain) takes place.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering AUTO illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol also illuminates next to the light switch.

Automatic driving light control in the rain (hereafter referred to as function)
The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The function is activated.
✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 30 s.

The light turns off automatically about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

Setting, activation/deactivation
The following functions can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Light**.

- Sensitivity adjustment of the sensor for determining the lighting conditions for automatic driving light control
- Automatic driving light control during rain

CAUTION

Poorer visibility is evaluated by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the rear-view mirror. Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.

Xenon headlight

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The Xenon headlights (hereinafter referred to as just system) use the driving data to automatically ensure the for the best possible light cone in front of the vehicle.

The system will automatically operate in the following modes: urban, extra-urban, motorway, rain, fog, adjusting the lighting direction of the headlights for road illumination on bends.

The system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO**.

WARNING

If there is a system malfunction the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

High-beam assistant (Light Assist)

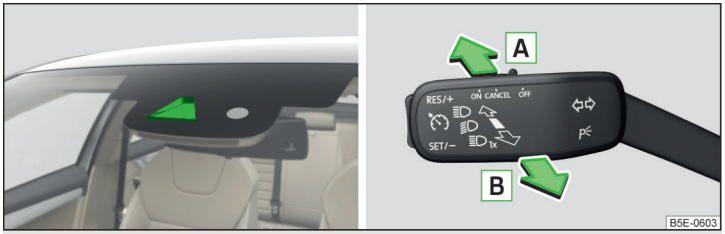


Fig. 49 **Sensor window for the high-beam assistant / system on / off**

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The system automatically switches the high beam on/off in accordance with the existing traffic (other vehicles) and environmental conditions (e.g. driving through a lit village).

The high beam on/off is controlled by a sensor or a camera » Fig. 49.

Activating / Deactivating the system takes place in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Light** → **Light Assist**.

Conditions for the system function

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
✓ The vehicle speed is over 60 km/h or for some countries more than 40 km/h.
✓ The windscreen is clean in the sensor area.

Switching on and off

› To **turn on** the system, push the control stalk into the sprung position A » Fig. 49, the warning light illuminates in the display of the instrument cluster.
› To **turn off** the automatically switched on main beam, push the control stalk into the sprung position B, the » Fig. 49 warning light expires.
› To **manually switch on** the main beam, push the control stalk into the sprung position A » Fig. 49, the warning light expires.

The headlight switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h.

If there is a **fault**, the error message will appear in the instrument cluster display. Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

The system is used only for support, thus the driver is not released from his obligation to manually adjust the main or low beam according to the given ambient conditions (e.g. in unfavourable lighting and weather conditions, as when passing poorly lit road users, if necessary, when the visual range of the sensor is limited by an obstacle).

! CAUTION

Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.

Fog lights/rear fog light

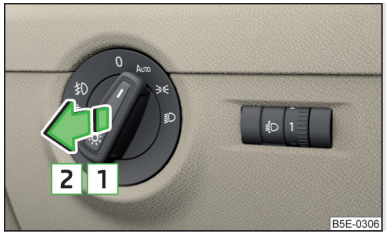


Fig. 50
Light switch – switch on front and rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

Switching on the fog lights / rear fog lights is possible if the following conditions apply.

✓ The lights switch is in position **AUTO**, or » Fig. 50.

› To **switch on** the **fog lights**, turn the light switch to position 1; the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.
› To **turn on** the **rear fog light**, pull the light switch to position 2, the indicator light will light up in the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle is not fitted with **fog lights**, the **rear fog light** is switched on by pulling out the light switch to the only possible setting.

The fog lights/rear fog light are **switched off** in the reverse order.

Note

While driving with an accessory connected to the trailer socket (e.g. trailer, bike carrier) only the equipment is illuminated by the fog light. The towing device must be installed at the factory or from the ŠKODA original accessories.

Fog lights with CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The CORNER function automatically switches on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle (e.g. when cornering), if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply [1].
- ✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

The two functions can be activated/deactivated and set in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Light** .

CAUTION

- Poorer visibility is evaluated by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the rear-view mirror. Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

[1] If the two switch-on variants are conflicting (e.g. if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on), the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Hazard warning light system

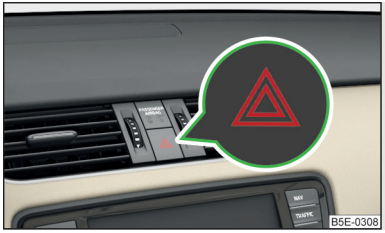


Fig. 51
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

› To **switch on/off**, press the ⚠ button » Fig. 51.

When first switched on, the turn signal lights and the warning light ⚠ buttons all flash at the same time as the warning lights ⬅ ➡ in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

The automatic activation of hazard warning lights can take place during a heavy braking. After starting or accelerating the hazard warning system is automatically switched off.

When the hazard warning system is on and the indicator light is switched on (e.g. when turning), the hazard warning lights are switched off temporarily and only the turn signal flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking light

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on the side light P on one side

› Switch off the ignition.

› Press the control lever all the way into position ⇨or⇦ until it stops» Fig. 47 *on page 65*.

The parking light is illuminated on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Switching on the side light on both sides ⫸⫷

› Switch on the ignition and turn the light switch into position⫸⫷ » page 64, the parking lights are turned on.
› Switch off the ignition and lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible warning is turned off.

! CAUTION

- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking lights may switch off automatically due to a low battery charge.

If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, the parking lights will not switch on automatically!

Entry space lighting

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The lighting is positioned on the lower edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.

The lighting **switches on** after unlocking or opening the vehicle door (depending on the lighting conditions).

The lighting **switches off** after around 30 seconds after closing the front door or switching on the ignition.

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), your headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. Therefore, it is necessary to have the headlights adapted by a specialist garage.

You can set the xenon headlights yourself by activating **travel mode** in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Light**. In this mode, no automatic beam adjustment is made ahead of the vehicle.

Interior lighting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

interior light, front 69
Interior light, rear 70

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off. With the ignition switched off, the lights will automatically switch off after approximately after 10 minutes.

interior light, front

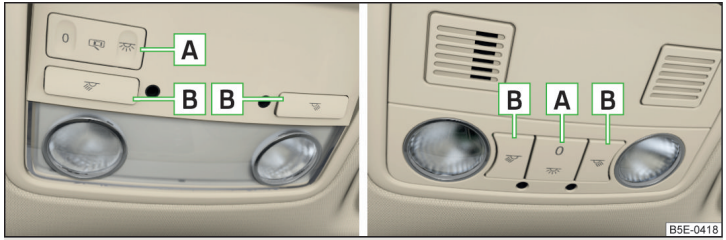


Fig. 52 **Operation of the front light: Version 1 / version 2**

Positions of the rocker switch A » Fig. 52

Switching on
Automatic operation (centre position)
0 Switching off

There is no icon available for the centre position (automatic operation) in Version 2.

Switch on / off (by pressing the relevant switch B) » Fig. 52

Reading lamp left
Reading lamp right

Automatic operation - position
The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.
- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.
- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Interior light, rear

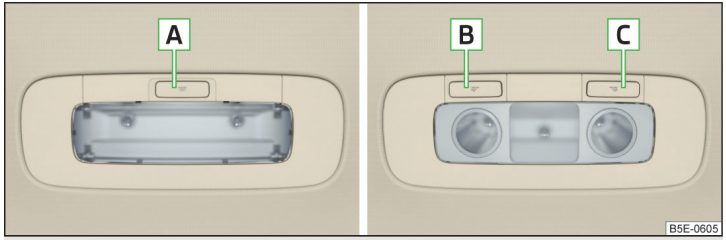


Fig. 53 **Interior light, rear: Variant 1 / Variant 2**

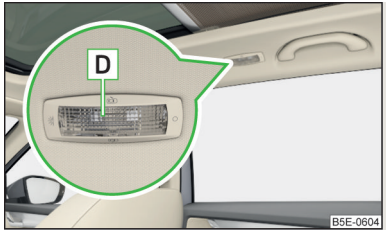


Fig. 54
Interior light, rear: Variant 3

Variant 1 - Operation (by pressing the switch) » Fig. 53
A Switching on and off

Option 2 - switching on/off (by pressing relevant switch) » Fig. 53
B Reading lamp left
C Reading lamp right

Variant 3 - operation (by moving the light lens C) » Fig. 54
Switching on
Automatic operation[1)]
Switching off

The rear lights (variant 1/variant 2) are operated together with the front lights.
- When the front interior lighting is **switched on**, the rear interior lighting also turns on automatically.
- When the front interior lighting is **switched off**, the rear interior lighting can be turned on/off as required.

Viisibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater 71
Sun visors 71
Sunshade 71

WARNING
No objects should be attached to the sun visor that could restrict the view or endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or in a collision.

[1)] In this position, the same conditions apply as for the automatic operation of the lighting from the front seats» page 69.

Windscreen and rear window heater

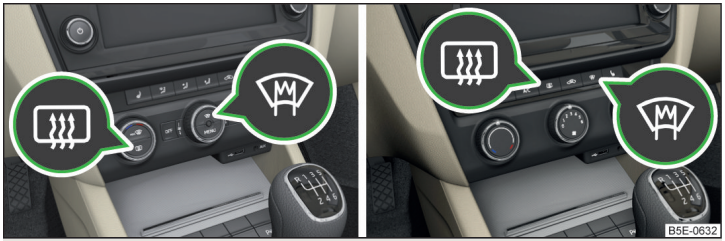


Fig. 55 **Buttons for the front and rear window heater: Climatronic / manual air conditioning, heating**

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the front /and rear window.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

Buttons for the heating (depending on vehicle equipment) » Fig. 55

- Switch on/off the rear window heating
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off

When the heating is switched on, a light illuminates inside or below the button.

The heating automatically switches off after 10 minutes.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Note

- If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » page 258, *Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.
- If the lighting inside or below the button flashes, the heater will not work because of the low charge of the battery.
- If the Climatronic recognises that the windshield could fog up, the windshield heating is automatically switched on. This function can be activated / deactivated on the Climatronic control panel menu MENU →⚙.

Sun visors

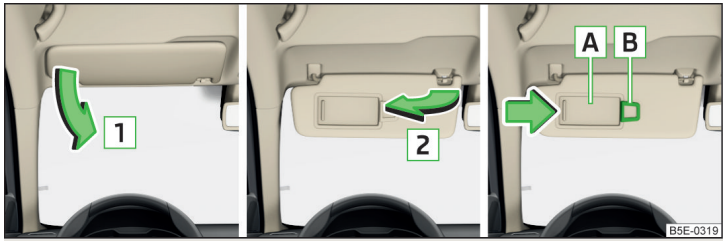


Fig. 56 **Fold down visor / flip up visor / make-up mirror and Park Memo Holder**

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

Operation and description of the sun visor » Fig. 56

1 Swivel cover towards the windscreen
2 Swivel cover towards the door
A Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)
B Parking ticket holder

Sunshade

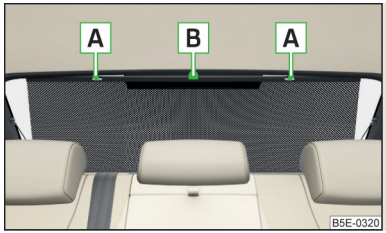


Fig. 57
Sun screen

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

The sun screen is located in a housing on the luggage compartment cover.

› To **dim** pull the screen B out of the housing at the handle and hook into the magnetic holders A » Fig. 57.

› To **furl** grab the screen at the handle B and remove from the holders A. Hold the sunshade so that this can slowly roll back in without damaging.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front wipers and washers ____ 72
Rear wipers and washers / reversing camera cleaning system ____ 73
Headlight cleaning system ____ 73

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot are closed.

WARNING

Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window washer fluid could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

CAUTION

- If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. The wipers must be set to the service position to raise them off the windscreen » page 277.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor.
- Carefully separate frozen windscreen wiper blades from the windscreen and free from snow and ice.
- Handle the windscreen wipers with care - there is a risk of damage to the windscreen by the windscreen wiper arms.
- Do not switch on the ignition when the wiper arm is raised from the windscreen - there is a risk of damage to the bonnet by the wiper arms.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wipers will try to push away the obstacle five times. The wipers then stop to prevent themselves from being damaged. Only switch the wipers on again after the obstacle has been removed.

Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper blades.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than +10 °C.

Front wipers and washers



Fig. 58
Operating the front windscreen wipers and washer system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 72 first.

The lever can be moved to the following positions » Fig. 58

HIGH High-speed wiping

LOW Slow-speed wiping

INT Depending on equipment fitted:
- Intermittent wiping
- Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain

OFF Wipers and washers off

1x Single wipe of the windscreen (spring-loaded position)

A Setting of windscreen wiper interval for the position **INT** - by setting the switch in the direction of the arrow, the windscreen wipers will wipe more often

Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position)

Spraying and wiping the window

After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 2 to 3 wiper strokes.

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic windscreen wiping during rain can be in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Mirrors and wipers activated/ deactivated**.

WARNING

Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is still responsible for setting the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

Note

If the wiping is carried out without interruption, the wiping speed varies depending on the vehicle speed.

Rear wipers and washers / reversing camera cleaning system

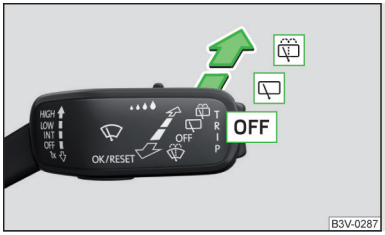


Fig. 59
Operating the windscreen wipers and washing system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 72 first.

The lever can be moved to the following positions » Fig. 59

- Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position) - after releasing the control stalk, the wipers perform another 2 to 3 wiper strokes
  Spraying the rear view camera (sprung position)
- Rear screen wiping
- **OFF** Wipers and washers off

Automatic rear wiper

If the windscreen wiping is performed without interruption, then the automatic regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place.

This function can be activated / deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Mirrors and wipers**.

Note

The rear window is wiped automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 72 first.

The headlights are cleaned with every first and after every tenth spraying of the windscreen under the following conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The outside temperature is about -12° C to +39° C.

To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice (e.g. using the de-icing spray).

Rear view mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror dimming 74
Exterior mirrors 74

WARNING

Exterior mirrors increase the field of view, however, they make objects appear smaller and further away. Therefore, use the interior mirror whenever possible for assessing the distances to the vehicles following behind.

WARNING

- The mirrors with automatic dimming contain electrolyte fluid which may leak if the mirror glass is broken - this can irritate skin, eyes and the respiratory system.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. If necessary get medical assistance.

Interior mirror dimming

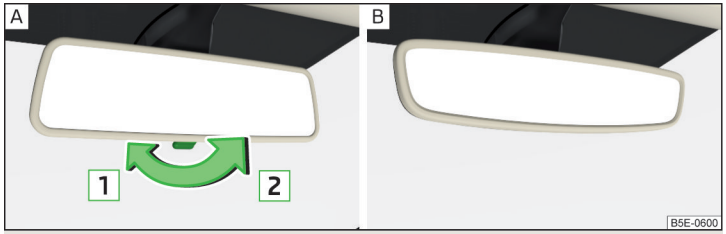


Fig. 60 **Interior mirror: manual dimming / auto-dimming- Variant 1**

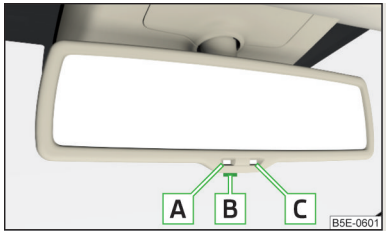


Fig. 61
Interior mirror with auto-dimming - Variant 2

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 60 - A

1 Basic mirror position (not dimmed)
2 Mirror blackout

Mirrors with auto-dimming - Variant 1
The mirror dimming» Fig. 60 - B is automatically controlled after the engine start.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Mirrors with auto-dimming - Variant 2 » Fig. 61

A Warning light - lights when dimming is activated
B Switch for the activation of the automatic mirror dimming
C Light sensor

! WARNING

- Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) not in the vicinity of the **mirror with automatic dimming**. The illuminated display of an external device can affect the function of the rear-view mirror - This is a risk of an accident.
- The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not compromised (e.g. by the sunshade at the back). The sensors are located on the front and back of the mirror.

Exterior mirrors

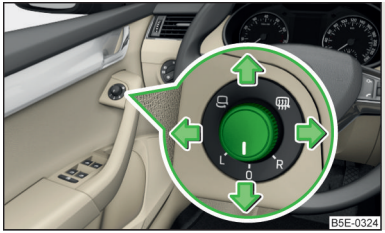


Fig. 62
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

The exterior mirrors can (depending on vehicle equipment) have a manual or electric fold-in function, automatic dimming and memory function.

The rotary knob can be moved into the following positions (depending on vehicle equipment)

L Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror
0 Switch off mirror control
R Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror
Exterior mirror heater (only operates when the engine is running)
Folding in the mirrors electrically (to fold back, move the rotary knob to another position) » !

Setting the mirror area
› Move the rotary knob in the direction of arrows » Fig. 62.

If the mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted manually by pressing on the edge of the mirror area.

Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously
This function allows the simultaneous adjustment of the two mirror areas. The function can be activated / deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Mirrors and wipers**.

› Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
› Adjust the mirror areas to the desired position.

Manual folding mirrors
The mirror can be manually folded in towards the side window. To restore it to its original position, fold back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

Automatic folding in/back of both mirrors
The exterior mirrors are automatically collapsed after locking the vehicle in the park position. After unlocking the vehicle, the mirrors are folded back to the driving position » !.

This function can be activated / deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Mirrors and wipers**.

Mirror with auto-dimming
The exterior mirror dimming is controlled together with auto rear-view mirror dimming » page 74.

Memory function for mirror (vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat)
It is possible to save the current setting of the exterior mirror when saving the driver's seat position with » page 77, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 78, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

Tilting the mirror area of the front passenger mirror (vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat)
The front passenger mirror area can be tilted to the stored position to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

Operating conditions.
✓ The function is activated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Mirrors and wipers**.
✓ The setting of the mirror area has been previously stored» page 77, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat* or. » page 78, *Memory function of the remote control key*.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.

The mirror area returns to its initial position after the rotary knob is set to another position or if the speed is greater than 15 km/h.

! WARNING
Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

! CAUTION
▪ Never manually fold in/out the electrically folding exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage to the mirror!
▪ When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

Seats and head restraints

Front seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual adjustment 76
Electrical adjustment 77
Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat 77
Memory function of the remote control key 78
Folding front passenger seat 78
Armrest setting 79

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – otherwise there is a risk of an accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.

Manual adjustment

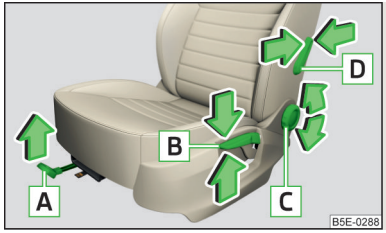


Fig. 63
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pulled, pressed or turned in the direction of the arrows » Fig. 63.

- **A** Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction (after releasing the control lever must lock audibly)
- **B** Adjusting the seat height[1)]
- **C** Adjust the tilt of the backrest (do not lean on the backrest when adjusting)
- **D** Setting the extent of the curvature of the lumbar support

Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

Electrical adjustment

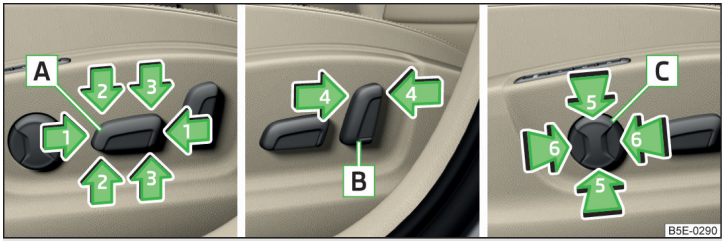


Fig. 64 **Control elements on the seat**

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pressed in the direction of area of the arrow » Fig. 64.

A seat adjustment
- **1** - Move in the longitudinal direction
- **2** - Change in inclination
- **3** - Change in height

B Adjusting the seat backrest
- **4** - Change in inclination

C Adjusting lumbar support
- **5** - Change curvature
- **6** - The degree of curvature change

! WARNING

The electric front seat adjustment is functional even with the ignition off. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a risk of injury!

i Note

If the inclination angle of the seat backrest relative to the seat surface is greater than approx. 110°, then it is not possible for safety reasons to save this setting in the memory of the electrically adjustable seats or the remote control key.

Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat

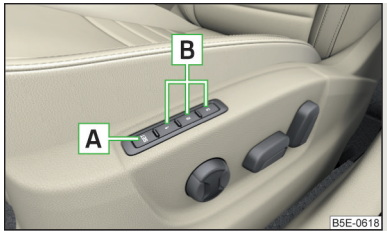


Fig. 65
SET button and memory buttons

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

Among the memory buttons B on the driver's seat, a setting for the driver´s seat and exterior mirror position can be saved » Fig. 65.

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror settings for the forwards drive

› Switch on the ignition, adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors.
› Press the SET A » Fig. 65 button and then, within 10 seconds, press the desired memory button B. Storing is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror settings for reversing

The function for lowering the passenger-side mirror surface when reversing can be activated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Mirrors and wipers**.

› Turn on the ignition and press the desired memory button B » Fig. 65.
› Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control to the position for the front passenger mirror area » page 74.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear. The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open-press- the desired memory button **B**.
› In other cases (e.g. if the ignition is switched on or the driver's door closed), **hold** the button.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Note

Every time you save new seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forwards, you must also save the front passenger mirror setting for reversing again.

Memory function of the remote control key

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

Every time the vehicle is locked, the driver´s seat and exterior mirror settings are saved and assigned to the key with which the vehicle was locked.

After the following unlocking of the vehicle with the same key and opening the driver's door, the driver´s seat and exterior mirrors that are saved to this key will be adopted.

This function can be activated / deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Seats**.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror settings for reversing

The function for lowering the passenger-side mirror surface when reversing can be activated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Mirrors and wipers**.

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key and switch on the ignition.
› Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control to the position for the front passenger mirror area » page 74.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear. The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Folding front passenger seat



Fig. 66
Folding the front passenger seat forward

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

The front passenger seat can, (depending on vehicle equipment fitted), be folded forward into a horizontal position.

› To **fold** the seat down, pull the lever in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down the seat back in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 66. The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.
› To **fold back**, pull the lever in the direction of arrow 1 pull and fold back the seat back in the direction of arrow 2. The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.
› Check this by pulling on the seat and on the seat backrest.

! WARNING

- If the seat backrest is folded down, only the seat behind the driver´s seat can be used to transport passengers.
- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 21.
- Do not adjust the seat back while driving - There is a risk of injury and an accident!
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs away from between the seat cushion and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport the following items on the seat backrest when folded forwards.
  - Objects that could restrict the driver's view.
  - Objects which make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle (e.g. if they roll under the pedals, or protrude into the driver's zone).
  - Objects which could lead to injury to passengers (e.g. if accelerating sharply, braking or changing direction).

Armrest setting

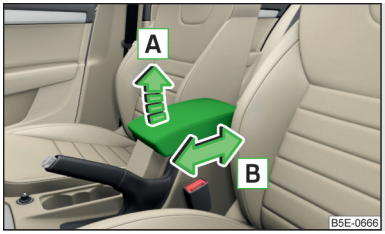


Fig. 67
Adjust armrest

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

› To **adjust the height**, lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow A into one of the locking positions » Fig. 67.
› To **close**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A until the stop and then fold down against the direction of the arrow.
› To **Set the armrest lengthways** in the direction of arrow B Move to the desired position.

Rear seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat backrests 79
Fold down armrest 80

Seat backrests

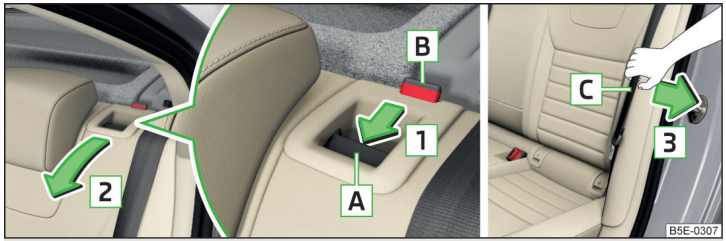


Fig. 68 **Fold the seat backrest forwards from the interior/pull the belt for the side trim**



Fig. 69 **Fold the backrest forward from the luggage compartment: Variant 1 / Variant 2**

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests. If necessary, remove the rear headrests » page 81.

Folding forwards from the passenger compartment

› Push the release lever A in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 68.

In the **undivided** seat back, press the release handles A on both sides of the seat back at the same time.

Folding forward from the luggage compartment
On vehicles with a net partition, the left and then the right and middle rear seat backrest must first be unlocked. The net partition must be rolled up in the housing.

› Pull the corresponding lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 69. The respective seat backrest is unlocked or folded forward.

Folding backwards
› Pull the seat belt C for the side panel in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 68.
› Raise the seat backrest against the direction of arrow 2 until the release handle A audibly locks. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

In the **undivided** seat back, pull the two outer belts to the side panel. After folding back the backrest, the release handles A should audibly click into place on both sides of the backrest and the red mark B should not be visible on either side of the backrest.

WARNING
- The seat backs in occupied rear seats must be properly engaged.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the backrest forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.

CAUTION
When moving the seat backrest the seat belts should not be trapped - there is a risk of damage to the seat belts.

Fold down armrest

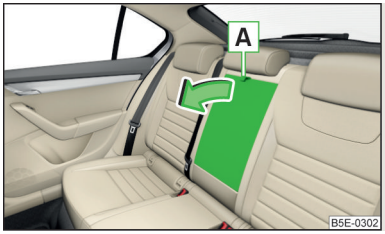


Fig. 70
Fold down armrest

The armrest can be **folded down** by pulling on the loop A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 70.

Headrests

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Setting the height of the front headrests 80
Setting the height of the rear headrests 81
Removing/inserting the rear headrests 81

Note
In sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the seat backrests and cannot be adjusted in height.

Setting the height of the front headrests

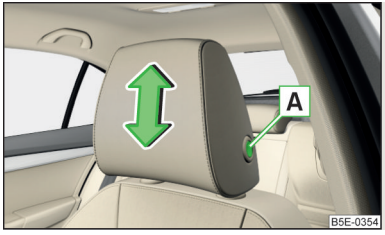


Fig. 71
Setting the height of the front headrest

› To **adjust the height**, hold the locking button A and move the rest in the desired direction » Fig. 71.

Setting the height of the rear headrests

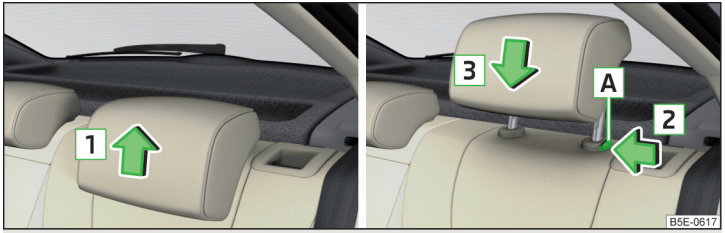


Fig. 72 **Setting the height of the back headrest**

› Grasp the headrest and move**upwards** in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 72.
› To move the headrest **down**, press the securing button A in the direction of arrow 2 and hold it down while pressing the headrest in the direction of arrow 3.

Removing/inserting the rear headrests

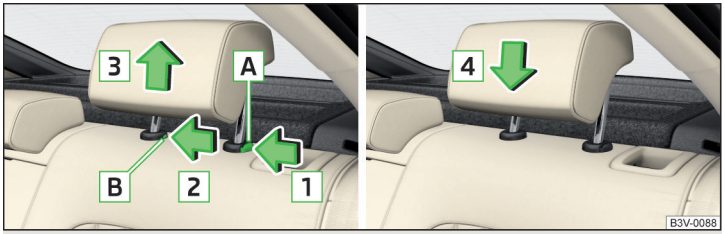


Fig. 73 **Removing/inserting the rear headrests**

Before removing/inserting the headrests, fold the corresponding seat backrest slightly forward » page 79.

› To **remove** the headrest, pull it out of the seat backrest up to the stop.
› Hold the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1, at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the locking button in the opening B in the direction of arrow 2 and pull out the rest in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 73.
› To **insert** the headrest, push the headrest into the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 4 until the locking button clicks into place.

Seat heaters

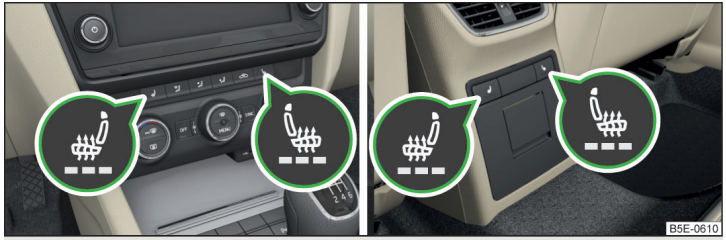


Fig. 74 **Buttons for heating the front seats/rear seats**

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

Seat heating buttons » Fig. 74

Left seat heating
Right seat heating

› To **turn on** the heating to max, press the key or button.

By repeatedly pressing the button, the heat is turned down until it is completely **switched off**. The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights underneath / in the button.

The seat heating only operates when the engine is running.

When the ignition is switched off, the seat heating / ventilation is also switched off. if the engine is started again within 10 minutes, then the driver's seat heating / ventilation is switched on again automatically according to the setting before switching off the ignition.

WARNING

If you are sensitive to pain and/or temperature, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the seats.

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not switch on the heating for unoccupied seats.
- Do not switch on the heating for seats which have objects on them (e.g. a child seat, bag or similar).
- Do not switch on the heating for seats which have seat covers or protective covers on them.

Note

If the on-board voltage decreases, the seat heating switches off automatically » page 258, *Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.

Useful features

Interior fittings

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Ticket holder 83
Storage compartment on the driver's side 83
Stowage compartments in the doors 83
Storage compartment in the front centre console 84
Phonebox 84
USB and AUX input 85
Cup holders 85
Waste container 85
Multimedia holder 86
Storage compartment under the front arm rest 86
Glasses compartment 87
Storage compartment on the front passenger side 87
Storage compartment for umbrella 87
Clothes hook 88
Storage pockets on the rear sides of the front seats 88
Storage compartment in the rear centre console 88
Long cargo channel 89
Removable through-loading bag 89

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – There is a risk of an accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - There is a risk of an accident!
- Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat except objects (e.g. child safety seat) provided for this purpose – risk of accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

WARNING (Continued)

- For safety reasons, lockable storage compartments should be closed while driving - there is a risk of injury from the opened lid or through the loose objects in the compartment.
- Make sure no objects protrude from the storage compartments - There is a risk of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible loads for the storage compartments and pockets - There is risk of injury and risk of damage to the compartments and pockets!
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars etc. should only be stored in the ashtray - There is a risk of fire/burns!
- The storage compartments and the waste containers are not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – There is a risk of fire!

CAUTION

Do not place any large or sharp objects in the storage compartments and pockets - there is a risk of damage to the compartments and pockets.

Ticket holder

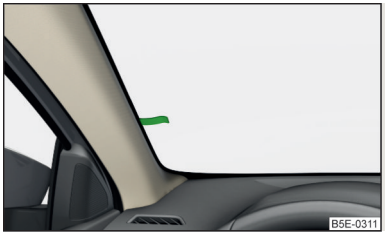


Fig. 75
Ticket holder

Read and observe and on page 82 first.

The ticket holder» Fig. 75 is provided for the holding and displaying e.g. car park tickets.

Storage compartment on the driver's side



Fig. 76
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe and on page 82 first.

› To **open**, lift the handle and fold out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 76.
› To **close**, swing the lid against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

Stowage compartments in the doors

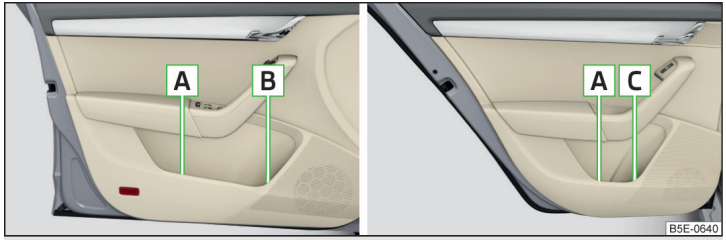


Fig. 77 **Storage compartments: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe and on page 82 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 77

A Storage compartment
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
C Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 l

WARNING

The storage compartment A » Fig. 77is to be used exclusively for storing objects which do not stick out - danger of restricting the effectiveness of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

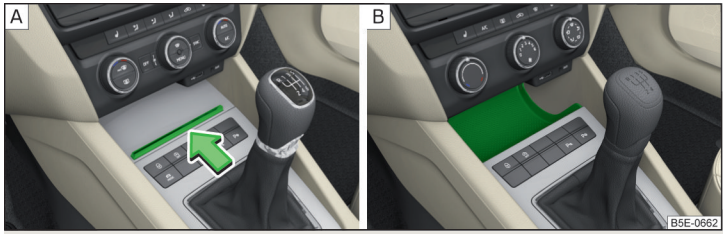


Fig. 78 **Opening storage compartment/ non-lockable storage compartment**

Read and observe and on page 82 first.

› To **open**, press the edge of the lid in the direction of arrow » Fig. 78A.
› To **close**, pull on the lid edge against the direction of the arrow.

Certain models do not have a storage compartment lid» Fig. 78B.

Phonebox



Fig. 79
Phonebox

Read and observe and on page 82 first.

The storage compartment in the front centre console can be equipped with the Phonebox function.

If a telephone is directed with its rear side downwards on the pad in the storage compartment » Fig. 79, the phone signal is amplified by the roof antenna.

Telephones that support the Qi standard for wireless charging, can also be charged wirelessly in the storage compartment.

While wireless charging is taking place, **no** objects may be between the pad and the telephone being charged.

WARNING

- The phone may become warm during wireless charging, so it should be removed carefully from the tray.
- Metal objects between the pad and the phone to be charged can become hot due to the action of the induction field - this is a risk of injury. If there is a metal object in the storage compartment that has become hot, then take out the telephone and let the object cook in the storage compartment!

CAUTION

- Metal objects between the pad and the phone to be charged can become hot due to the action of the induction field - this is a risk of damage to the telephone.
- With some phones, the charging process can be interrupted or the phone can switch off due to heating up.
- Do not insert any electronic or magnetic storage media (e.g. SD cards, USB sticks, cards with magnetic strips or chips) between the pad and the phone to be charged- there is a risk of data loss and damage to these data carriers.
- If a message appears in the Infotainment screen that the phone cannot be charged, then proceed as follows.
- Check that there is no object between the support and the phone to be charged. If this is the case, then take out the object and the phone. Place the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad again.
- Check if the position of the phone to be charged has not changed during the journey. If this is the case, then take out the phone and put it back centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

Note

- At the start of the wireless charging, the appropriate message appears on the Infotainment screen.
- For optimum telephone signal strength and uninterrupted wireless charging, we recommend placing the phone in the storage compartment without the protective sleeve, if possible.
- Insert a max. 160x84 mm into the storage compartment.

USB and AUX input



Fig. 80
USB and AUX inputs

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The USB input (with ⇢ in) and AUX input (with AUX in) are located above the storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 80.

Information for use » page 140, *USB input* and » page 141, *AUX - input*.

Cup holders



Fig. 81 **Cup holder at the front/rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The cup holder is located in the front centre console A and in the rear armrest B » Fig. 81.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

WARNING

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!

CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Waste container

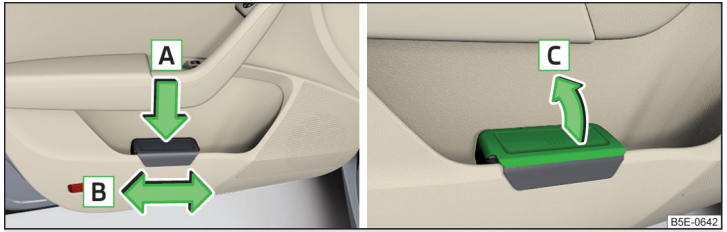


Fig. 82 **Waste container: Inserting and moving/opening**

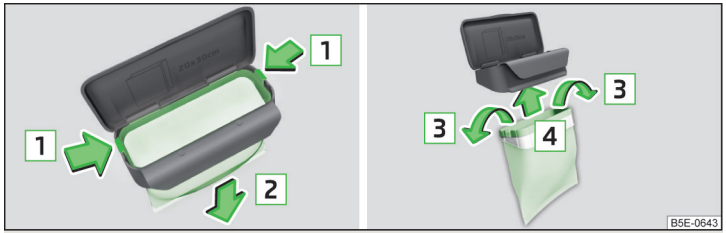


Fig. 83 **Replacing the bags**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slots in the doors.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 82.
› Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow B.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow A » Fig. 82.

Open/close waste container

› Lift the lid in the direction of arrow C » Fig. 82.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 83.
› Pull the bag together with the frame down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bag from the frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 3.
› Place the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow 4 into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly on the frame.

Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder



Fig. 84
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The multimedia holder» Fig. 84 is provided for storing mobile phones, MP3 players etc.

Storage compartment under the front arm rest



Fig. 85
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

› To **open**Pull the arm on the handle A in direction of arrow » Fig. 85.
› To **close**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow until the stop and then fold down against the direction of arrow.

Glasses compartment

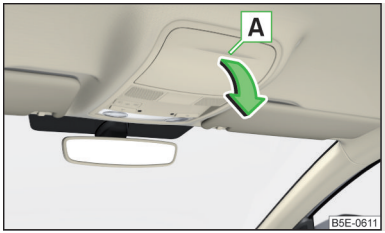


Fig. 86
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

› To **open**, press on the outer edge of the glasses compartment in area A . The compartment folds in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 86.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

! CAUTION

▪ Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - with high temperatures there is risk of damage.
▪ The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

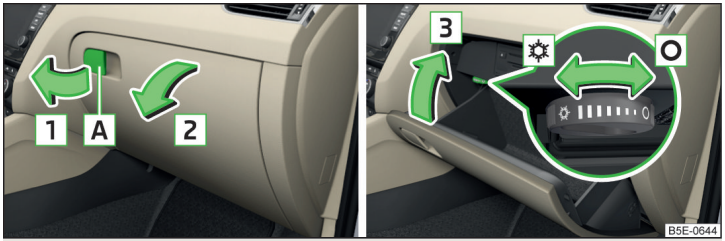


Fig. 87 **Open storage compartment / close storage compartment and open air supply**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light (this is illuminated when the parking lights / low beam are switched on), a pen/card holder and an air outlet.

Storage compartment
› To **open**, pull the handle A in the direction of arrow 1 and fold the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 87.
› To **close**, swivel the cover in the direction of arrow 3 until it audibly clicks into place.

Air supply
› To **open**, turn the rotary switch until it stops in the position » Fig. 87.
› To **close**, turn the rotary switch until it stops in the position ○.

The temperature of the storage compartment supplied with air is dependent on the setting in the air conditioning.

Storage compartment for umbrella

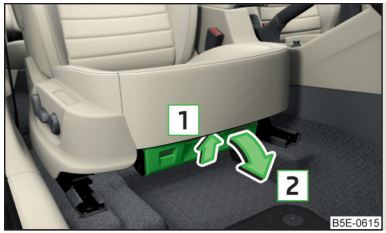


Fig. 88
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The storage compartment under the passenger seat is used for storing an umbrella.

› To **open**, pull the handle in direction of arrow 1 pull and open the compartment in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 88.
› To **close**, screw in the lid in the opposite direction of arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

! CAUTION

Never store a wet umbrella in the storage compartment - there is a risk of damage to the umbrella.

Note

We recommend that you use the umbrella from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Clothes hook

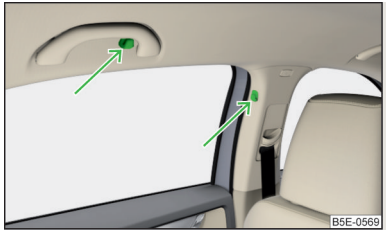


Fig. 89
Clothes hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors » Fig. 89.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 2 kg.

! WARNING

- Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing that has been hung up - There is a risk of injury.
- Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes - there is a risk of restricting the effectiveness of head airbags and a risk of injury from the hanger.
- Make sure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impede your vision.

Storage pockets on the rear sides of the front seats



Fig. 90
Map pockets

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The storage pockets » Fig. 90 are intended for the Storage e.g. of maps, magazines, etc.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console



Fig. 91
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

› To **open** Pull the handle on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 91.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow.

Long cargo channel

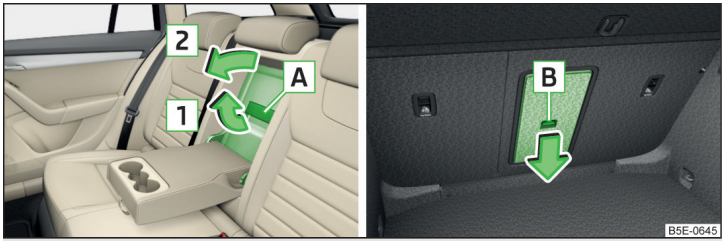


Fig. 92 **Open the cover: from the passenger compartment / from the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

After folding-up the rear armrest and cover, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the through-loading bag with skis can be pushed.

- To **open from the passenger compartment**, fold down the rear armrest slightly » page 80.
- Pull handle **A** in the direction of arrow **1** and fold down the cover in the direction of arrow **2** » Fig. 92.
- To **open from the luggage compartment**, push the securing tab **B** in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover with the armrest forwards.
- To **close**, fold the cover and the rear armrest upwards until the stop. This should audibly click into place.

The cover must be secured after the closing process. Ensure that the red field above the securing tab **B** is not visible.

! WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, through-loading bag.

Removable through-loading bag

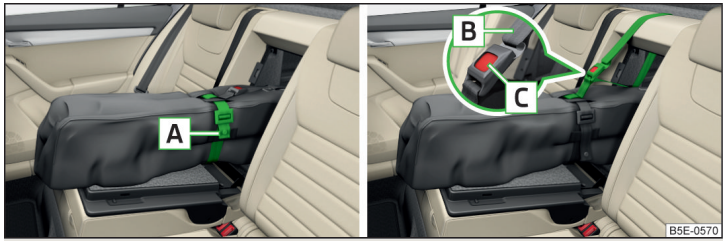


Fig. 93 **Tighten ribbon / secure through-loading bag**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 82 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to as through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis and poles (max. 4 pairs).

Stowing the through-loading bag and skis

- Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards» Fig. 92 *on page 89*.
- Place the empty, through-loading bag in the opening in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear. into the through-loading bag and close the bag.

Securing the through-loading bag and skis

- Tighten the strap **A** around the skis **in front of** the bindings» Fig. 93. The strap must hold the skis tight.
- Fold the seat backrest a little forward » page 79.
- Guide the securing strap **B** through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
- Then, fold the seat backrests back until the locking button clicks into place. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.
- Insert the securing strap **B** into the lock **C** until it clicks into place.

! WARNING

- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.
- Always stow and secure the skis and the bag securely - otherwise there is a risk of injury or accident!

CAUTION

Never fold and stow the through-loading bag when it is wet - There is a risk of damaging the through-loading bag.

Electrical sockets

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

12-volt power outlet ____ 90
230-volt socket ____ 90

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – There is a risk of an accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - There is a risk of an accident!
- Stow all devices safely during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – The is a risk to life!
- The devices may warm up during operation – The is a risk of injury or fire!
- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- The 12-Volt sockets also work if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.

CAUTION

When using the 12-volt sockets, the following notes are to be observed.

- The sockets can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts - otherwise the there is a risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Before switching the ignition on / off or before starting the engine, switch off the devices which are connected to the sockets - there is a risk of damage to the equipment due to voltage fluctuations.

12-volt power outlet

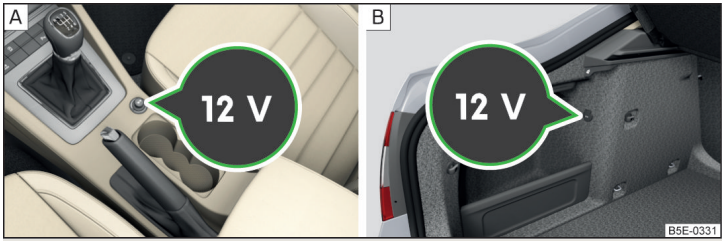


Fig. 94 **Cover of the 12 volt power outlet: in the front centre console/ in the boot**

Read and observe and on page 90 first.

› To **use**, remove the cover of the socket» Fig. 94 -A or open the cover of the socket» Fig. 94 - B.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

230-volt socket

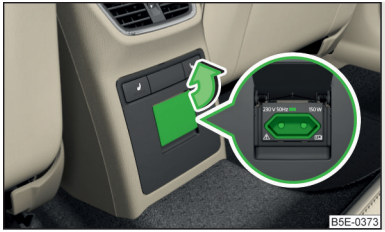


Fig. 95
Open the cover of the 230 volt power outlet

Read and observe and on page 90 first.

The 230-volt socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is released, the socket is activated and the warning light above the socket is illuminates green (if this flashes red, then the socket is deactivated).

› To **use**, fold up the cover of the socket in the direction of arrow» Fig. 95 and plug the electrical appliance plug into the socket.

The socket may be automatically deactivated for the following reasons.
- Excessive current.
- Low battery charge state.
- High socket temperature.

If disabling reasons no longer exist, the socket is automatically activated.

WARNING
- Make sure that no liquid or moisture enters into the socket - There is a risk to life! If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- The child lock on the power socket is unlocked when using adapters and extension cables which carry volts – There is a risk of injury!
- Do no insert any objects (e.g. knitting needles) into the contacts of the power socket – There is a risk to life!

CAUTION
- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230V plug, with a total power uptake of up to 150 watt.
- The plug of the electrical appliance must be plugged in up to the stop, otherwise the child safety lock can be unlocked and the socket may be activated but the electric appliance is still not receiving power.
- Do not connect bulbs with neon tubes in the socket - there is a risk of damaging the lamp.
- For appliances with an independent power source (e.g. such as notebooks), first connect the power source itself and only after that connect the appliance.

Ashtray and cigarette lighter

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Ashtray 91
Cigarette lighter 91

The ashtray can be used for ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like

WARNING
Never place hot or flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

Ashtray

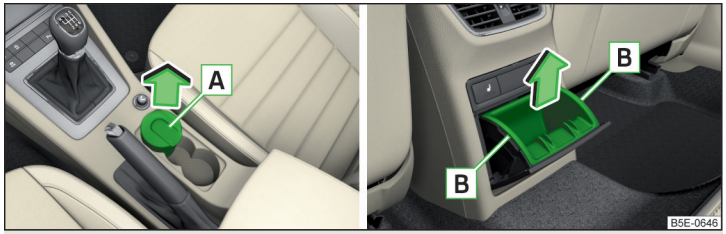


Fig. 96 **Removing front ashtray / Removing rear ashtray insert**

Read and observe ! on page 91 first.

Removable ashtray
› Hold the ashtray A (not by the lid) **remove** in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 96.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Ashtray with removable insert
› To **remove**, open the insert of the ashtray, hold the insert in the area B and remove in the direction of the arrow» Fig. 96.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 97
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 91 first.

› To **use** the lighter, push it in as far as the stop and wait until the glowing lighter clicks out again » Fig. 97.

› Take out the glowing lighter instantly, use it and insert it back into the socket.

WARNING

- The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a risk of burns, fire or damage to the vehicle interior.
- Be careful when using the cigarette lighter - There is a risk of burns.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12 volt socket.

Tablet holder

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attaching the rear headrests 92
Handle holder 93

External devices (e.g. tablet, smartphone, etc.) measuring min. 122 mm and max. 195 mm can be secured in the support.

The maximum permissible load of the holder is 750 g.

CAUTION

Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the holder - there is a risk of damage or functional impairment.

Attaching the rear headrests



Fig. 98 **Inserting: Adapter / holder**

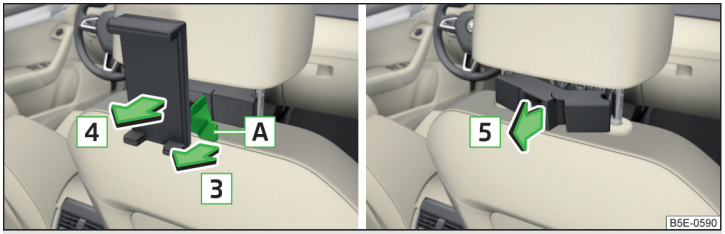


Fig. 99 **Removing: Holder / adapter**

Read and observe ! on page 92 first.

› To **insert**, attach the opened adapter to the guide rods of the front headrest and clip in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 98 » !.
› Clip the holder in the direction of arrow 2 into the adapter.
› To **remove**, pull on the securing tab A in direction of arrow 3 and take the holder in direction of arrow 4 out of the adapter » Fig. 99.
› Press the adapter and remove from the guide rods of the headrest in the direction of arrow 5.

WARNING

Be careful with the adapter- otherwise there is a risk of finger injury.

Handle holder

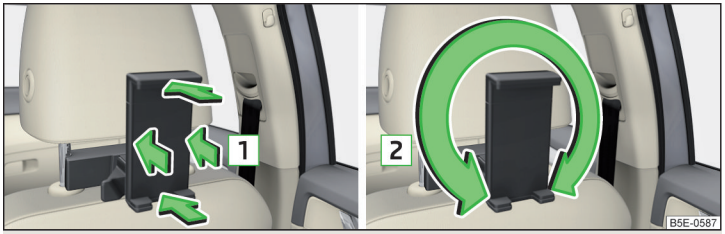


Fig. 100 **Tilt and rotate holder**

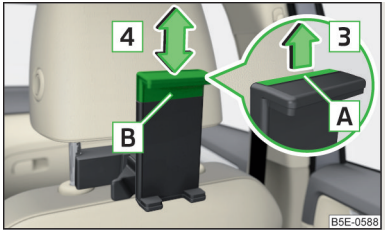


Fig. 101
Adjust holder size

Read and observe ! on page 92 first.

The holder may be by 30° in the direction of the arrow 1 **tipped** and by 360° in the direction of arrow 2 **turned** » Fig. 100.

› To **adjust the holder size**, pull out the securing tab A in the direction of arrow 3 and push the part B in the direction of arrow 4 to the desired position » Fig. 101.

Note

If there is no external device in the holder, then we recommend that the part B is moved down fully. Otherwise, irritating noise may occur at certain speeds.

Transport of cargo

Luggage compartment and transporting objects

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements 94
Fixing nets 95
Multifunction pocket 95
Folding double hooks 96
Foldable hook 96
Fasten the flooring 96
Floor covering on both sides 96
Net on the luggage compartment cover 97
Luggage compartment cover 97
Roll-up cover 98
Storage compartment with cargo element 99
Storage compartments under the floor covering 99
Multi-function pocket 100
Class N1 vehicles 100

When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics change due to the shift in centre-of-gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.

When transporting cargo the following the instructions must be adhered to

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it with suitable lashing straps to the lashing eyes or fixing nets so that they cannot slip.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Tyre pressure is to match the load.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on/off when the luggage compartment lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will go out automatically after 10 minutes.

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. Heavy objects were not secured sufficiently – There is a risk of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – There is a risk of an accident!
- An unsecured dirt or improperly attached load could slip during a sudden manoeuvre or in an accident in the vehicle - There is a risk of injury!
- Loose cargo could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- When transporting loads in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats .

CAUTION

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. - these could be damaged.
- Make sure that the heating elements of the rear window heater, the elements of the integrated aerial in the rear window or in the rear side windows are not damaged by abrasive items.
- Do not place sharp objects in the nets and storage compartments in the luggage compartment - there is a risk of damage to the net as well as the compartments.
- Put the items in the storage compartments carefully and not load these punctiform - there is a risk of damage to the compartments.

Fastening elements

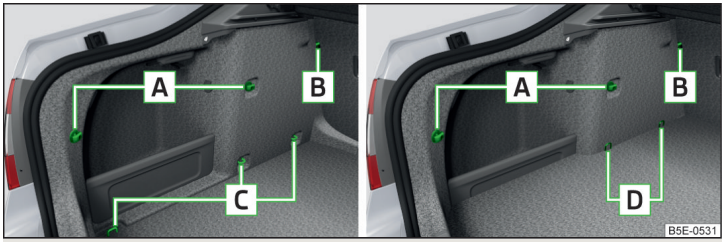


Fig. 102 **Fastening elements: Variant 1/variant 2 (G-TEC)**

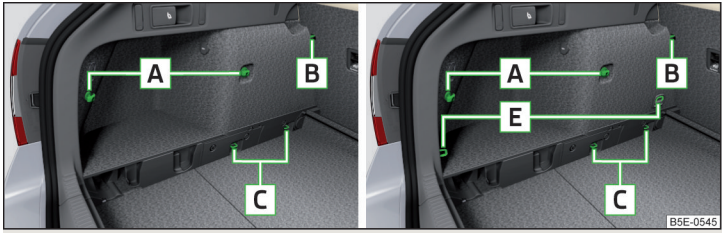


Fig. 103 **Fastening elements: Variant 3/variant 4**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

The fasteners are located on both sides of the luggage compartment.

Overview of the fastening elements » Fig. 102**and** » Fig. 103

- A Fasteners for securing fastening nets and multifunction pocket
- B Lashing eyes **only** for fastening fixing nets
- C Lashing eyes for fastening of cargo and fastening nets (in variant 1, the rear and centre eye is additionally provided for securing the multifunctional bag)
- D Lashing eyes for fastening cargo and fastening nets
- E Lashing eyes for fastening cargo and fastening nets

The lashing eyelet B is located behind the folding rear seat backrest .

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes C and E is 350 kg.

The maximum permissible load of the individual lashing eyes is D is 150 kg.

Fixing nets

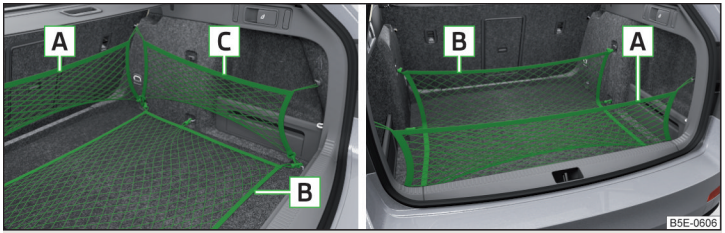


Fig. 104 **Fastening examples for nets**

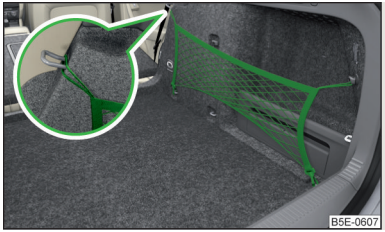


Fig. 105
Fastening vertical pocket

Read and observe and on page 94 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 104 **and** » Fig. 105

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket

The maximum permissible load of each of the nets is 1.5 kg.

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor and this is in the upper position, then the lashing eyes E » Fig. 103 *on page 94* can be used for attaching the nets.

CAUTION

On vehicles with lashing eyes D » Fig. 102 *on page 94* only the cross-bag are attached behind the seats and the floor net (the net can be attached to the rear fasteners A » Fig. 102 *on page 94* at the rear).

Multifunction pocket

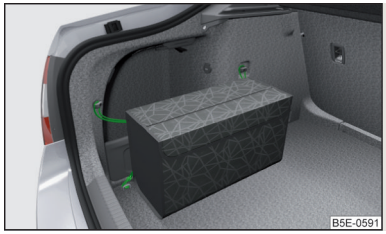


Fig. 106
Securing the multifunction pocket

Read and observe and on page 94 first.

The pocket » Fig. 106 can be secured to the fastening elements A and the rear and centre lashing eyes C » Fig. 102 *on page 94*.

The maximum permissible load for the bag attached to the fastening element is 3 kg.

CAUTION

In vehicles with a variable loading floor, it is not possible to attach the bag to the fastening elements.

Folding double hooks



Fig. 107
Folding double hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

Folding double hooks» Fig. 107 for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc. are provided on one or both sides of the luggage compartment depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle (e.g. Bags etc.).

An item of luggage with a maximum weight of 5 kg can be attached to each side of the double hook.

Foldable hook

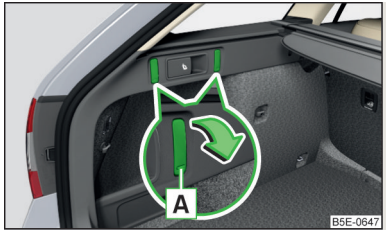


Fig. 108
Fold down hook

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

Foldable hooks for hanging small items of luggage, such as bags, etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

› To the **use** on the lower part A Press the hook and pull it down in direction of the arrow » Fig. 108.

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7 kg.

Fasten the flooring

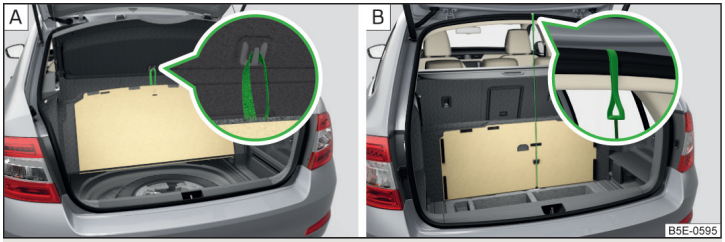


Fig. 109 **Fixing the floor covering: Version 1 / version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

Fastening options for the flooring » Fig. 109

A With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover
B With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid

! CAUTION

For version 1, the following information applies.
▪ The hook on the luggage compartment cover is only provided for the fixing of the floor covering, do not hang objects on it - there is a risk of damage to hook.
▪ The flooring must be secured on the hook only with an open boot, therefore, before closing the lid, check to see if the flooring is attached to the hook - there is a risk of damage to hook.

! CAUTION

The floor covering can be fixed with Version 2 only if the variable loading floor is folded in the upper position » Fig. 121 *on page 101*.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable (suitable for transporting wet or dirty items).

CAUTION

The double sided floor covering can only be used in vehicles without the variable loading floor» page 100 - There is a risk of damage to the variable loading floor.

Net on the luggage compartment cover

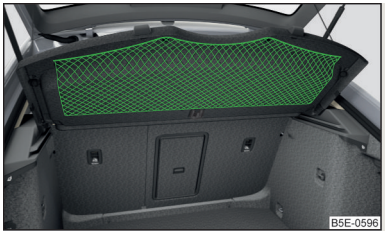


Fig. 110
Net on the luggage compartment cover

Read and observe and on page 94 first.

The net at the bottom of the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 110 is provided for transporting light and soft items.

The maximum permissible load of the net is 1.5 kg.

Luggage compartment cover

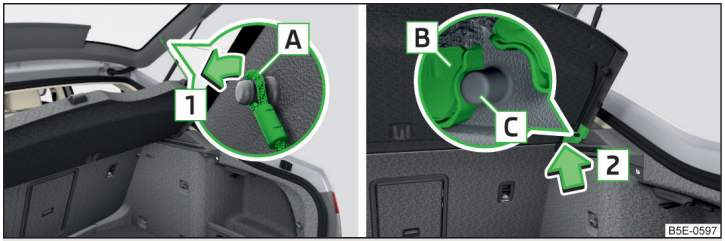


Fig. 111 **Remove the luggage compartment cover**



Fig. 112
Luggage compartment cover stowed behind the rear seats

Read and observe and on page 94 first.

If the support straps A » Fig. 111 are attached to the boot lid, then opening the lid will raise the boot lid cover (hereafter only referred to as "cover").

The cover can be removed from the vehicle and stowed behind the rear seat backrests if required » Fig. 112. Before removing the cover, the sunshade at the back must be rolled up» page 71.

Removing

› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 111.
› Hold the raised cover and press on the two sides on the underside of the cover in the area of the recess C.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fitting

› Place the fixtures B on the cover above the brackets C on the side trim » Fig. 111.
› Press on the two sides to the upper side of the cover in the region of the mounts C. The fixtures B must lock into place of the recess C on both sides of the luggage compartment.
› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A.

WARNING

Do not place any objects on the cover during the trip - There is a risk of injury if you brake or have a collision!

CAUTION

- Observe the following instructions to avoid canting and the subsequent damage to the cover or the side trim.
  - The cover must be inserted properly and the load must not exceed the height of the cover.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the raised position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the raise position and the rear backrest.

Roll-up cover

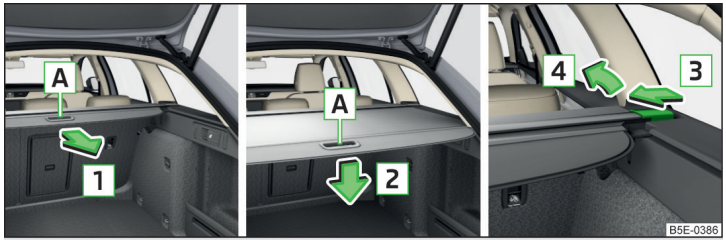


Fig. 113 **Roll-up cover: Pull out / roll up / remove**

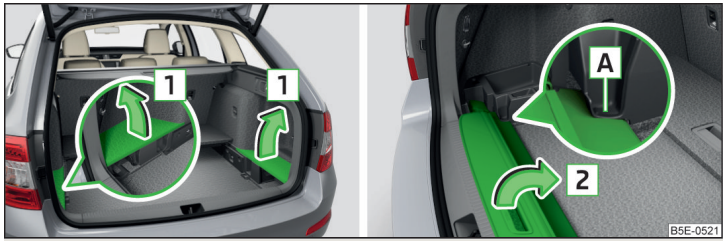


Fig. 114 **Removing side covers / stowing foldable luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe and on page 94 first.

Extending

› Grasp the cover on the handle A and pull it out in the direction of the arrow 1 until it clicks » Fig. 113.

Retracting

› Push the cover in the area of handle A in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 113. The cover rolls up automatically. The rolled-up cover can now be removed.

Removing/inserting

› Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow 3 and remove the cover in the arrow direction 4 » Fig. 113.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Stowage

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, then the removable roll-up luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 101.
› Remove the side covers in the direction of arrows 1 » Fig. 114.
› Insert the front part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover under a portion of the side trim D on the left.
› Fold the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the roll-up cover - there is a risk of damage to the cover and a risk of injury in the event of a sudden stop or a vehicle collision!

Note

If you want to stow the roll-up luggage compartment cover and the roof rack **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the rear roof rack.

Storage compartment with cargo element

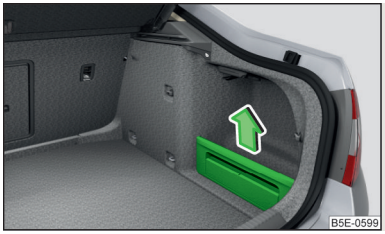


Fig. 115
Remove storage compartment

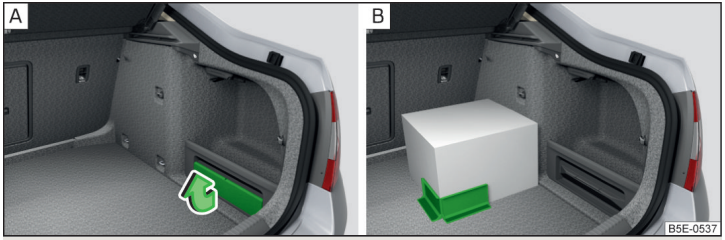


Fig. 116 **Remove cargo element / Load fastening example**

Read and observe and on page 94 first.

The storage compartment with cargo element may be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, depending on the equipment variant.

The space behind the storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 2.5 kg.

The cargo element is designed for attaching and securing objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Storage compartment

› Remove the storage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow» Fig. 115. **Insertion** takes place in reverse order.

Cargoelement

› Before use, remove theCargoelement in the direction of arrow» Fig. 116 - A.
› Use thecargoelements to secure the load as close as possible to the rear seats» Fig. 116 B.
› After use, stow the cargoelements in their original position.

Storage compartments under the floor covering

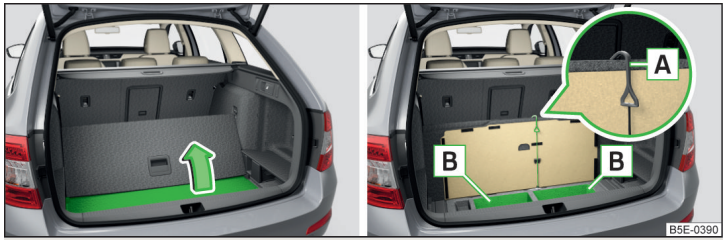


Fig. 117 **Lift floor covering/storage compartments under the floor covering**

Read and observe and on page 94 first.

For vehicles that are not equipped with an emergency wheel located under the flooring of the luggage compartment B » Fig. 117.

Every storage compartment B is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.

Use of the storage compartments

› Dividing the luggage compartment with variable loading floor » page 102.
› Lift the floor covering in the direction of arrow» Fig. 117 and hook into hook A on the upper edge of the variable loading floor.
› Stow the cargo in the storage compartments.
› Unhook hook A and fold back the flooring against the direction of the arrow (fold back the variable loading floor to the initial position if necessary).

When transporting tall objects in the compartments, the hook A must be hooked onto the upper edge of the variable loading floor.

CAUTION

Before closing the boot lid, check that the cargo transported in the storage compartments does not strike against the luggage compartment cover - there is a risk of damage to the lid.

Multi-function pocket

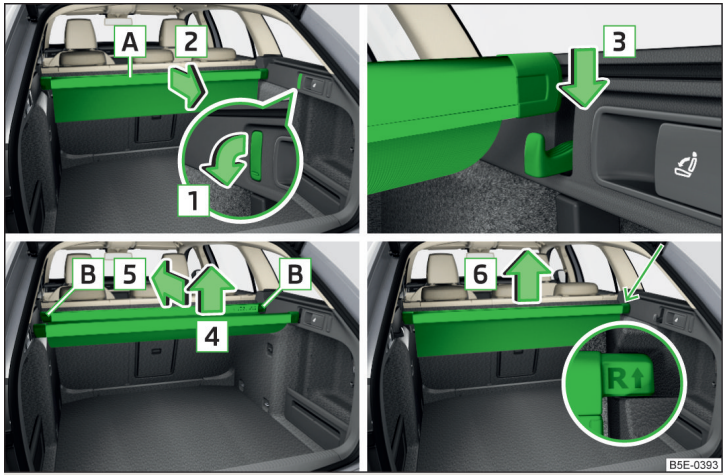


Fig. 118 **Multi-function pocket: Pull out / insert / push in / remove multi-function pocket**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

The multifunction pocket (hereinafter referred to as pocket) is provided for storing clothing and light objects with no sharp edges.

The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 3 kg.

Removal and fitting

› Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 118.
› Grasp the rear bar A with both hands and withdraw the pocket in arrow direction 2.
› Place the rear bar onto the two hooks that are folded forward in the direction of the arrow 3 all the way to the stop.

Pushing in

› Remove the rear bar of the hook in direction of arrow 4 push in the pocket in the direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 118.
› Place the rear bar against the front bar and press them together at both ends B.
› The front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment fold back opposite to the direction of arrow 1.

Removing/inserting

› Remove the roll-up cover » page 98.
› Remove the pocket from the fittings in the direction of the arrow 6 » Fig. 118.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

› Insert the end of the bar marked with R in the right-hand mounting and the end of the bar marked with L in the left-hand mounting. The arrows should be pointing forward.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe ! and ! on page 94 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Positions of the variable loading floor 101
Fold together / fold out the variable loading floor 101
Dividing the luggage compartment 102

Positions of the variable loading floor



Fig. 119 **Set variable loading floor to the upper position / variable loading floor in the upper position**



Fig. 120 **Set variable loading floor to the lower position / variable loading floor in the lower position**

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

Set to the upper position

› Lift the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 119about 20 cm high and pull towards you.
› Lift the loading floor to the height of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow 1 until you hear the clicking sound and press forward.

The space below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects such as the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 98, the roof cross bars» page 103 etc.

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position » Fig. 120.

Set into the lower position

› Check that the area below the variable loading floor is empty.
› Lift the variable loading floor by the handle A» Fig. 120 over the loading edge in the direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the loading floor towards you in the direction of arrow 3 until it sinks to the bottom position, and push forward.

Fold together / fold out the variable loading floor



Fig. 121 **Fold up variable loading floor / folded variable cargo floor in the upper position**

› To **fold together**, hold the variable loading floor on the handle A and lift in the direction of arrow 1» Fig. 121.
› Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow 2.

Folding out takes place in reverse order.

The variable loading floor is folded together / out in the same way in the upper and lower position.

Dividing the luggage compartment

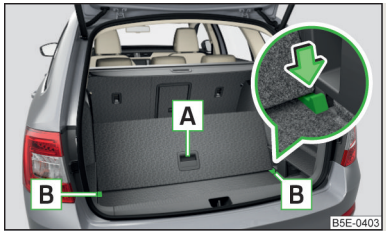


Fig. 122
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

› To **divide**, lift the variable loading floor by the handle A and push in the rear edge of the variable loading floor in the grooves B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 122.

The variable loading floor is secured against movements in the grooves B.

Folding out takes place in reverse order.

The variable loading floor is divided in the same way in the upper and lower position.

Net partition

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the net partition 102
Removing and installing the net partition housing 103

Using the net partition

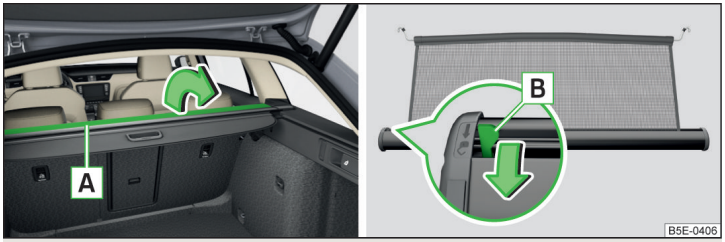


Fig. 123 **Open part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover / release lever**

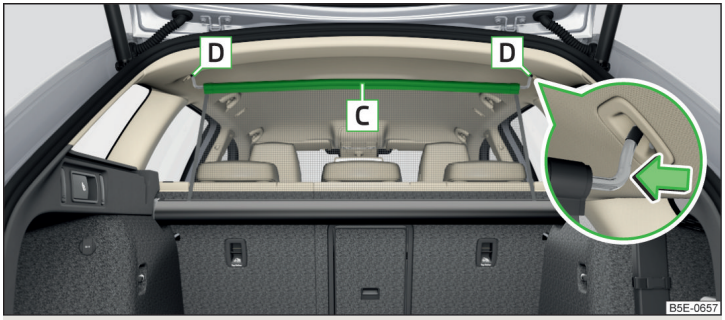


Fig. 124 **Correctly secure net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state**

The net partition can either be pulled out and secured from behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

Pull out and secure the net partition behind the rear seats

› Fold out part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 123.

› Pull out the net partition at the crossbar C and hook into one of the receptacles D » Fig. 124.

› On the other side, press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow and hook it into the appropriate receptacle D.
› Make sure that the crossbar is firmly seated in the two mountings D.
› Fold back part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 123.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats
› Fold out part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 123.
› Press on the crossbar and remove it from the receptacles D» Fig. 124, first on one side, then on the other side.
› The crossbar C **Hold** in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up without being damaged.
› Fold back part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 123.

Pull out and secure the net partition behind the front seats
The process is analogous to that for behind the rear seats. Before pulling out the net partition, the rear seat backs are to be folded forwards. After rolling up the net partition into the housing, the rear seat backs are folded back » page 79.

! CAUTION
If the net partition blocks when pulling it out, push the release lever B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 123.

Removing and installing the net partition housing

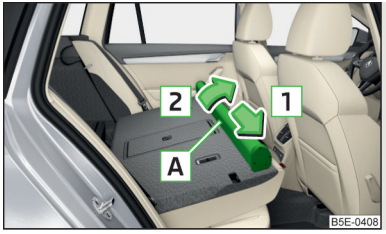


Fig. 125
Removing the net partition housing

› To **remove**, fold forwarded the rear seat backrests and open the rear right door.
› Push the housing A in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the mountings in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 125.
› To **install**, insert the recesses on the housing A into the mountings on the rear seat backrests and push the housing against the arrow 1 up to the stop.
› Fold the rear seat backrests to their original position.

Transport on the roof rack

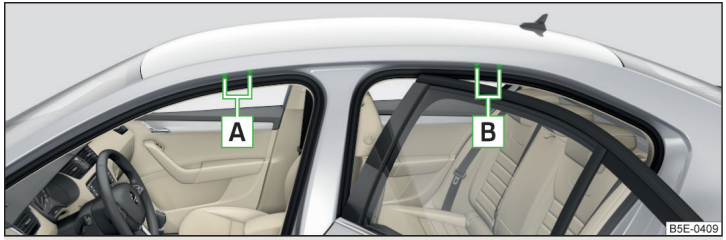


Fig. 126 **Attachment points**



Fig. 127 **Remove the side panels of the luggage compartment/stow the roof rack**

The attachment points A and B are located on both sides of the vehicle » Fig. 126.

The mounting and dismounting of the basic carrier is carried out according to the instructions provided.

Roof load
The maximum permitted weight of the load incl. carriers is 75 kg.

Stowing the roof racks
With vehicles have the variable loading floor, then the roof racks can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 101.
› Remove the side panels of the luggage compartment in the direction of arrows 1 » Fig. 127.
› Remove the key from the roof rack» ! and stow in the recess C.
› Insert the front roof rack A into the front recesses of the side panel and the rear roof rack B into the back recesses of the side trim.
› Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 1.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 101.

WARNING

The following instructions must be observed to aid road safety when transporting cargo on the roof rack.
▪ Always distribute the load on the roof rack evenly and secure properly with suitable lashing straps or tensioning straps.
▪ When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
▪ The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

▪ Before stowing the roof rack, the key must be removed from the carrier - otherwise there is a risk of key corruption.
▪ If you want to stow the roof rack and the roll-up luggage compartment cover **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the rear roof rack.

CAUTION

▪ Make sure that the sliding / tilting roof or the boot lid does not collide with the roof load when opened.
▪ Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the load being transported.

Note

We recommend that you use a roof rack from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Heating and ventilation

Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Heating and manual air conditioning 105
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning) 105
Operate Climatronic in Infotainment 106
Climatronic - automatic operation 107
Air distribution control 107
Air outlet vents 108

The heater heats and ventilates the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system works under the following conditions.
✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above 2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

When the cooling system is switched on, it prevents misting of the windscreen and windows.

It is possible to boost the effectiveness of the cooling system by briefly activating the air recirculation system» page 107.

Health protection
To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.
▸ The difference between the outside temperature and the inside temperature should not be greater than 5 °C.
▸ The cooling system should be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
▸ Once a year, a disinfection of the air conditioner must be carried out by a specialist company.

WARNING

- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting. Otherwise there is a risk of an accident.
- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

Note

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Heating and manual air conditioning

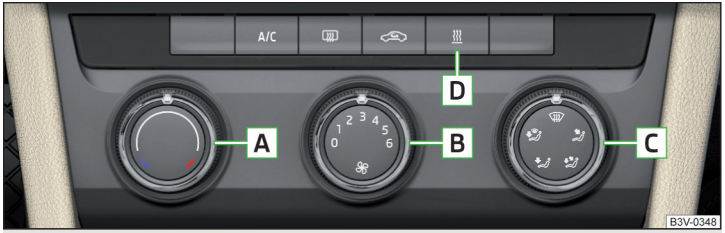


Fig. 128 **Controls of the heating / air conditioning**

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 128.

A Setting temperature
- ◄ Reduce the temperature / ► increase the temperature

B Set the blower speed (Level 0: Fan off, level 6: highest speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 108

D Depending on equipment fitted:
- Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 109
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 71

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Switch on/off the rear window heater » page 71

Switch recirculation on/off » page 107

When the function is switched on, the warning light illuminates below the button.

Information on the cooling system

After pressing the button **A/C**, the warning light underneath the button illuminates even if not all conditions are met for the cooling system. The cooling system starts to work as soon as the following conditions have been met » page 104.

When the air distribution control is turned to position the cooling system is activated.

Note

To ensure adequate thermal comfort, during operation of the manual air conditioning there could be an increase in the engine idle speed in some circumstances.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)



Fig. 129 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 129.

A Display the temperature setting for the left side

B Display the temperature setting for the right side

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 108

D Adjust fan speed (the setting is indicated by the number of illuminated control lamps shown in the knob)

E Adjust the temperature for the left side (or for both sides)[1)]
- ▶ Reduce the temperature / Increase the temperature

F Adjust the temperature for the right side (or for both sides)[2)]
- ▶ Reduce the temperature / Increase the temperature

G Depending on equipment fitted:
- ▶ Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 109
- ▶ **OFF** Switch off Climatronic

H Interior temperature sensor

Switch recirculation on/off » page 107

MAX Intense air flow to the windscreen on / off (when switching on, the air flow to the windows and **A/C** is also switched on)

Switch on/off the rear window heater » page 71

Switch on/off the windscreen heating » page 71

MENU Setting Climatronic in Infotainment (also operate with some functions)

SYNC Synchronize the temperature inside the entire vehicle according to the temperature setting on the driver's side

AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 107

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

When the function is switched on, a warning light lights up within or below the button.

Setting temperature

The temperature can be set on the Climatronic control unit or in Infotainment» page 106. In the range between 16 ° C to 29.5 ° C, an automatic temperature control takes place.

At a temperature setting below 16 ° C,**LO** lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum cooling performance**.

At a temperature setting over 29.5 ° C,**HI** lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum heating output**.

CAUTION

Do not cover the interior temperature sensor H » Fig. 129 - the function of the Climatronic could be affected.

[1)] Applies to left-hand drive vehicles.

[2)] Applies to right-hand drive vehicles.

Note

In order to ensure adequate thermal comfort, there may be an increase in engine idle speed during operation of the Climatronic in some circumstances.

Operate Climatronic in Infotainment

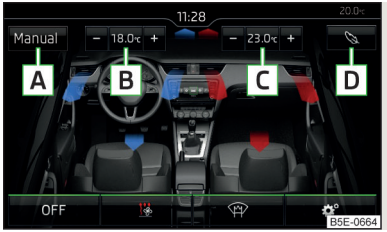


Fig. 130
Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero:Climatronic main menu

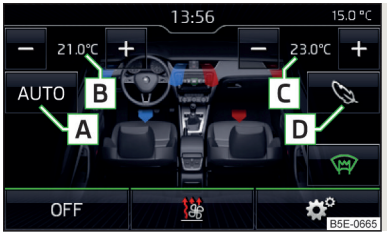


Fig. 131
Infotainment Swing: Climatronic main menu

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

› To display the **main menu**press the button **MENU** on the Climatronic control unit.

Function surfaces and screen display » Fig. 130 and. » Fig. 131

A Displays the current operation mode (or set the operation mode) of the Climatronic

B Set the desired temperature, front - left side

C Set the desired temperature, front - right side

D Setting the power in **AUTO** operation

	Colour representation of the air flow from the air vents at the front (Blue colour - temperature reduction / red colour - temperature increase)
OFF/ON	Switching on/off the Climatronic
	Set the auxiliary heater and ventilation
	Switch on/off the windscreen heating[a)]
	Other Climatronic settings

a) When switched on, the symbol in the function surface is green.

Other Climatronic settings
Press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic control panel → tap the function surface on the Infotainment screen.
- **Air con. profile** - Setting the operating performance **AUTO** during operation (applies to the infotainment Swing)
- **Automatic air recirculation** - Automatic re-circulated air mode on/off
- **Automatic auxiliary heater** - Quick interior heating on/off
- **Automatic windscreen heating** - Activates/deactivates the automatic windscreen heating

Climatronic - automatic operation

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

› To **turn on**, press the **AUTO** » Fig. 129 *on page 105* .
› To **turn off**, press any button for the air distribution or change the blower speed. The temperature regulation is continued.

Holding the button **AUTO** will turn on **SYNC** automatically.

Operating modes
Automatic mode works in three modes - moderate, medium, and intensive. Setting the different modes is carried out via the function surface D » Fig. 130 *on page 106* and. » Fig. 131 *on page 106*.

After the automatic mode is switched on, Climatronic works in the last selected mode. The currently selected mode is displayed on the Infotainment screen.

Air distribution control

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the Interior of the vehicle. In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

› To **switch on** press the button. The warning light below the button lights up.
› To **switch off**, press the button again. The warning light below the button goes out.

Heating and manual air conditioning system
If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation modes is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is switched off. By pressing the button, the air recirculation also in this position can be switched on again.

When the cooling system (button **A/C**) is switched on and the temperature regulator is "turned" to the left, the recirculated-air mode is switched on.

Climatronic
The Climatronic can have a sensor that measures the air recirculation mode and automatically turns on if there is an increased concentration of pollutants in the incoming air.

When the pollutant concentration decreases to the normal level, the recirculated air mode is automatically switched off.

Automatically switch on / off the air recirculation function can be set in the Infotainment screen. by pressing the button **MENU** on the Climatronic and by subsequently pressing the function surfaces → **Automatic air recirculation**. Automatic power on / off function at a temperature above 2 ° C.

A shut-off of the air recirculation function is carried out by pressing the **AUTO** button, possibly depending on the moisture conditions in the vehicle interior.

! WARNING
The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because no fresh air is fed through from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. As soon as windows mist up, turn on the recirculation system immediately - The is a risk of an accident!

CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from the interior is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Air outlet vents

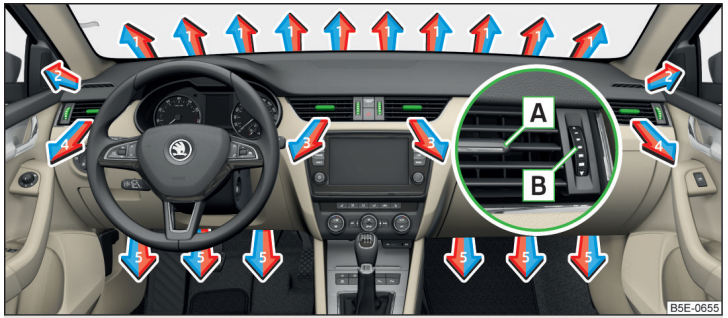


Fig. 132 **Air vents at the front**

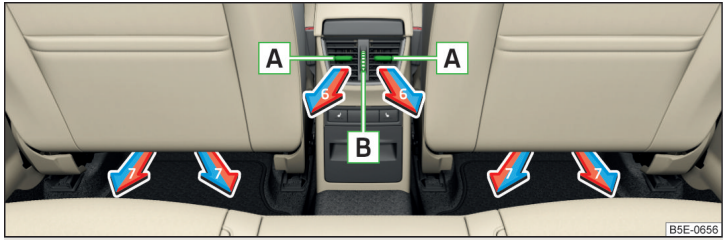


Fig. 133 **Air vents at the rear**

Read and observe ! on page 105 first.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 132 and **6** » Fig. 133 – the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

The setting of the airflow direction is carried out by moving the adjustment element **A** » Fig. 132 or» Fig. 133 in the desired direction.

› To **open**, turn the controller **B** » Fig. 132 or» Fig. 133 upwards.
› To**close**, turn the controller **B** » Fig. 132 or» Fig. 133 downwards.

Depending on the setting for air distribution, the air will flow from the following air vents.

Set the direction of the air outlet	Air vents » Fig. 132 and » Fig. 133
	1. 2. 4
	1. 2. 4. 5. 7
	3. 4. 6
	4. 5. 7
	3. 4. 5. 6. 7

CAUTION

Do not cover the air vents - the air distribution could be compromised.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switch on / off 109
Operation in Infotainment 110
Remote control 110

The **auxiliary heating** heats the vehicle interior as well as the engine. For heating, fuel is consumed from the fuel tank.

The **auxiliary ventilation** enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior with the engine switched off, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) (referred to just as auxiliary heating in the following) ensures the heating / ventilation depending on the setting of the air conditioning and the air outlet vents before switching off the ignition.

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. If you want to use the auxiliary heating, do not park the vehicle in places where the exhaust fumes can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc. - There is a risk of fire.

CAUTION

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.

Note

- The auxiliary heating only switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- In the engine compartment, water vapour may form during the operation of the heater.

Switch on / off



Fig. 134 **Button for switching on / off (Climatronic / manual air conditioning)**

Read and observe and on page 109 first.

Functional requirements of the auxiliary heating.

✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning light is not illuminated in the instrument cluster).

Manual on / off

▸ Using the button on the control panel of the air conditioning» Fig. 134.

▸ Using the (switch on) /OFF (switch off) button on the remote control operation.

Automatic on / off

▸ Via an automatically programmed and activated pre-set time in Infotainment.

▸ According to the environmental conditions.

Switching off the auxiliary heating takes place automatically when there is a lack of fuel (warning light in the instrument cluster lights up).

After switching off the system, the coolant pump and the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the heating.

Setting automatic on / off

Climatronic: on the Climatronic button MENU → Tap the function area in the Infotainment screen. There will be a display of the last set operating mode with the option to change this.

Manual air conditioning: on Infotainment, press the button CAR → Tap the function surface .

Then follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen.

When automatic switching on is activated, the warning light in the symbol button lights up for about 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off » Fig. 134.

Operation in Infotainment

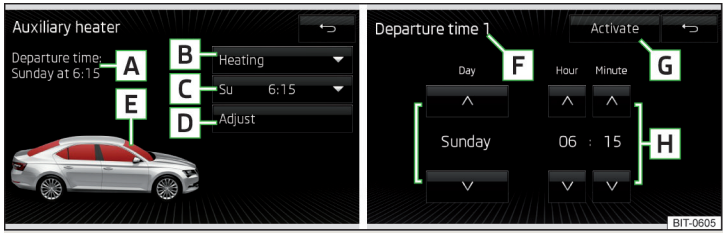


Fig. 135 **Aux. heating: Main menu/set preset time**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 109 first.

Call up the main menu

› On the Climatronic, press the button **MENU** → Tap the function area in the Infotainment screen.

Or vehicles with manual air conditioning:

› On Infotainment, press the button CAR → Tap the function surface .

Function surfaces and display » Fig. 135

- **A** Departure time - Day and time when the vehicle is to be ready for use
- **B** Setting the operating mode (heating / ventilation)
- **C** List of pre-selected times, activation / deactivation of the preset time
- **D** Set the preset times 1-3 and the duration (10-60 minutes)
- **E** When heating the windows are shown in red / with continuous aeration, the windows are shown in blue
- **F** Currently displayed preset time
- **G** Activation of the currently displayed preset time
- **H** Setting the departure time: Day, hour, minute

Only one preset time can be active. The activated preset time will be deactivated again after it has started automatically. For the next start, activate one of the preset times.

Note

- In the selection of the day in the preset time, there is an option between Sunday and Monday without the specified day. If this setting is selected, the vehicle will be ready for use at the selected time, regardless of the current day.
- If a different time is set, the activated preset time is automatically deactivated. The preset time must be reactivated.

Remote control

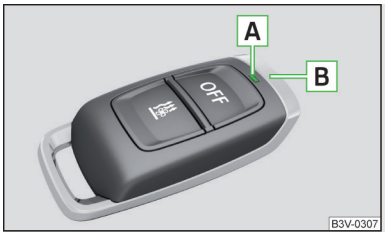


Fig. 136
Radio remote control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 109 first.

Description of the remote control » Fig. 136

- **A** Warning light
- **B** Aerial
- Switch on the auxiliary heating
- **OFF** Switch off the auxiliary heating

To switch the remote control on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial **B** » Fig. 136 pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the remote control if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

Display warning light **A**	Meaning
Lights up green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.

Display warning light A	Meaning
Quickly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e.g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 275.

! CAUTION

- The remote control must be protected against moisture, severe shocks and direct sunlight - Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the remote control.
- The range of the remote control with a charged battery is a few hundred metres (depending on obstructions between the remote control and the vehicle, weather conditions, the battery condition etc.).

Infotainment

Introductory information

Important information

Introduction to the subject

WARNING

- Only use Infotainment in such a way that you have control of the vehicle in every traffic situation (e.g. Do not write text messages while driving, do not link or connect the telephone, do not work with the contact list, do not enter any destinations, do not connect WLAN or SmartLink etc.)- Otherwise there is a risk of an accident!
- Always route the connection cable of the external device such that is does not restrict you when driving.

WARNING

- Adjust the volume to ensure that acoustic signals from outside the vehicle, e.g. sirens from emergency vehicles, can be heard at all times.
- High volumes can cause hearing damage!

CAUTION

In some countries, some Infotainment functions can no longer be selected when the vehicle is running faster than a certain speed. This is not a malfunction, but complies with the national legal regulations.

Mobile phones and applications



Fig. 137
QR code with reference to web pages for checking the compatibility of devices

The availability of some of the functions described in this Owner's Manual depends on the type of device to be connected and the applications installed in it.

Mobile phones

On the ŠKODA pages, check to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile phones. This verification is carried out by reading the QR code » Fig. 137 **or** after typing the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

Due to the multitude of mobile phones as well as the ongoing development of these devices, ŠKODA AUTO cannot always ensure compatibility with Infotainment unconditionally. It is always recommended to physically check the function on the associated vehicle, including the ŠKODA Partners, beforehand.

Only those versions of the selected phones will be tested and supported which originate from the official distribution network. The same also applies to their firmware and software.

The functions of the mobile phone to be tested may differ from the same type of mobile phone depending on the specification for the respective country or the specific service.

Mobile phones with the operating system and in the version available at the time of these tests will be tested. In this regard, it could be the case that the functions of a mobile phone may differ with a different operating system version compared to the one used with the tested phone.

ŠKODA AUTO can accept no responsibility for the continuous changes made by the mobile phone manufacturers and application vendors.

ŠKODA AUTO does not accept any liability for any damage to Infotainment or vehicle due to the use of incorrect or illegal applications or the improper or unauthorised use of mobile phones.

Applications

Applications can be installed in external devices (e.g. Mobile, tablet) making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO can accept no liability for their proper function.

Applications, their use and the required data connection may be chargeable. ▸

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

The function of mobile applications can be influenced by the quality of the Internet connection.

Some applications are dependent on the availability of services that are provided by third parties.

Infotainment overview

Description - Infotainment Columbus



Fig. 138 **Infotainment Columbus**

- Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
- Control dial for calls and confirmations
- 1 RADIO -*Radio* menu » page 133
- 2 MEDIA -*Media* menu » page 136
- 3 PHONE -*Telephone* menu » page 149
- 4 VOICE - Voice control » page 119
- 5 NAV - *Navigation* menu » page 169
- 6 TRAFFIC - Traffic news » page 185
- 7 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 187
- 8 MENU - Overview of Infotainment menus » page 118
- 9 Touchscreen » page 115

Description - Infotainment Amundsen



Fig. 139 **Infotainment Amundsen**

- Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
- Control dial for calls and confirmations
- 1 RADIO -*Radio* menu » page 133
- 2 MEDIA -*Media* menu » page 136
- 3 PHONE -*Telephone* menu » page 149
- 4 VOICE - Voice control » page 119
- 5 NAV - *Navigation* menu » page 169
- 6 TRAFFIC - Target-oriented traffic information » page 185
- 7 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 187
- 8 MENU - Overview of Infotainment menus » page 118
- 9 Touchscreen » page 115

Description - Infotainment Bolero



Fig. 140 **Infotainment Bolero**

⏻ Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
⊙ Control dial for calls and confirmations
1 RADIO -*Radio* menu » page 133
2 MEDIA -*Media* menu » page 136
3 PHONE -*Telephone* menu » page 149
4 VOICE - Voice control » page 119
5 SETUP - Infotainment settings » page 122
6 SOUND - Sound settings » page 122
7 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 187
8 MENU - Overview of Infotainment menus » page 118
9 Touchscreen » page 115

Description - Infotainment Swing



Fig. 141 **Infotainment Swing**

⏻ Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
⊙ Control dial for calls and confirmations
1 RADIO -*Radio* menu » page 133
2 MEDIA -*Media* menu » page 136
3 Depending on equipment fitted:
- PHONE -*Telephone* menu » page 149
- MUTE - Muting

4 SETUP - Infotainment settings » page 130
5 SOUND - Sound settings » page 130
6 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 187
7 Touchscreen » page 115
8 SD card slot » page 140

External module

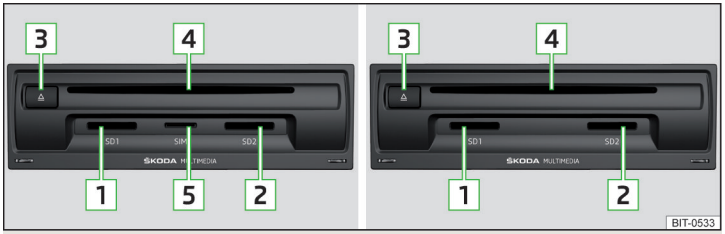


Fig. 142 **External Module: Infotainment Columbus with SIM card slot / Infotainment Columbus without a SIM card slot**



Fig. 143 **External Module: Infotainment Bolero / Infotainment Amundsen**

The external module is located in the storage compartment on the front passenger side.

1 SD1 card slot
2 SD2 card slot
3 ⏏ - CD / DVD eject button
4 CD / DVD slot
5 SIM card slot

Touch screen

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

Infotainment is equipped with a touch screen which can be operated with a **light touch** or swipe of a finger.

The brightness level of the screen can be set » page 123.

CAUTION

- It is not possible to operate the screen with your fingernails or while wearing gloves.
- To protect the screen, you can use a suitable screen protector for touch pads that does not affect its functionality.
- Dirt can be removed from the screen by using a soft cloth and, if necessary, methylated spirits.

Touch screen

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

Infotainment is equipped with a touch screen that can be operated by **light finger pressure** on the screen surface.

The brightness level of the screen can be set » page 130.

CAUTION

- The screen can only be operated by a slight touch of a finger. If there is too much pressure there is a risk of damage to the screen!
- To protect the screen, you can use a suitable screen protector for touch pads that does not affect its functionality.
- Dirt can be removed from the screen by using a soft cloth and, if necessary, methylated spirits.

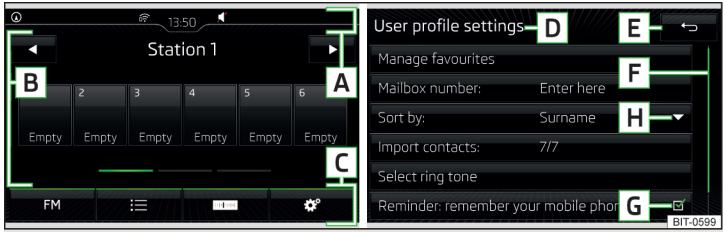


Fig. 144 **Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Screen areas/ screen display**

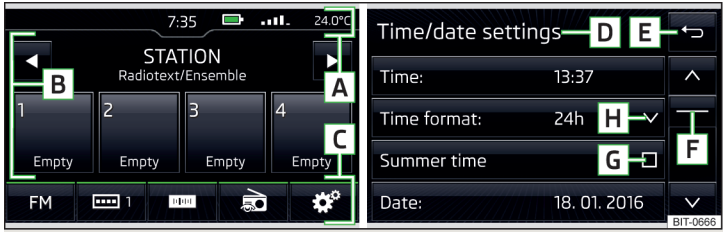


Fig. 145 **Infotainment Swing: Screen areas / screen display**

Screen display description » Fig. 144 **and** » Fig. 145.

A Status line with time and outdoor temperature data and other information
B Information and the operation of the current menu
C Function surfaces of the current menu
D Identification of the current menu
E Return to the higher-level menu
F Sliding regulator
G Menu item with "Checkbox"
- ☑ - Function is switched on
- ☐ - Function is switched off

H ▼ / ∨ Open a sub menu of the menu item with the "pop-up window"

Function surfaces

The screen areas which confirm a function or a menu are called "**function surfaces**".
- **White text** - the surface is active and thus selectable
- **Grey text** - the surface is inactive and therefore not selectable
- **Green frame** - currently selected surface

Selecting menu/menu item/function
- By moving your finger across the screen in the desired direction (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero).
- By tapping on the function surface ∨ or ∧ » Fig. 145 (Applies to Infotainment Swing).
- By turning the knob ⊙.

Confirm menu/menu item/function
- By tapping on the function surface.
- By pressing the knob ⊙.

Returning to higher-level menu
- By tapping on the function surface ⮌.
- By tapping on the screen outside of the "pop-up window".
- By pressing the corresponding button next to the screen (e.g. in the menu *Media*, by pressing the MEDIA button).

Select the menu item / function value
- ⦿ - Selected menu item / function value
- ○ - Deselected menu item / function value

Set value
- By pressing the function surface with one of the following symbols ∨ ∧ < > – +.
- By touching or moving your finger over the scale.
- Turning the knob ⊙.

Note

Depending on the equipment fitted, Infotainment can be operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel. Further information » page 43.

Operating the menus

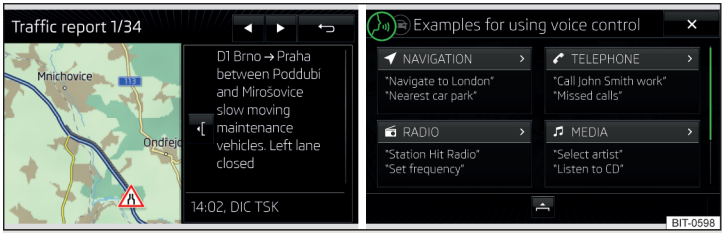


Fig. 146 **Operating the menus**

Operating the menus » Fig. 146

‹[/]› Reduction / enlargement of the menu window

◄ / ► Browse the menu- List entries

/ Open / close the menu window

✕ Close the menu window

Alphanumeric keyboard

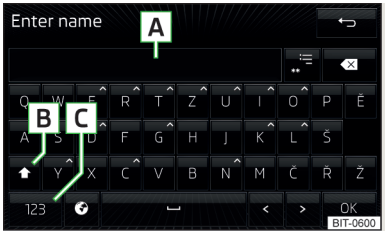


Fig. 147
Example of the keyboard display

The alphanumeric keypad is used to enter for letters, numbers and characters.

Description of the alphanumeric keyboard » Fig. 147

A Input line

B Context-dependent:
- ⇧ - Switch to capital letters
- §&# - Switch to special characters
- **123** - Switch to numbers

C Context-dependent:
- **123** - Switch to numbers
- **ABC** - Switch to Latin letters
- **АБВ** - Switch to Cyrillic letters

- Display of visited entries (the number of visited entries is displayed in the function surface)

⌫ Erase the entered characters

^ By holding the variants of each type are displayed.

Switching between keyboards with specific characters of the selected languages» page 123 or. » page 130

␣ Enters a blank

< Move the cursor within the input line to the left

> Move the cursor within the input line to the right

OK Confirmation of the entered number

Search
While entering characters, a search is made for corresponding entries.

The entry such as a telephone contact to be searched for must be entered along with the special characters (diacritics).

By tapping on the function surface A list of matching entries opens.

Switching Infotainment on / off

› To **switch on/off** Infotainment, press .

Automatic switch-on of Infotainment
If Infotainment was not turned off with the control switch before the ignition was turned off, it will automatically switch on after the ignition is switched on.

Automatic switch-off of Infotainment
If the vehicle key is pulled out of the ignition lock while Infotainment is switched on, Infotainment will switch off automatically.

If the vehicle is fitted with the starter button, Infotainment will switch off automatically after the engine is switched off and the door is opened.

With the ignition off, Infotainment will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

Infotainment turns off automatically under certain circumstances. Infotainment informs of this via a text message on the Infotainment display.

Restart of Infotainment
If Infotainment does not respond (if it "freezes") This can be restarted by holding ⏻ for longer than 10 s.

Adjusting the volume

Every change in volume is displayed on the screen.

› To **increase the volume**, turn the controller ⏻ clockwise.
› To **reduce volume**, turn the controller ⏻ anticlockwise.
› To **mute**, turn the controller ⏻ to the left to 0.
› **or:** press the button MUTE (applies to Infotainment Swing).

The following symbol appears on the screen when the sound is muted 🔇.

If, at the time of muting, sound is played from the source in the *Media* menu, then the playback is interrupted (pause)[1].

CAUTION

- High volumes can cause sound resonance in the vehicle.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.

Infotainment menus

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

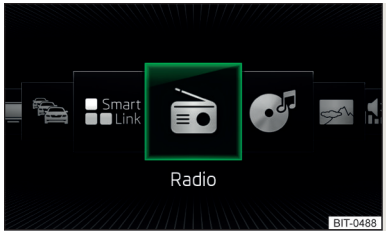


Fig. 148
Overview of Infotainment menu

› To **display the overview of the Infotainment menu**press the button MENU.

Overview of Infotainment menu » Fig. 148

- *Radio* menu » page 133
- *Media* menu » page 136
- *Images* menu » page 144
- Sound settings » page 122
- Infotainment settings
- Vehicle system settings » page 187
- List of traffic messages (TMC) » page 185 (Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- *Navigation* menu » page 169 (Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- *Telephone* menu » page 149
- *Media Command* menu » page 147 (Applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
- *SmartLink* menu » page 165
  When connecting a supported external device instead of the symbol Smart Link the actual connection is shown instead of a symbol
  - **-Android Auto** » page 166
  - **- Apple CarPlay** » page 167
  - MirrorLink **- MirrorLink®** » page 167

Configuration wizard

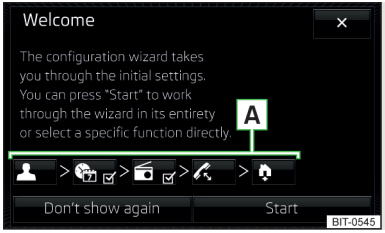


Fig. 149
Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Configuration wizard

[1] Does not apply for AUX.



Fig. 150
Infotainment Swing: Configuration wizard

The configuration wizard is **automatically displayed** if there are at least two non-selected menu items after turning on Infotainment, or if a new personalisation user account is selected.

Deactivate the automatic display of the Configuration wizard by tapping the function surface **Don´t show again**.

› To **manually display** in Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero, press the button MENU, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Configuration wizard**.
› For **manual display**in Infotainment Swing, press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Configuration wizard**.

The Configuration wizard allows you to set the following menu items in sequence.

- Identification of personalisation user account
- Time and date format (valid for Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero)
- Time format (applies to Infotainment Swing)
- Date format (applies to Infotainment Swing)
- Storing the radio stations with the currently strongest reception signal in the first memory group of each individual broadcast area
- Pairing and connecting a phone to Infotainment
- Home address (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)

The selected menu item provided is with the symbol ☑ ✓.

Menu items which can be set by tapping on the respective function surface in the A » Fig. 149 » Fig. 150 area.

Operating using an application in the external device

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

Some Infotainment functions can be operated using an application in the supported external device.

› Activate data transfer in Infotainment. To do this, press MENU and then ⚙ Tap→ **Mobile device data transfer → Activate data transfer for ŠKODA Apps**.
› Release Infotainment operation using the application. To do this, press MENU and then ⚙ Tap→ **Mobile device data transfer → Use apps to operate:: → confirm/Allow**.
› Connect Infotainment to an external device via WLAN» page 163.
› In the external device, install an application for Infotainment operation (e.g. Start ŠKODA Media Command).

Note
The description of Infotainment operation ŠKODA Media Command is part of the application.

Voice control

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

The navigation, telephone, radio and media menu can be operated by voice commands.

The voice control system can be used either by the driver or by the front passenger.

Function requirements for voice control
✓ Infotainment is switched on.
✓ There will be no telephone call using a phone connected to Infotainment.
✓ The parking aid is not active.

Requirements for optimum voice command recognition
▸ Speak at your normal volume without intonation and long pauses.
▸ Avoid bad pronunciation.
▸ Close the doors and windows in order to avoid disturbing environmental influences on the function of the voice commands.

- You are recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the sound of your voice is not drowned out by the increased ambient noise.
- During voice control, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.

WARNING

The emergency number should be dialled manually. Your voice commands may not be recognised in such situations. The telephone connection may not be established or the connection may take too much time to complete.

CAUTION

- The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.
- For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. Infotainment indicates this fact through a text message that is displayed on the screen after setting the Infotainment language.

Note

During voice control, no nav. announcements and traffic announcements are played.

Voice control on / off



Fig. 151
Voice control: Main menu

Activating

› Press the button VOICE on infotainment **or** press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

the **main menu** is displayed » Fig. 151.

Switching off

› Press the button VOICE on infotainment twice **or** press the button twice on the multifunction steering wheel.

› **or** Issue the voice command "**End voice control**".

Operation principle

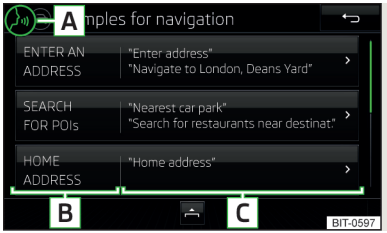


Fig. 152
Example of screen display

In the voice control main menu » Fig. 151 *on page 120* There are basic voice commands for the individual menus.

Other voice commands are displayed by tapping the respective function surface, if required, by issuing the name of respective command (e.g. navigation). The screen shows the following » Fig. 152.

A Context-dependent:
- The system is waiting for a voice command
- The system is recognises a voice command
- The system plays a message
- Voice command entry was stopped

B Available list entries
C Possible voice commands
› Display other possible voice commands

Voice commands that can be issued, are indicated in "quotation marks".

Note

The display of the voice control symbols A » Fig. 152 are dependent of the equipment fitted also on the display of the instrument cluster.

Voice commands

Enter
The voice command must only be issued when the symbol is displayed and the input tone has completely faded on the Infotainment screen. The input tone can be switched on / off. To do this, press MENU and then Tap→ **Voice control** .

It is not necessary to wait for the end of message playback when Infotainment is playing a message. The infotainment message can be terminated by pressing the button VOICE or the button on the multifunction steering wheel. Then a voice command can be issued. The voice control is hereby much faster.

Stop
This allows you more time for the voice command input.

The process for voice command input can by turning the dial stopped.

When stopping, the symbol changes from .

Restore
The procedure for voice command input can be restarted in one of the following ways.
- By tapping on the function surface .
- by briefly pressing the button VOICE on the multifunction steering wheel.
- By pressing the key on the multifunction steering wheel.

Not recognising a voice command
If a voice command is not detected three times in succession from Infotainment, then the voice control is stopped.

Correction of a voice command input
A voice command can be corrected, modified or re-entered by pressing the button VOICE or the button on the multifunction steering wheel. However, this is only possible as long as the symbol appears on the screen.

You do not have to wait until the voice command is recognised by Infotainment.

Voice commands can be used anytime during voice control

Voice command	Operation
"Back"	Return to the previous menu
"Help"	reproducing and displaying possible voice commands

Voice commands that can be used while browsing the list entries

Voice command	Operation
"Next page"	Browse menu / list / directory
"Previous page"	
"First page"	
"Last page"	

Additional Information

Navigation - applies to Infotainment Columbus
If the set Infotainment language matches with the language of the currently selected country when entering the destination, then the destination address is entered **in one step**.

The voice command **"Navigate"** and immediately the city, street and street number (if it is included in the navigation data) Interest (POI) or a contact with the previously stored address, can be issued.

Navigation - applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero
To the destination, you are first required to issue the command**"enter address"** and then follow Infotainment instructions.

You can say the house number and a further additional address in the form of a number where necessary. Infotainment will then offer the number combination it has found if the house number and the further address supplement, where appropriate, exists in the street entered.

It is not necessary to spell city and street names if the entered destination is located in a country that has no voice control available for the language.

Radio
In order for a radio station can be selected using voice command, the station must be stored in the list of available stations » page 134.

Software update



Fig. 153
Available software updates on the ŠKODA websites

The software update ensures optimum operation of Infotainment (e.g. Compatibility with new phones).

Current information on Infotainment compatibility can be found on the following ŠKODA Internet pages. This is carried out by reading the QR code » Fig. 153 **or** after entering the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

- To **determine the software version**, press the MENU button, then tap on the System information function surface Tap→ **System information** .
- To **start the software update**, press the MENU button, then tap on the system information function surface → **System information** → **Update software**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

- To **determine the software version**, press the SETUP button, then tap on the **system information** function surface.
- To **determine the software version**, press the SETUP button, then tap on the **system information**→ **Update software** function surface.

Infotainment settings - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Infotainment system settings

Sound settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface .

- **Volume** - Volume settings
  - **Message** - Adjustment of traffic announcements volume (TP)
  - **Nav. announcements** - sets the volume for the nav. announcements
  - **Voice control** - volume setting for voice output
  - **Maximum switch-on volume** - Setting the maximum volume when switching on Infotainment
  - **Speed-dependent volume adjustment** - increases the volume as speed increases
  - **AUX volume**- Sets the volume for the device connected through AUX
    - **Quiet** - Low volume
    - **Medium** - Medium volume
    - **Loud** - High volume
  - **Bluetooth audio:**- Volume setting of the device connected via Bluetooth ® audio profile
  - **Entertainment fading while parking** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid
  - **Entertainment fading (nav. announce.)** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) in the event of a nav. announcements
- **Bass - Mid - Treble** - Setting the equaliser
- **Balance - Fader** - Sets the balance between left and right, front and rear
- **CANTON Equaliser** - Setting the equaliser
  - **Individual**- Adjustment of treble, mid and bass
  - **Profile** - Setting of the profile (e.g. **Rock**, **Classical** and so on.)
- **CANTON optimisation** -Setting the optimum room sound perception
  - **All** - Setting optimised for the whole vehicle interior
  - **Front** - Setting optimised for the front seats
  - **Driver** - Setting optimised for the driver
- **CANTON surround** - Setting the surround sound level ("-9 "Stereo / "+9"full surround)
- **Subwoofer** - Subwoofer volume settings
- **Sound focus** -Setting the optimum room sound perception
  - **All** - Setting optimised for the whole vehicle interior
  - **Driver** - Setting optimised for the driver

- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **No navigation sound during call** - Switching on / off the nav. announcements during a telephone call (not applicable to Infotainment Bolero)

Display settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ Tap→ **Screen**.

- **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** - Enable / disable the automatic power off function
- **Brightness:** - Adjusts the brightness of the screen
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **Animation when finger near screen** - Turn the proximity sensors on/off (When the function is on, e.g.*Navigation* will be shown in the main menu when moving a finger towards the bottom bar with the function surfaces on the screen)
- **Show clock in standby mode** - Time and date displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched on and Infotainment is switched off

Time and date settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Time and date**.

- **Clock time source:** - Setting the time source: Manual / GPS (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- **Time:** - Time settings
- **Summer time** - Switches the summer time setting on/off (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- **Automatic summertime** - Turn on / off the automatic switch to daylight saving time
- **Time zone:** - Choice of time zone
- **Time format:** - Specify the time format
- **Date:** - Date settings
- **Date format:** - Setting the date format

Setting the Infotainment language

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Language**.
› Select the Infotainment language.

In some languages, after selecting the function surface**Female** and **Male** are displayed for the choice of voice prompts for Infotainment.

Note

- When a language is selected which does not support voice control, Infotainment will indicate this with a message on the screen.
- The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

Additional keypad language settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Additional keypad languages**.

In this menu, a keyboard language set can be added to allow the entering of characters other than those in the currently selected language (function surface 🌐).

Unit settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Units**.

- **Distance:** - Distance units
- **Speed:** - Speed units
- **Temperature:** - Temperature units
- **Volume:** - Volume units
- **Consumption:** - Consumption units
- **CNG consump.:** - CNG consumption units
- **Pressure:** - Pressure units for tire pressure

Setting data transfer

An active data transfer allows data transfer between Infotainment and the external device (e.g. MirrorLink® application) or the operation of some Infotainment functions using the application of the external device (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Mobile device data transfer**.

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Turning data transfer on and off
- **Use apps to operate::** - Setting Infotainment operation via the applications of the external device (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
  - **Deactivate** - Deactivation of Infotainment operation via an external device
  - **Confirm** - Infotainment operation with required confirmation
  - **Allow** - Infotainment operation without required confirmation

Voice control settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ Tap→ **Voice control** .

- **Example commands (infotainment system)** - Switch on/off the menus containing basic voice commands when voice control is activated
- **Voice control session start tone** - Switch on/off the audible signal when turning on the voice control
- **Voice control session end tone** - Switch on/off the audible signal when voice control ends
- **Input tone in voice dialogue** - Switch on/off the audible signal for the voice input
- **End tone in voice dialogue** - Switch on/off the audible signal for the voice input

Safe removal of the external device

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Remove safely** and select the external device to be removed.

Reset to factory settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Factory settings**.

In this menu, all or only chosen settings can be restored.

Bluetooth®Settings

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ Tap on→ **Bluetooth**.

- **Bluetooth** - Switch on/off Bluetooth® function
- **Visibility:** - Switch on/off the visibility of the Bluetooth® device for Bluetooth® devices
- **Name:** - Changing the name of the Bluetooth®unit
- **Paired devices** - Display the list of coupled Bluetooth ® Devices
- **Find devices** - Searches for available Bluetooth® devices
- **Bluetooth audio (A2DP/AVRCP)** - Turn on/off the ability to connect a Bluetooth® audio device (e.g. MP3 player, tablet etc...)

Wireless settings

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ Tap on→ **WLAN**.

- **WLAN** - List of available hotspots of external devices
  - **WLAN** - Turn on / off Infotainment wireless
  - **WPS quick connection (WPS button)** - Establishing a secure connection to the hotspot of the external device using WPS (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
  - **Manual settings** - Setting the parameters for search and connection to the hotspot of the external device
    - **Network name** - Enter the Hotspot name
    - **Network key** - Setting the access password
    - **Security level:** - Sets the security
      - **WPA2** - WPA2 security
      - **WPA** - WPA security
      - **No security level** - No coverage (without required entry of the access password)
    - **Connect** - Connection establishment
  - **Search** - Search / Restore the list of available hotspots
- **Mobile hotspot** - Setting Infotainment hotspot (in the functional surface the symbol ᯤ displayed with the number of connected external devices)
  - **Mobile hotspot** - Switching on / off Infotainment hotspot
  - **WPS quick connection (WPS button)** - Establishing a secure connection to the Infotainment hotspot via WPS (applies to Amundsen)
  - **Hotspot (WLAN) settings** - Setting the parameters for the connection to Infotainment hotspot
    - **Security level:** - Sets the connection security
      - **WPA2** - WPA2 security
      - **WPA** - WPA security
      - **No security level** - No coverage (without required entry of the access password)
    - **Network key** - Entering the access password
    - **SSID: ...** - Name of the Infotainment hotspot
    - **Do not send network name (SSID)** -Turn Infotainment hotspot visibility on/off
    - **Store** - Storage of Infotainment hotspot parameters

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with SIM card inserted in external module.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Network**.

- **Network settings** - Setting of the data connection from the associated telephone service provider (APN settings)
  - **Access point name: ...** - Setting of the access point name
  - **User name: ...** - Setting of user name

- **Password: ...** - Password setting
- **Authentication** - Setting for the type of verification
  - **Normal** - Without verification
  - **Safe** - Verification required
- **Reset Access Point (APN)** - Delete the parameters for the network setting
- **Store** - Storage of the parameters for the network setting

- **Network provider: ...** - Selecting the data service provider (the menu item is visible when the data services of the SIM card inserted in the external module are active)
- **Data roaming** - Enable / disable the use of data roaming connection
- **Current connection details** - Display of information on data downloaded (by tapping the function button **Reset** the data information is deleted)
- **Data Connection:** - Settings of the data services of the SIM card inserted in the external module
  - **Off** - The data services are turned off
  - **Ask** - The data services are active after confirmation
  - **On** - The data services are turned on

System information

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface Tap on→ **System information** .
› To perform a **Software Update** (Z. B. Bluetooth® or radio station logo) Tap the function surface **Update software**.

Displaying system information.
▸ *Device part number: ...* - Infotainment part number
▸ *Hardware: ...* - Hardware version
▸ *Software: ...* - Software version
▸ *Navigation database: ...* - Version of the navigation data
▸ *"Gracenote" database: ...* - Version of the Gracenote multimedia database (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
▸ *Media Codec: ...* - Version of media codecs
▸ *Bluetooth version: ...* - Version of the Bluetooth® software

The information on available software updates is obtained from a ŠKODA Partner or from the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Radio menu settings

Settings for all broadcasting areas

› Tap on the *Radio* main menu function surface .

- **Sound** - Sound settings
- **Scan** - Automatic play short portions of all available stations in the current frequency range
- **Arrow buttons:** - Setting the function of the function surfaces ◁ ▷
  - **Preset list** - Change between stations stored under the preset buttons
  - **Station list** - Change between all available stations of the selected broadcasting range
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches TP traffic programme on/off
- **Delete presets** - Deletes the preset buttons
- **Station logos** - manual management of station logos
- **Radio text** - Switching the text display radio (FM and DAB) on and off
- **Advanced settings** - further settings that are different depending on the selected broadcasting range(FM and DAB)

Advanced Settings (FM)

› Select the FM band in the *Radio* main menu and tap on the function surface → **Advanced settings**.

- **Auto-save station logos**- Automatic storage of the station logos
- **Region for station logo:** - Setting the region for station logos
- **Automatic frequency control (AF)** - Search for alternative frequencies of the station currently being played to on/off
- **Radio Data System (RDS)** - Activate/deactivate RDS function (receiving additional information from the station)
- **RDS Regional:** - Switch on/off the automatic tracking of related regional stations
  - **Fixed** - Maintains the selected regional station continuously. When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
  - **Automatic** - Auto-selects the station with the best reception at the moment. If you lose reception in the given the region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Advanced settings (DAB)

› In the *Radio* main menu, select the DAB range and tap on the function surface → **Advanced settings**.

- **Auto-save station logos**- Automatic storage of the station logos
- **DAB traffic announcements** - Switch on/off DAB traffic announcements
- **Other DAB messages** - Switch on/off other announcements (e.g., warnings, regional weather, sports reports, financial news)
- **DAB - DAB station tracking** - Switch on/off automatic DAB station tracking on another frequency or in other station groups
- **Automatic DAB - FM switching** - Switch on/off auto-switching from DAB to the FM broadcasting range if the DAB signal is lost
- **Switch to a similar station** - Activate/deactivate automatic switching to another station with similar content in the event of signal loss (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **L-band** - Activate/deactivate the availability of the L-band

Automatic change from DAB to FM
In the event of bad DAB reception, the device tries to find an FM station.

The station name is followed by **(FM)** while the station is being received on the FM band. When the corresponding DAB station is received again, the system automatically switches from FM to DAB.

If a DAB station is also not available in the FM band due to poor reception, Infotainment will be switched to mute.

L-band
For the DAB radio reception in different countries, different broadcasting ranges are used. In some countries the DAB radio reception is only possible in the what is known as the L-band.

If no L-band DAB radio reception is possible in the country then we recommend turning off the L-band. The channel scan is therefore faster.

Media menu settings

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu .

- **Sound** - Sound settings
- **Manage jukebox** - Managing (record / delete) supported files (audio / video) in the internal Infotainment memory (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Mix/repeat including subfolders** - Switching the title display including subfolders
- **Bluetooth** - Settings for the Bluetooth® function
- **WLAN** - Wi-Fi settings (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Video (DVD) settings** - Setting the parameters of the DVD video (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Remove safely:** - Safe removal of the external device
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches traffic programme on/off

Image menu settings

› In the *Images* main menu, tap on the function surface .

- **Image view:** - Setting the image display
  - **Full** - Display the maximum image size while retaining the aspect ratio
  - **Automatic** - Full screen display
- **Display time:**- Set the display time for the slideshow
- **Repeat slideshow** - Switching on/off the slideshow repeat

Video DVD menu settings

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

› In the *Video DVD* main menu, tap on the function surface .

Depending on the DVD, some of the following menu items are displayed.

- **Format**- Set the screen width/height ratio
- **Audio channel:** - Audio channel selection
- **Subtitles:** - Selecting subtitles
- **Enter/change PIN for parental settings** - Management of the PIN code for parental control
- **Parental settings:** - Parental settings selection

Telephone menu settings

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface .

- **Hands-free** - Switching a call to the phone / back to Infotainment (the menu item is displayed during a call)
- **Select telephone** - Search for available telephones/list of paired telephones/select telephone
- **Bluetooth** - Bluetooth® settings
- **User profile** - User profile settings
  - **Manage favourites** - Set the function surfaces for your favourite contacts
  - **Mailbox number:** - Enter the phone number of the mailbox
  - **Network selection:** - Select the service provider of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)

- **Priority:** - Select the phone service priority of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Automatic** - Depending on the telephone service provider
  - **Telephone call** - Telephone calls are preferred
  - **Data transfer** - A data connection is preferred
- **Sort by:** - Arrangement of the phone contact list
  - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
  - **1st name** - Sort by contact's first name
- **Profile Name:** - Rename the profile of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
- **Import contacts:** - Import phone contacts
- **Select device contacts** - Open the paired phones menu (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module - if the SIM card is inserted in the external module)
- **Select ring tone** - Selecting the ring tone
- **Reminder: remember your mobile phone** -Turn on/off the warning mode before forgetting the phone in the vehicle (if the phone was connected to the device)
- **Show pictures for contacts** - Switch on/off the display of the image assigned to the contact

- **Conference call** - Activates/deactivates conference calls
- **Call settings:** - Setting the phone functions of the SIM card inserted in the external module during a call (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Hold call:**- Switch on/off the display of the option for answering an incoming call during a call, determining the current divert setting
    - **On** - Turn on the display
    - **Off** - Turn off the display
    - **Request status** - Checking the settings of the SIM card function
  - **Send own number:** - Setting the phone number display for the call recipient
    - **On** - Turn on the display
    - **Off** - Turn off the display
    - **Network dependent** - Display depending the telephone service provider
    - **Request status** - Check the settings of the SIM card function
- **Delete calls:** - Delete the chosen call type that took place using the SIM card inserted in the external module during a call (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **All** - Delete all calls
  - **Missed calls** - Delete list of missed calls
  - **Dialled numbers** - Delete outgoing calls
  - **Received calls** - Delete list of received calls
- **Text message settings:** - Setting the text messages of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Standard account** - Setting for the use of text messages on the SIM card or the connected telephone
    - **No standard account** - Without priority (selection of the SIM card or the connected telephone required)
    - **SIM** - A list of text messages on the SIM card
    - **MAP** - A list of text messages of the connected telephone
  - **Service centre number:** - Setting the number of SMS services of the telephone service provider
  - **Store sent text messages** - Enable / disable the storage of the text message on the SIM card
  - **Period of validity:** - Adjustment of the period in which the telephone service provider will try to send the text message (for example, when Infotainment is off)
  - **Delete text messages** - Delete the data stored on the SIM card text messages
    - **All** - Delete all text messages
    - **Inbox** - Delete the text messages received
    - **Outbox** - Delete draft text messages
    - **Sent** - Delete sent text messages
- **Telephone interface "Business"** - Turn on / off the phone function of the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
- **Use SIM card only for data connection** - **Switch on** - Activating only the data services / **Switch off** - Activating the data and telephone services of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
- **Network:** - Setting the phone network provider of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module) » page 124
- **PIN settings:** - Setting the PIN code of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Automatic PIN entry** - Activate/deactivate storage of the SIM card PIN code
  - **Change PIN** - Change the PIN code of the SIM card
  - **Add PIN 2** - Enter the second PIN code of the SIM card (when the function **Automatic PIN entry** is on or when the SIM card supports another telephone service provider)

- **Forward calls** - Setting forwarding of incoming calls (valid for Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **All calls** - Forward all incoming calls
  - **If engaged** - Forwarding incoming calls during a telephone call
  - **If not available** - Forwarding the incoming calls when the vehicle is outside the reach of the telephone service provider signal
  - **If no answer** - Redirecting incoming calls when the incoming call is not answered

SmartLink menu settings

› In the *SmartLink* main menu, tap on the function surface .

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Turning data transfer on and off for ŠKODA applications
- *MirrorLink®* - Settings of the system MirrorLink®
  - **Screen orientation:** - Setting the screen orientation
    - **Landscape** - Width display
    - **Portrait** - Height display
  - **Rotated 180 degrees** - Turn on / off the 180 ° inversion
  - **Allow MirrorLink® notification to be shown** - Turn on / off the display of messages of Mirror link®applications on the Infotainment screen

Navigation menu settings

Route options

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface Tap on→ **route options** .

- **Suggest 3 alternative routes** - Switch on/off the menu for alternative routes (economical, fast, short)
- **Route:**- Setting the preferred route
- **Most frequent routes** - Show/hide the menu of the most frequent routes in the split screen
- **Dynamic route** - Switch on/off dynamic route recalculation due to TMC traffic reports
- **Avoid motorways** - Switch on/off the non-use of motorways in the route calculation
- **Avoid ferries and motorail trains** - Switch on/off the non-use of ferries and motorail trains in the route calculation
- **Avoid toll roads** - Switch on/off use of toll roads for route calculation
- **Avoid tunnels** - Switch on/off use of tunnels for route calculation
- **Avoid routes requiring toll stickers** - Switch use of routes requiring toll stickers on/off for route calculation
- **Show available toll stickers** - Selection of countries for which a valid toll sticker is required (routes requiring toll stickers are used for route calculation)
- **Include trailer** - Turn on / off the setting to take a trailer into account for route calculation » page 180

Map

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface Tap on→ **Map** .

- **Show road signs** - Switch on/off the display of traffic signs
- **Lane guidance** - Display of lane guidance on/off
- **Show favourites** - Switch on/off the display of favourites
- **Show POIs** - Switch on/off the display of POIs
  - **Select categories for POIs** - Selection of the displayed category POIs
  - **Show brands for POIs** - Switch on/off the company logos available for the POIs shown

Manage memory

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Manage memory**.

- **Sort Contacts:** - Setting the arrangement of the phonebook
  - **By surname** - Sorting by the contact surname
  - **By first name** - Sorting by the contact first name
- **Define home address** - Enter the home address
- **Delete My POIs** - Deleting own POI categories (Personal POI)
- **Update My POIs (SD / USB)** - Import / update your own POI categories (Personal POI)
- **Import destinations (SD/USB)** - Import destinations in vCard format
- **Delete user data** - Delete user data (by pressing the function surface**Delete** and confirm the deletion)
  - **Last destinations** - Delete the last destinations
  - **Dest. memory** - Delete the stored destinations
  - **Routes** - Delete saved routes
  - **My points of interest (Personal POI)** - Delete the custom POIs
  - **Entered cities** - Delete the history of places already entered via the address
  - **Home address** - Delete the stored home address
  - **Flagged destination** - Delete the flagged destination

- **Waypoint tour** - Delete item in the *Waypoint mode* menu (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Most frequent routes** - Delete the most travelled routes

nav. announcements

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Nav. announcements** .

- **Volume** - Volume control of the nav. announcements
- **Entertainment fading (nav. announce.)** - Setting the fading of the audio volume (e.g. radio volume.) with nav. announcements
- **Nav. announcements:** - Setting the playback method of nav. announcements
  - **Comprehensive** - All nav. announcements
  - **Brief** - Short nav. announcements
  - **Only in the event of issues** - Only nav. announcements when a route is changed
- **No navigation sound during call** - Activate/ deactivate non-playback of nav. announcements during a telephone call
- **Note: "My POIs"** - Turn on/off an audible indication when approaching a custom POI (if supported by the imported custom POI) (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

Top speeds

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Top speeds**.

The maximum speed limits for the current country are displayed.

With the function switched on **Note: national border crossed**» page 129, *Advanced settings* display the country-specific speed limits when crossing international borders.

Fuel options

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Fuel options** .

- **Select preferred fuel station** - Select your preferred fuel station brand (the selected station brand will be displayed in the first three positions of the list)
- **Fuel warning** -Turn on- / Off the display of a warning message with the option to visit the nearest petrol station when the fuel level reaches the reserve area

Version information

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Version information** .

A list of countries is displayed that exist for the navigation data, together with the date of the last update.

An update of the navigation data can be carried out by tapping the functional surface **Update (SD / USB)**.

The information on updating the navigation data is to be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or on the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Advanced settings

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **Time display:**- Select the time display in the status line
  - 🕒 - Estimated arrival time at destination
  - ◔ - Estimated travelling time to the destination
- **Status line:**- Selection of the target type, for which the status line, the route and travel time are displayed (Here it is also determined which destination type after selecting 🚗 → 🏁 is displayed on the map)
  - ⊕ - Route destination
  - ⊛ - Next waypoint
- **Note: national border crossed** - Switching on/off the display for information on national speed limits when crossing the national border
- **Demo mode** - Switch on/off guidance in demo mode
- **Define demo mode starting point** - Specifying the start point of the route guidance in the demo mode by entering the address or the current vehicle position

Infotainment settings - Swing

Infotainment system settings

Sound settings

› Press the SOUND button.

- **Volume** - Volume settings
  - **Max. switch-on volume.** - Sets the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on
  - **Message** - Adjustment of traffic announcements volume (TP)
  - **Speed-dependent volume adjustment** - Volume increases as speed increases
  - **Entert. Fading** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid
  - **AUX volume**- Sets the volume for the device connected through AUX
  - **BT audio:**- Volume setting of the device connected via Bluetooth ® audio profile
- **Balance - Fader** - Sets the balance between left and right, front and rear
- **Bass - Mid - Treble** - Setting the equaliser
- **Confirmation tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen

Display settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Screen**.

- **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** - Enable / disable the automatic power off function[1)]
- **Brightness:** - Adjusts the brightness of the screen
- **Confirmation tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **Show clock in standby mode** - Time and date displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched on and Infotainment is switched off

Time and date settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Time and date**.

- **Time:** - Time settings
- **Time format:** - Specify the time format
- **Summer time** - Switches the summer setting on/off
- **Automatic summer time** - Switch on/off the automatic switch to daylight saving time
- **Date:** - Date settings
- **Date format:** - Setting the date format

Setting the Infotainment language

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Language**.
› Select the Infotainment language.

Additional keypad language settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Additional keypad languages**.

In this menu, a keyboard language set can be added to allow the entering of characters other than those in the currently selected language.

Unit settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Units**.

- **Distance:** - Distance units
- **Speed:** - Speed units
- **Temperature:** - Temperature units
- **Volume:** - Volume units
- **Consumption:** - Fuel units
- **CNG consump.:** - CNG consumption units
- **Pressure:** - Pressure units for tire pressure

Safe removal of the data source

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Remove SD card safely / Remove USB Safely**.

The appropriate message concerning the safe removal of the source is displayed in the screen.

Now the external source can be removed or separated.

[1)] Infotainment turns the screen off when no touch screen is performed or none of the keys are pressed / rotated for more than 10 seconds.

Restore factory settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Factory settings**.

In this menu, individual settings or all settings can be restored at the same time.

Bluetooth® settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Bluetooth**.

- **Bluetooth** - Switch on/off Bluetooth® function
- **Visibility:** - Switch on/off the visibility of the Bluetooth® device for Bluetooth® devices
- **1st name**- Changing the name of the Bluetooth® unit
- **Paired devices** - Display the list of coupled Bluetooth ® devices
- **Find devices** - Searches for available Bluetooth® devices
- **BT audio (A2DP/AVRCP)** - Turn on/off the ability to connect a Bluetooth,® audio device (e.g. MP3 player, tablet etc...)

System information

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **System information**.

- **Update software** - Update software (e.g. Bluetooth®)
- *Bluetooth: ...* Version number of the Bluetooth ® software
- *Device part number: ...* - Infotainment part number
- *Hardware: ...* - Hardware version
- *Software: ...* - Software version

The information on available software updates is obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/infotainment

Radio menu settings

Settings for all broadcasting areas

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ⚙ .

- **Scan** - Automatic play short portions of all available stations in the current frequency range
- **Arrow buttons:** - Setting the function of the function surfaces ◁ ▷
  - **Presets**- Switch between stations stored under the preset buttons
  - **Stations** - Switch between all available stations of the selected broadcasting range
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches traffic programme on/off
- **Radio text** - Switching the text display radio (FM and DAB) on and off
- **Kind of stat. list:**- Sort types of radio stations in the station list (DAB)
  - **Global** - Alphanumeric station sorting with filtering option according to the transmitted program type
  - **Hierarchical** - Station sorting according to their assigned parent station groups (Ensemble) - Tree structure of the list
- **Station logos** - Manual management of station logos
- **Delete presets** - Delete the stations stored under preset buttons
- **Advanced settings** - Other settings that are different depending on the selected broadcasting range (FM and DAB)

Advanced Settings (FM)

› Select the FM band in the *Radio* main menu and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **RDS Regional:** - Switch on/off the automatic tracking of related regional stations
  - **Automatic** - Auto-selects the station with the best reception at the moment. If you lose reception in the given the region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.
  - **Fixed** - Maintains the selected regional station continuously. When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
- **Alternative frequency (AF)** - Search for alternative frequencies of the station currently being played to on/off
- **Radio Data System (RDS)** - enable/disable RDS function (receiving additional information from the station)[1)]
- **Sort stations:**- Sort types of radio stations in the station list (FM)
  - **Group** - Sort by transmitted program type
  - **ABC** - alphabetical order according to station name

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

Advanced Settings (DAB)

› In the *Radio* main menu, select the DAB range and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **DAB traffic announcements** - Switch on/off DAB announcements
- **Other DAB messages** - Switch on/off other announcements (e.g., warnings, regional weather, sports reports, financial news)
- **DAB station tracking** - Switch on/off automatic DAB station tracking on another frequency or in other station groups
- **Aut. DAB - FM switching** - switches on/off auto-switching from DAB to the FM frequency band if the DAB signal is lost

Automatic change from DAB to FM
In the event of bad DAB reception, the device tries to find an FM station.

The station name is followed by **(FM)** while the station is being received on the FM band. When the corresponding DAB station is received again, the system automatically switches from FM to DAB.

If a DAB station is also not available in the FM band due to poor reception, Infotainment will be switched to mute.

Media menu settings

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu ⚙ .

- **Sound** - sound settings
- **Mix/repeat inc. subfolders** - Switch on/off the title display including subfolders
- **Bluetooth** - Settings for the Bluetooth® function
- **Traffic program (TP)** - Switches traffic programme on/off
- **Activate AUX** - Enables / disables the AUX input
- **Remove SD card safely** - Safe removal of the inserted SD storage card
- **Remove USB safely** - safe removal of the external device connected to the USB input

Telephone menu settings

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface, ⚙ .

- **Hands-free** - Switching a call to the phone / back to Infotainment (the menu item is displayed during a call)
- **Select telephone** - Search for available telephones/list of paired telephones/select telephone
  - **Find** - search for available phones
- **Bluetooth** - Bluetooth® settings
- **User profile** - user profile settings
  - **Manage favourites** - set the function surfaces for your favourite contacts
  - **Sort by:** - Arrangement of the phone contact list
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
    - **1st name** - Sort by contact's first name
  - **Imp. contacts** - Import telephone contacts
  - **Select ring tone** - Selecting the ring tone
- **Remember your mobile** - Turn on/off the warning mode before forgetting the phone in the vehicle (if the phone was connected to Infotainment)
- **Simultaneous calls** - enable/disable the option to hold two concurrent calls

Radio

Operation

Introduction to the subject

Infotainment allows analogue radio reception of FM and AM frequency ranges as well as DAB digital radio reception.

CAUTION

- For vehicles with window antennas do not stick foil or metal coated stickers to the window - Radio signal reception could be affected.
- Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can interfere with the radio signal even causing it to fail completely.

Main menu

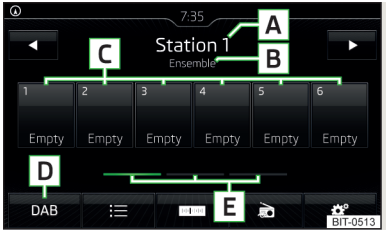


Fig. 154
Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Radio main menu (DAB)



Fig. 155
Infotainment Swing: Main menu radio (FM)

› To **display** the main menu, press the RADIO button.

main menu » Fig. 154 **and** » Fig. 155

- A The selected radio station (description or frequency)
- B Radio Text (FM) / Description of the group (DAB)
- C Preset station buttons for favourite channels
- D Choice of radio range (FM / AM / DAB)
- E Choice of storage group for the preferred station
- ◁ ▷ Changing the station
- List of available stations
- Manual / semi-automatic station search
- Radio text display / image presentation (DAB) (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)
- Menu Settings *Radio*

Information symbol in the status line

Symbol	Meaning
TP	Traffic signal is available
no TP	Traffic signal is not available
RDS OFF	RDS function is switched off (FM)
AF OFF	AF Alternative frequency is switched off (FM)
	Signal is not available (DAB)

If the displayed station name continuously changes (dynamic text), then it is possible to fix the current text by holding your finger on the device screen in the station name area. By holding your finger in the area of the station name again, the station name is displayed in its entirety again.

Display DAB main menu (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)
In DAB broadcasting, the display of additional information and images (Slideshow) is possible as long as the currently tuned station is broadcasting this information.

The display variant can be selected from the menu that appears as follows.

▸ In the *Radio* main menu, press the function surface in the **DAB** area .

Search stations and select frequency

Find stations
› Tap on the *Radio* main menu function surface ◁ or ▷ .

Depending on the setting **Arrow buttons:** will set an available station from the **Stations list** or a station of the current broadcast range on the **Station buttons**.

Select frequency

› To **display the value** of the currently chosen frequency, tap the functional surface in the *Radio* main menu .
› To **Set the desired frequency value** in Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero, use the slider or the function surfaces < > If necessary, turn the controller Turn.
› To **Set the desired frequency value** in Infotainment Swing, use the slider or the function surfaces ◁ ▷ Use the bottom of the screen, if necessary, turn the controller .

The frequency selection is terminated by pressing the controller.

Scan through the stations one after the other (scan)

The function scans through all the available stations in the current frequency range in succession, for a few seconds each.

› To **start/finish** the automatic play of the available stations in Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero press the function surface in the *Radio* main menu Tap→ **scan** .
› To **to end** autoplay, tap the function surface SCAŃ .
› To **start/finish** the automatic play of the available stations in Infotainment Swing, press the controller in the *Radio* main menu .

List of available stations

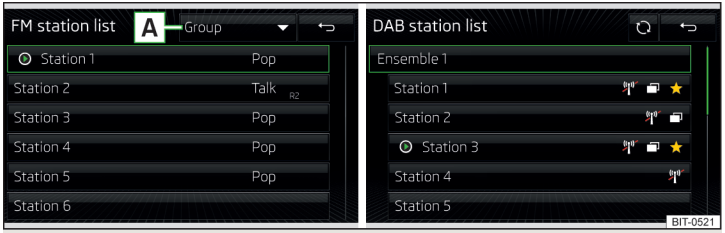


Fig. 156 **Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: For the list of available FM / DAB stations**



Fig. 157 **Infotainment Swing: Example of a list of available FM/DAB stations (hierarchical sorting)**

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

› To **display** the list of available stations of the currently selected broadcasting area, tap the function surface in the *Radio* main menu .
› To **play**, tap on the function surface of the desired station.
› To **Sort** (FM) the stations in alphabetical order, by group or genre, tap on the function surface A » Fig. 156 » .

Applies to Infotainment Swing

› To **display** the list of available stations of the currently selected broadcasting area, rotate the controller in the *Radio* main menu .

› To **play**, tap on the function surface of the desired station.
› To **filter** the stations according to programme type (e.g. culture, music, sport etc.) in the FM [1] and DAB[2] station list, tap on the function surface **PTY** » Fig. 157 - A.

Information symbols

Symbol	Meaning
★	Radio station, which is stored on a preset button
▶	Currently played stations
TP	Traffic information station
(e.g.) Pop	Type of program being broadcast (FM) (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)
(e.g.) R2	Type the regional broadcast (FM)
♪ (e.g.)	Type of program being broadcast (FM, DAB) (applies to the infotainment Swing)
	Signal reception is not available (DAB)
	The transmitter reception is not secure (DAB) (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero, Swing)
	Stations with image broadcasting (DAB) (does not apply to infotainment Swing)

Refresh list

Depending on Infotainment, the station list update takes place as follows:

Frequency	Columbus	Amundsen, Bolero	Swing
FM	automatically	automatically	automatically
AM	automatically	manually	manually
DAB	automatically	manually	manually

▸ To **manually** update, tap on the function surface ↻ » Fig. 156 and » Fig. 157.

! CAUTION

To sort the stations according to genre, the RDS and AF functions must be switched on. These functions can be set in the *radio* main menu in the FM band by tapping the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings** switched on / off.

[1] Applies when the RDS function is switched on.
[2] Applies during selected global sorting of the station list.

Station buttons for your favourite stations

In every broadcasting range, there are station buttons available to store preferred stations C That are split into groups E » Fig. 154 *on page 133* or » Fig. 155 *on page 133*.

› To **save a station on the main menu** *Radio*, hold down the desired function surface C until an acoustic signal sounds.
› To **save a station in the station list**, keep the function surface of the desired station held down, select the memory group, and then tap the desired station button.

If a station is saved on an already assigned station button, this station button will be overwritten.

Station logos - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Channel logos are stored in the Infotainment memory which are assigned automatically by the device when storing the stations under preset buttons.

Assign station logo automatically

› to **Disable / Enable** in the *radio* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ Tap on→ **Advanced settings** → **Auto-save station logos** .

Assign station logo manually

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ⚙ → **Station logos**.
› Tap on an occupied station button and select the data carrier (SD card, USB).
› Search for and select the desired station logo on the respective data carrier.

Remove channel logo manually

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ⚙ → **Station logos**.
› Tap on the station button from which you want to remove a logo.

i Note

- The following image formats are supported: jpg, gif, png, bmp.
- We recommend a resolution of up to 500x500 pixels.

Station logos - Swing

The station button of a preferred station can contain the name and the station logo. ▸

Assign a station logo

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ⚙ → **Station logos**.
› Tap on an occupied station button and select the data carrier (SD card, USB).
› Search for and select the desired station logo on the respective data carrier.

Remove station logo

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ⚙ → **Station logos**.
› Tap on the station button from which you want to remove a logo.
› **or**The function surface 🗑 **All** to delete the logos of all the station buttons simultaneously.
› Confirm / cancel the removal.

Note

▪ The following image formats are supported: jpg, gif, png, bmp (we recommend using the png format).
▪ Maximum resolution 400x240 pixels.

TP Traffic program

› To **switch on/off** traffic monitoring in the main menu *Radio*, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Traffic program (TP)**.

During a traffic announcement, it is possible to cancel the current announcement if necessary by deactivating traffic monitoring.

Note

▪ If the station that is currently set does not transmit traffic reports or the signal is not available, then Infotainment automatically searches in the background for another TP station.
▪ During playback in the *Media* menu or a station in the AM radio range, traffic news is received from the previously selected FM radio range.

Media

Operation

Main menu

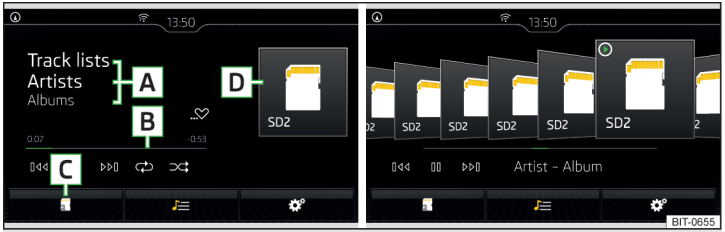


Fig. 158 **Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Media main menu / Album overview (applies to Infotainment Columbus)**

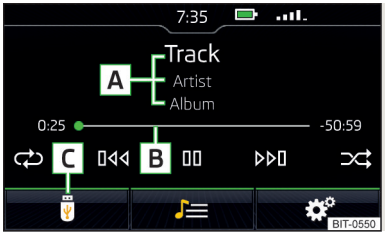


Fig. 159
Infotainment Swing: Media main menu

› To **display** the main menu, press the MEDIA button.

Main menu » Fig. 158 **and** » Fig. 159

A Information on playing track
B Playback timeline with a slider
C Select the audio source
D Selected audio source and selected album image / display the Album overview (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

- Depending on the audio source type:
  - Folder/Title list
  - Multimedia database
- *Media* menu settings

Album overview (valid for Infotainment Columbus)
By touching with your finger in the area D » Fig. 158 a list of albums is displayed. Movement within the album list can be performed by moving a finger across the screen to the right/left or by rotating the controller . After 10 seconds since the last operation, the main menu is displayed.

Note

- Information concerning the given title appears on the screen, if they are stored as what are called ID3 Tags on the audio source. If no ID3 tag is available, only the title name is displayed.
- The remaining playback time indicated does not correspond to the actual remaining playback time for titles with variable bitrates.

Select audio source

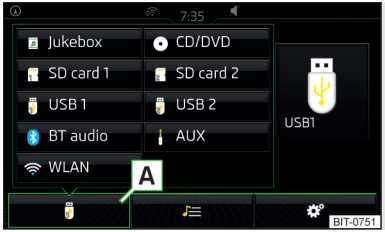


Fig. 160
Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Display example of the audio source selection

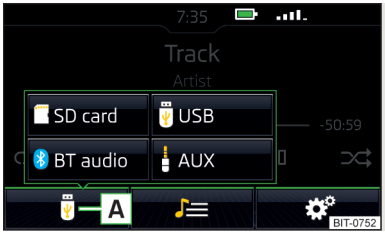


Fig. 161
Infotainment Swing: Display example of the audio source selection

› In the *Media* main menu, tap on the function surface A » Fig. 160 » Fig. 161 and select the desired audio source.

By selecting an audio source, playback of titles available starts (not for AUX).

Playback operation - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ⏮ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
	Finger movement to the right of the screen area A » Fig. 158 *on page 136* after 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Fast-reverse within the title	Press and hold ⏮
Fast-forward within the title	Press and hold ⏭
Play the previous title	Tap ⏮ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
	Finger movement to the right of the screen area A » Fig. 158 *on page 136* (Within 3 s after the start of the track playback)
Play the next title	Tap ⏭
	Moving your finger to the left of the screen area A » Fig. 158 *on page 136*
Switch on/off the random playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⤮
Switch on/off the repeat playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⟲
Switch on/off repeat playback of specific track	Tap ⟲

Operation	Action
Search (applies to sources with displayable multimedia database) (applies to Infotainment Columbus)	Tap
Turn on / off playback of similar tracks according to information from what is called the ID3-Tag (applies to Infotainment Columbus)	Tap

The movement within the track is possible by finger touching the timeline B » Fig. 158 *on page 136*.

Playback operation - Swing

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Play the previous title	Tap ⏮ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ⏮ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
Fast-reverse within the title	Press and hold ⏮
Fast-forward within the title	Press and hold ⏭
Play the next title	Tap ⏭
Switch on/off the random playback from the current album or folder	Tap
Switch on/off the repeat playback from the current album or folder	Tap
Switch on/off repeat playback of specific track	Tap

The movement within the track is possible by finger touching the timeline B » Fig. 158 *on page 136*.

Folder / track list

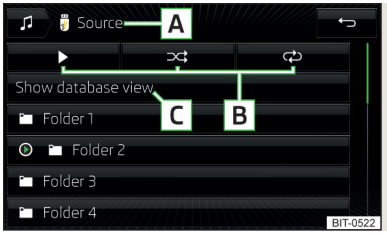


Fig. 162
Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Folder / track list



Fig. 163
Infotainment Swing: Folder / track list

› To **display** the folder / track list on the *Media* main menu, tap on the function surface ♪≡ (if this display is supported by the currently selected source).
› To **playback** select a title.

Folder / track list » Fig. 162 **and** » Fig. 163

A Selected audio source / audio source folder (movement within the folder takes place by pressing the function surface for the folder)
B Options folder/track playback
C Display of multimedia database (only available in the bibliography)
♪ / Select the audio source
Folder
Playlist
▷ / ⏸ Currently playing title / track playback stopped
The title cannot be played (tapping on the function surface shows the cause).

Note

- In the list, the first 1000 entries (titles, directories etc.) are displayed with the oldest creation date.
- The scanning speed of the folder / track list depends on the connection speed and volume of data.

Multimedia database

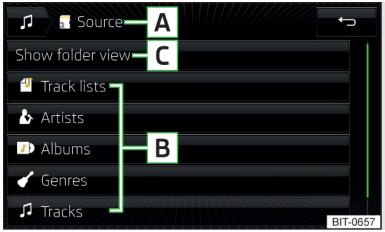


Fig. 164
Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Multimedia database

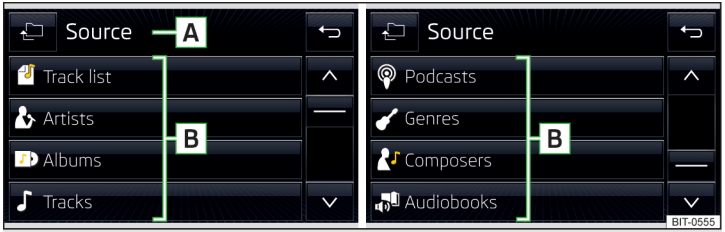


Fig. 165 **Infotainment Swing: Multimedia database**

› To **display** the multimedia database, in the *Media* main menu tap on the function surface ♪≡ (if this display is supported by the currently selected source).

The audio files are sorted by their properties into individual categories B.

› To **playback**, select the category and then the title.

Multimedia database » Fig. 164 **and** » Fig. 165

A Selected audio source / Selected category / folder of the audio source
B Sorting categories
C Display of files/track list (only available in the bibliography)

♪ Select the audio source
⮌ Tap - Selection of the parent folder / Hold - Selection of the audio source

Audio sources

Introduction to the subject

› To **playback**, connect or insert the desired audio source. Starts playback automatically, then select the audio source » page 137.

If AUX is selected as the audio source, the playback must be started on the connected device.

CAUTION

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an external audio source, the external source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and if necessary confirmed (e.g. enabling data transfer etc).

Note

The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

CD / DVD

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.



Fig. 166 **CD / DVD slot**

The CD/DVD» Fig. 166 slot is located in an external module in the glove box on the front passenger side.

› To **insert** a CD/DVD, with the labelled side facing up, press into the CD slot until it is automatically drawn in.
› To **eject**, press the button ≙ The CD/DVD is moved to the starting position.

If the ejected CD/DVD is not removed within 10 seconds, it is retracted again for safety reasons. However, the unit will not change to the CD/DVD source.

WARNING

- The CD/DVD player is a laser product.
- This laser product is classified as Class 1 laser product for the date of manufacture in accordance with national / international standards DIN EN 60825-1: 2008-05 and DHHS Rules 21 CFR. Subchapter J. The laser used in this class 1 laser product is so weak that there is no risk of danger when operated correctly.
- This product is designed such that the laser is restricted to the inside of Infotainment. However, the installed laser could be classified in a higher class were the housing to be removed. For this reason, never remove the Infotainment housing.

CAUTION

- Be sure to remove the CD/DVD before you try to insert a new CD/DVD. Otherwise you can damage the drive inside Infotainment.
- Only insert in the CD/DVD drive original Audio CDs/video DVDs or standard CD-R/RWs or DVD±R/RWs.
- Do not affix anything to the CD/DVDs!
- If the ambient temperature is too high or too low, the CD / DVD playback may not work.
- Damp (condensation) may affect Infotainment in cold weather or high humidity. This can cause the CD to jump or impair the play function. Once the moisture has dissipated, playback is fully functional again.

Note

- After pressing the button ≙ it takes a few seconds for the CD / DVD to be ejected.
- On uneven or unpaved roads, playback jumps may occur.
- If the CD/DVD is damaged, is not readable or is inserted incorrectly, the following message is displayed: **Error: CD/DVD**.
- It is possible that CD/DVDs protected by copyright cannot be played back at all or only in certain circumstances.

SD card

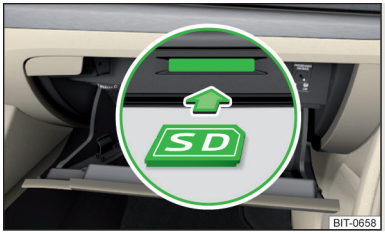


Fig. 167
Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Insert SD card

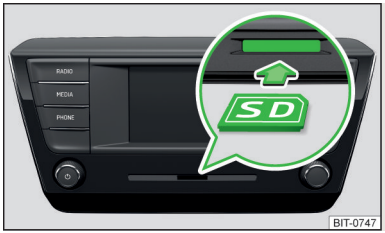


Fig. 168
Infotainment Swing: Insert SD card

› **Insert** the SD card in the slot in the direction of arrow (with the cut end facing right), until this "locks" » Fig. 167 and » Fig. 168.
› To **remove** the SD card, tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu → **Remove safely:** or. **Remove SD card safely**.
› Press on the inserted SD memory card. The SD card "jumps" into the eject position.

CAUTION

- Do not use an SD card with a broken write protection slide - there is a risk of damage to the SD card reader!
- When using an SD card with an adapter, vehicle vibrations might cause the card to fall out of the adapter.

USB input

The exact installation point of the USB input marked with » page 85.

The USB input audio source can be connected directly or via a connecting cable.

› To **connect**, insert the USB audio source into the appropriate input.
› To **disconnect** the USB, tap on the *Media* main menu function surface → **Remove safely:** or. **Remove USB Safely**.
› Disconnect the audio source from the corresponding USB input.

Load USB audio source
With Infotainment on after connecting the USB audio source, the charging process is automatically started (applies for audio sources where charging via the USB connector is possible).

The charging efficiency can differ compared to charging from the usual mains power supply.

Depending on the type of the connected external device and the frequency of use, the charging current may not be sufficient to charge the battery of the connected device.

Some connected audio sources may not be recognised and cannot be charged.

CAUTION
USB extension cords, or reducers may impair the function of the connected audio source.

Note
We recommend that you use extension cords from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

AUX - input

The exact installation point of the AUX input **AUX** marked with» page 85.

› To **connect**, insert the plug of the AUX audio source into the appropriate connector.
› To **disconnect**, pull the plug out of the AUX audio source.

CAUTION
- The AUX input must only be used for audio devices!
- If an external audio source is connected to the AUX input, which is equipped with an adapter for external power supply, the sound may be impaired.

Note
- The 3.5 mm stereo jack plug is used for the AUX input.
- We recommend that you use extension cords from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Bluetooth®player

Infotainment allows audio files of a connected Bluetooth® player to play using the A2DP and AVRCP audio profile.

With Infotainment, multiple devices can be paired using Bluetooth® , but only one of them can be used as a Bluetooth®player.

Connect / disconnect
› To **connect** the Bluetooth® player with Infotainment- follow the same instructions as for pairing Infotainment with a telephone» page 153.
› To **disconnect** the Bluetooth® player, end the connection in the list of paired external devices » page 153.

Replace Bluetooth® player (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero)
If you would like to replace a Bluetooth®-Player which is connected to Infotainment as a phone at the same time, , then a relevant information message appears on the Infotainment screen.

› End the connection to the currently connected Bluetooth® player and repeat the pairing procedure » page 153, *Managing paired external devices*.

CAUTION
If an external device is connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then it cannot be connected using Bluetooth®.

Jukebox

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

In the Jukebox (in the Infotainment internal memory), supported audio / video files can be imported from connected external devices.

Import files
› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu → **Manage jukebox** → **Import**.
› Select the desired source.
› Select the desired folders or files.
› Tap on the function surface .

Delete files
› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu → **Manage jukebox** → **Delete**.
› Select the desired folder or files in the selected category.
› Tap the function surface → **Delete**.

Show level of Infotainment memory

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu ⚙ → **Manage jukebox**.

information about the occupied and free space of the Infotainment memory and the number of files that cannot be imported is displayed.

Note

- Files that have already been copied are recognised and cannot be copied again (shown in grey).
- It is not possible to copy files while simultaneously playing back audio/video files in the CD/DVD drive.

WLAN

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

Infotainment allows you to play audio files from one of the external devices connected to the Infotainment WLAN.

› Connect an external device that supports the DLNA (Digital Living Network Alliance), with Infotainment WLAN» page 163.
› If necessary use the UPnP application (Universal Plug and Play) in the connected device, which allows playback to start.
› Select the audio source ᯤ Select**WLAN** .

Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); The USB devices supporting MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows phone (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	
CD/DVD Only applies to Infotainment Columbus)	CD/DVD Drive	Audio CD (Up to 80 min); CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB); DVD±R/RW; DVD-Audio, DVD-Video	ISO9660; Joliet (Level 1,2,3); UDF 1.x; UDF 2.x	-

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Multi channels[a]	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	no	m3u pls wpl m3u8 asx
WAV	wav	Defined by the format (approx. 1.5 Mbit/s)			
MPEG-1; 2 and 2.5 Layer 3	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz	yes	
MPEG-2 and 4	aac; mp4; m4a				
FLAC; Vorbis	flac; ogg	Defined by the format (approx. 5.5 Mbit/s)			

[a] Applies to the CANTON sound system.

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported audio sources and file formats - Swing

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); The USB devices supporting MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows mobile (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	
Bluetooth® Player	-	-	Bluetooth protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.4)	-

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	m3u pls wpl asx
MPEG-1; 2 and 2.5 (Layer-3)	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz	

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Images

Image viewer

main menu

Does not apply to Infotainment Swing.



Fig. 169
Images: Main menu

› To **display**press the button MENU in the main menu, then the function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 169

A Select the image source
Folder / Image List
Display the previous image
Switching on the slideshow
Switching off the slideshow
Display of the next image
Images menu settings
Rotate the image 90° anticlockwise
Rotate the image 90° clockwise
Display the initial image size while retaining the aspect ratio
Guidance to GPS coordinates (Amundsen; the display only occurs if the image contains GPS coordinates) (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen) » page 176

Control viewed images

Operation	Action
Display of the next image	Moving your finger across the screen to the left (with initial representation)
	Tap ⏭
Display the previous image	Moving your finger across the screen to the right (with initial representation)
	Tap ⏮
Increase the image size	Touch screen using two fingers and pull apart
	Turning the knob ⊙ to the right
Reduce the image size	Touch screen using two fingers and close together
	Turning the knob ⊙ to the left
Moving the image with an enlarged display	Drag your finger over the screen in the required direction
Rotate by 90 °	Touch screen using two fingers and move clockwise or counter clockwise (only available with start representation)
	Tap ↻ or ↺
Maximum magnification of representation	Double finger tap on the screen
Display the initial image size while retaining the aspect ratio	Double tap on the screen again
	Pressing the knob ⊙

CAUTION

Viewing images on the Infotainment screen is not supported by connected Apple devices.

Supported image file formats and sources

Supported image sources

Source	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB stick; HDD (without special software)	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	
CD / DVD (Applies to Infotainment Columbus)	CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB); DVD±R/RW	ISO9660; Joliet (Level 1,2,3); UDF 1.x; UDF 2.x	-

Supported file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. resolution (Megapixels)
BMP	bmp	4
JP (E) G	jpg; jpeg	4; 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

Note

- The max. supported image size is 20 MB.
- The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured images sources are not supported by Infotainment.

Video DVD

Video player

Main menu

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

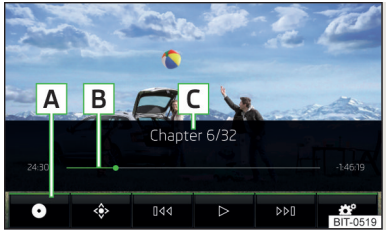


Fig. 170
DVD: Main menu

› to **display** the main menu, insert a CD / DVD in the corresponding slot in the external module.
› **or:** In the main menu *Media*, select the video source, display the folder / track list and start the video file.

Main menu » Fig. 170
A Select a video source
B Playback timeline
C Information for the selected video file (e.g., video title, chapter)
Display the DVD menu
*Video DVD*menu settings

Note

For safety reasons, the image display is switched off at speeds over 5 km/h. Only the sound continues. The respective message appears on the screen.

Control playback

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Play the previous video	Tap ⏮ within 3 s from the start of the track playback

Operation	Action
Play the current video from the start	Tap ⏮ after 3 s after the start of the playback
Fast rewind	Press and hold ⏮[a]
Play the next video	Tap ⏭
Fast forward	Press and hold ⏭[a]
Forward / rewind the video at the desired time	Tapping the reproduction timeline B » Fig. 170 *on page 145*

[a] The longer the function surface is held, the faster the fast forward/reverse.

DVD menu

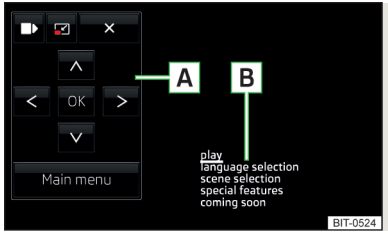


Fig. 171
DVD menu

› To **display** the DVD menu, in the main menu *Video DVD*, tap the function surface ◈ » Fig. 170 *on page 145* Tap.

Description of the DVD menu » Fig. 171

A Operating surface
B Example of the displayed menu

Function surfaces on the operating surface

Symbol	Operation
◀■ / ■▶	Move the operating surface left / right
◪ / ◪	Show / hide full screen display of the operating surface
✕	Close the operating surface
< > ∨ ∧	Movement in the EPG/teletext
OK	Confirmation
Main menu	Return to *video DVD* main menu

Supported video sources and file formats

Supported video sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); The USB devices supporting MSC operation	
CD/DVD	CD/DVD Drive	CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB); DVD±R/RW; default DVD; DVD-Video;	ISO9660; Joliet (Level 1,2,3); UDF 1.x; UDF 2.x	-

Supported video file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. frames per second	Max. resolution
MPEG-1	.mpeg	30	352 x 288
MPEG-2		25	720 x 576
MPEG-4	.mp4		
QuickTime	.mov		
Matroska	.mkv		
DivX; XviD	.avi		
MJPEG			

Media Command

Operation

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The Media Commandfunction allows playback of audio files or videos in up to two **Tablets**That are connected to Infotainment via WLAN, **to control Infotainment**.

The function Media Command enables operation of tablets with the Android operating system or iOS.

Connect tablet with Infotainment

› Turn on the Infotainment hotspot (WLAN) (press the button MENU then the function surface Tap on→ **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**).
› Switch on Wi-Fi in the tablet.
› Establishing a Wi-Fi connection in the tablet » page 163, *Hotspot (WLAN)*.
› In the tablet, start the application ŠKODA Media Command.

! CAUTION

If several devices are connected to Infotainment via WLAN, there is a risk that the quality of the WLAN connection, and therefore the function of Media Command may be affected.

Main Menu - Connected to a tablet

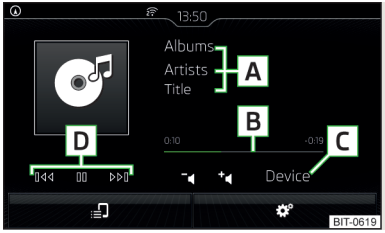


Fig. 172
Main menu: a tablet connected

› to **display** the main menu *Media Command* press the button MENU, then the function surface Tap.

Main menu » Fig. 172

A Information on playing track
B Playback timeline with a slider
C Tablet name
D Playback control
/ Increase / decrease the tablet volume
Selection of the playback source
WLAN settings

Main Menu - two tablets connected

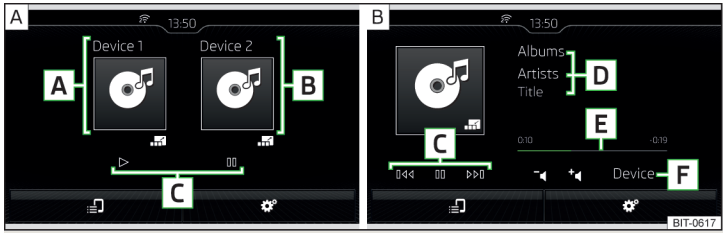


Fig. 173 **Main menu: two tablets connected / use one of the two connected tablets**

› to **display** the main menu *Media Command* press the button MENU, then the function surface Tap.
› To initiate operation of the tablet, the function surface Tap on each tablet » Fig. 173 - A.
› To return to the main menu, the function surface Tap on» Fig. 173 -B.

Main menu » Fig. 173

A Name of the first tablet
B Name of the second tablet
C Playback control
D Information on playing track
E Playback timeline with a slider
F Name of the tablet being operated
/ Increase / decrease the tablet volume
Selection of the playback source

WLAN settings
Initiation of tablet operation
Return to main menu

Select source and control playback

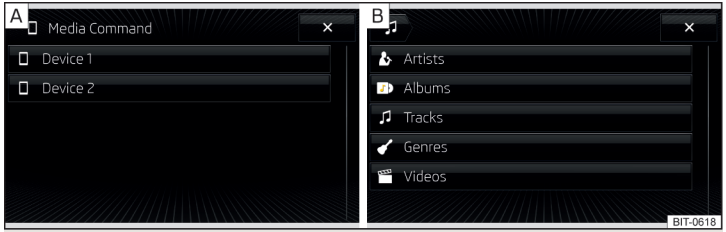


Fig. 174 **Select Source / Select Category**

› To **select the playback source** tap the function surface in the main menu . Tap on and select the source-tablet » Fig. 174 - A.
› To **playback**select the Category » Fig. 174 - B and then the title.

If two tablets are connected, the title playback starts in the two tablets at the same time.

Playback can be controlled via Infotainment or on each tablet, and are independent from each other. This means there is an option to playback different titles on the tablets at the same time.

Playback control

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ⏮ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
Play the previous title	Tap ⏮ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Play back the next title	Tap ⏭

The movement within the track is possible by touching the timeline B » Fig. 172 *on page 147* and E » Fig. 173 *on page 147*.

Note

Some tablet types allow playback of audio files or videos by an inserted SD card in the tablet. Playback of these tracks may be limited.

Supported file formats

Type	Format	Operating system Android	Operating system iOS
Video	MPEG-4 Part 2	✓	✓
	MPEG-4 Part 10 (H264)	✓	✓
	XVID	✓	✕
Audio	MPEG-1;2 and 2.5 Layer 3 (mp3)	✓	✓
	AAC	✓ (4,1)	✓
	M4A	✓ (4,1+)	✓
	OGG	✓	✕
	FLAC	✓	✕
	WAV	✓ (4,1+)	✓

Telephone

Introductory information

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero
This chapter deals with the operation of Infotainment with the telephone connected via Bluetooth® as well as the use of the SIM-card in the external module.

Depending on the Bluetooth®-profile used it is possible to connect to a telephone or two phones simultaneously to Infotainment.

The SIM card in the external module can be used for data and telephone services (Columbus).

If telephones are connected to Infotainment with multiple SIM cards, then calls can be accepted by all SIM cards of the connected telephones.

For outgoing calls, it depends on the type of connected telephone, either only the primary SIM card or one of the other SIM cards can be selected.

The Infotainment allows you to choose if you want to text messages of the main phone (if this is supported by the phone), or work with text messages from the SIM card inserted in the external module.

If Infotainment is connected to an external device via Apple CarPlay then the use of the Bluetooth® connection is not possible and the *Telephone* menu is not available. A possible data connection via the SIM card remains operational » page 164.

Applies to Infotainment Swing
This chapter covers the operation of a Bluetooth® device connected to Infotainment.

If a telephone is connected to Infotainment with multiple SIM cards, then calls can be accepted by all SIM cards of the connected phone.

For outgoing calls, it depends on the type of connected telephone, either only the primary SIM card or one of the other SIM cards can be selected.

! WARNING
The general binding country-specific regulations for operating mobile phones in the vehicle must be observed.

Possible connection types

Depending on the number of connected Bluetooth® devices, connection type, as well as the use of the SIM card in the external module, the following functions are available. ▸

Only valid for the navigation system Columbus

Connection variant	The first device (main phone)		The second device (additional phone)		Third device	Fourth device
	Telephone	SIM card (In the external module)	Telephone	SIM card (In the external module)		
1.	**rSAP** incoming / outgoing Calls, text messages, Phone contacts, Data connection, Bluetooth® player[a)]	-	**HFP** (incoming calls), Bluetooth® player[a)]	-	Bluetooth® player[a)]	-
2.	**HFP** (Incoming / outgoing Calls), text messages, Phone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a)]	-	**HFP** (incoming calls), Bluetooth® player[a)]	Data connection	Bluetooth® player[a)]	-
3.	**HFP** (Incoming / outgoing Calls), text messages, Phone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a)]	-	-	Incoming calls, Text messages, Data connection	Bluetooth® player[a)]	-
4.	-	incoming / outgoing Calls, text messages, Phone contacts[b)], Data connection	**HFP** (incoming calls), Text messages, Bluetooth® player[a)]	-	Phone contacts[b)], Bluetooth® player[a)]	Bluetooth® player[a)]

[a)] In every connection variant, there is an option to only connect an external device as a Bluetooth connection® player with Infotainment.
[b)] If phone contacts from the third device are imported into infotainment, the telephone contacts of the SIM card inserted in the external module cannot be used.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero

The first device (main phone)	The second device (additional phone)
HFP (Incoming / outgoing calls), SMS, Phone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a)]	**HFP** (incoming calls), Bluetooth® player[a)]

[a)] Only an external device can be connected to Infotainment as a Bluetooth® player.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

The first device (main phone)	The second device (additional phone)
HFP (Incoming / outgoing calls), Phone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a)]	Bluetooth® player[a)]

[a)] Only an external device can be connected to Infotainment as a Bluetooth® player.

Telephone

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

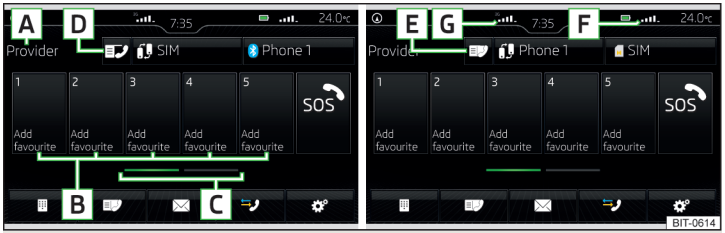


Fig. 175 **Telephone: Main menu**

The *Telephone* main menu is displayed if a phone or a SIM card with activated phone service on the external module is connected to Infotainment.

› To **display**, press the PHONE button.

If another, menu id displayed which was open last, to display the *Telephone* main menu, press the button again PHONE.

Home page - information and function surfaces » Fig. 175

A Name of the telephone service provider (with active roaming, the symbol appears before the name ▶)

B Function surfaces of preferred contacts

C Choice of storage group for the preferred contact

SOS Emergency number dialling [1] or function surface of the preferred contact » page 159

Display the list of paired phones (the name of the main phone / SIM card inserted in the external module with activated telephone services appears in the function surface)

Change the main telephone with the auxiliary telephone (the name of the auxiliary telephone appears in the function surface)

D Display the list of paired phones that are available as a source of telephone contacts - no phone for phone contacts is connected

E Display the list of paired phones that are available as a source of telephone contacts - a phone for phone contacts is connected

Enter the telephone number

Display the phone contact list, depending on the connection type » page 158

Displays a menu with text messages (SMS) / option to use a SIM card or a telephone for calling up the menu with text messages (SMS) (with new text messages, the number of messages appears in the function surface)

Display the call list (missed calls, in addition to the function surface, the number of calls when absent is displayed)

Settings for the *Telephone* menu » page 126

Symbols in the status bar

F Signal strength of the phone service network with existing SIM card in the external module or rSAP connection and connection type and data transfer

G Signal strength of the data service network (applies to infotainment Columbus)

Charge status of the telephone battery

Missed call

Current call

Incoming SMS

Ongoing data transfer

PIN The PIN code of the SIM card inserted in the external module has not been entered

Telephone

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

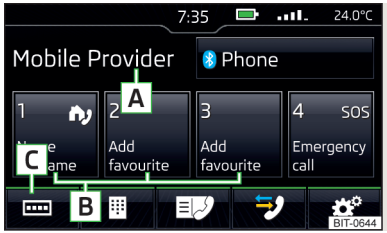


Fig. 176
Telephone: Main menu

[1] In some countries, the function may not be available.

The *Telephone* main menu appears when a telephone is connected to Infotainment.

› To **display**, press the PHONE button.

If another, menu id displayed which was open last, to display the *Telephone* main menu, press the button again PHONE.

Main menu - Information and function surfaces » Fig. 176

A Name of the telephone service provider (with active roaming, the symbol appears before the name ▶)

B Function surfaces of preferred contacts

C Choice of storage group for the preferred contact

Display the list of paired telephones (the name of the telephone appears in the function surface)

sos Emergency number dialling [1] or function surface of the preferred contact » page 159

Enter the telephone number

Display the telephone contact list » page 158

Display the call list (missed calls, in addition to the function surface, the number of calls when missed is displayed)

Settings for the *Telephone* menu » page 132

Symbols in the status bar

Signal strength of the telephone service network

Charge status of the telephone battery

Missed call

Current call

Pair and connect

Introduction to the subject

The range of the connection to Infotainment is limited to the passenger compartment.

To connect a telephone with Infotainment, the two devices must be paired via Bluetooth®.

The pairing process is dependent on the number of phones that are already connected or by using the SIM card inserted in the external module (Columbus) » page 154.

Depending on the Infotainment model, up to 20 external devices can be paired with the device. After reaching the maximum number, the pairing of the next external device will replace that of the device that has not been used for the longest period of time.

A connection with a telephone that is already paired does not require pairing. It is enough to find the telephone that has been paired in the list of paired phones and make the connection.

WARNING

Pair and connect a telephone to Infotainment only when the vehicle is at a standstill - there is risk of an accident!

conditions for pairing



Fig. 177
QR code with reference to the ŠKODA websites

The telephone can be paired with Infotainment under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ The Bluetooth® function of Infotainment and the telephone is switched on.

✓ The visibility of Infotainment and the telephone is switched on.

✓ The telephone is within range of the Bluetooth® signal of Infotainment.

✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

✓ There is no external device connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay.

[1] In some countries, the function may not be available.

The pairing can be initiated from Infotainment or from the telephone.

During the pairing and connection process, information messages are displayed on the Infotainment screen and the telephone screen. These messages must be observed and if necessary confirmed (e.g. enabling the contact import, connecting the Bluetooth® player among others).

Compatibility and update
By reading the QR code » Fig. 177 **or** after typing the following address into the web browser, information about the compatibility of phones and updates are available for Infotainment Bluetooth ®can be displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

Pairing and connection process

Pair the telephone with Infotainment
› Search available Bluetooth® devices in your telephone.
› Select Infotainment (name of Infotainment ⚙ → **Bluetooth** → **Name:**).
› Confirm or enter the PIN code to confirm the pairing.

The phone is connected to the infotainment or merely coupled, depending on the number of already connected external devices and using the SIM card inserted in the external module (Columbus).

Pair Infotainment with the telephone
› If there is **no** telephone connected to Infotainment, then press the PHONE button then tap the function surface **Find telephone**.
› **or** If Infotainment is connected to **a** phone, then in the main menu *Telephone* tap on the function surface ᛒ → **Search phone**.
› **or:** If **a SIM card** with activated telephone services is inserted in the external module of infotainment Columbus, then, in the main menu *Telephone*, tap on the function surface 🖴 → **Find telephone**.
› Select the desired telephone from the list of visited external Bluetooth® devices.
› Confirm the PIN code (enter and confirm if necessary to confirm the pairing.

If external Bluetooth® devices are already connected to Infotainment, then during the Infotainment pairing and connection process, messages and options for the possible connection type (e.g. replacement of the connected external Bluetooth® device) are displayed.

Possible connection types for phones, if required, for the SIM card in the external module » page 149.

Managing paired external devices

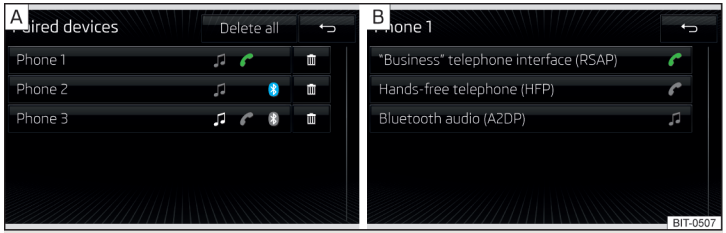


Fig. 178 **Infotainment Columbus: list of paired external devices / list of available Bluetooth® profiles**

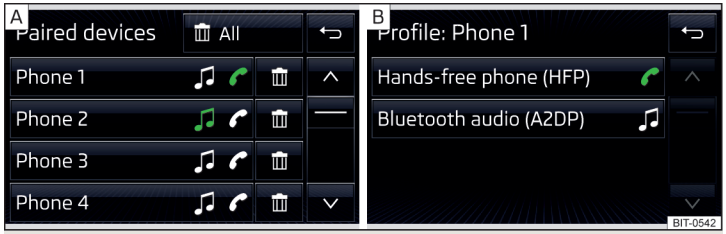


Fig. 179 **Infotainment Swing: list of paired external devices / list of available Bluetooth® profiles**

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface, ⚙ Tap→ **Bluetooth** → **Paired devices**.

In the list of paired external devices, the following symbols of the Bluetooth ® profile may appear for the individual external devices» Fig. 178 and » Fig. 179 A.

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Symbol	Symbol colour	Operation
	grey	External device can be connected as telephone
	Green	External device is connected as telephone

Symbol	Symbol colour	Operation
	grey	External device can be connected as Bluetooth® player
	White	External device is connected as Bluetooth® player

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with SIM card inserted in external module

Symbol	Symbol colour	Operation
	grey	External device can be connected to use telephone contacts and the text message function from this external device
	blue	External device is connected and telephone contacts and the text message function from this external device can be used

Applies to Infotainment Swing

Symbol	Symbol colour	Operation
	White	External device can be connected as telephone
	Green	External device is connected as telephone
	White	External device can be connected as Bluetooth® player
	Green	External device is connected as Bluetooth® player

Connection set-up

▸ Select the desired external device from the list of paired external devices.
▸ Select the desired profile from the list of avaiable Bluetooth® profiles » Fig. 178 and » Fig. 179 - B.

If external Bluetooth® devices are already connected to Infotainment, then during the Infotainment connection process, messages and options for the possible connection type (e.g. replacement of the connected external Bluetooth® device) are displayed.

Disconnection

▸ Select the desired external device from the list of paired external devices.
▸ Select the desired profile from the list of avaiable Bluetooth® profiles » Fig. 178 and » Fig. 179 - B.

Delete the paired external device

▸ To delete, tap on one of the following function surfaces.

Delete all or **All** - Delete all external devices
- Delete the desired external device

▸ Confirm the deletion by tapping on the function surface **Delete**.

Use the SIM card in the external module

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module.

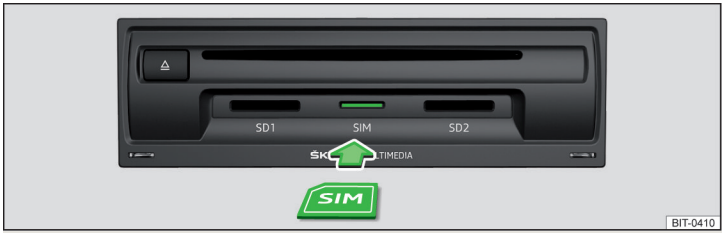


Fig. 180 **Insert SIM card in the external module**

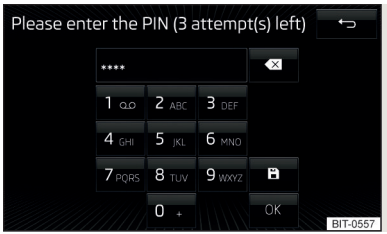


Fig. 181
Enter the PIN code of the SIM card

The SIM card inserted in the external module can be used for telephone and data services.

The use of the SIM card requires the telephone function of the external module to be switched on.

Switching on and off

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Phone interface "Business"**.

Insert SIM card

The SIM card slot is located in an external module in the glove box on the front passenger side.

A SIM card size **mini** (standard size 25x15 mm) must be used.

› Push the SIM card into the available slot with the cut-off edge to the left until it "locks into place" » Fig. 180.

If a phone / phones was/were connected before inserting the SIM card with the infotainment and telephone services on the SIM card are also selected, then the connection is terminated to previously connected phones.

Use the SIM card for the first time

The first time you insert the SIM card in the external module, the following menu appears.

› **Calls too** - Data and telephone services are activated (the main menu *phone* is displayed).
› **Data connections only** - only the data services of the inserted SIM card are activated.

If you want to change the enabled services later, then press the button PHONE and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Use SIM card only for data connection**.

Enter the PIN code and save

› If the SIM card is protected by a PIN code, then the PIN code of the SIM card must be entered » Fig. 181,
› If you want to save the entered PIN code in the Infotainment memory, then before confirming the PIN code, tap on the function surface 💾.
› Confirm the entered PIN code.

Establish a data connection using the SIM-card

After entering the PIN code a request is made by Infotainment for data connection.

› Tap the function surface **Connect**.

If the network is not sufficiently set up, Infotainment prompts for network settings.

› Tap the function surface **Network settings**.
› Select the data provider.
› Set the parameters for the data connection.

Change PIN code

› Press the PHONE button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **PIN settings** → **Change PIN**.
› Enter the new PIN code and confirm.

Remove SIM card

› Press on the inserted SIM card.

The SIM card "jumps" into the eject position.

› Remove the SIM card from the slot.

! CAUTION

- When inserting an incorrectly sized SIM card, there is a risk of damage to Infotainment.
- Avoid using a an adapter for the SIM card as the SIM card may fall out while driving due to vehicle vibrations - There is the risk of damage to the external module.
- If you let the SIM card protrude out from the slot, then it may fall out of the slot while driving due to vehicle vibrations.

rSAP

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module.

The Bluetooth® profile RSAP (remote transmission of data SIM) also allows, in contrast to Bluetooth® profile HFP, **the use** of data services from the connected phone (if this profile is supported by the phone and data services are enabled in this phone) » page 164.

The use of Bluetooth® profile RSAP requires the telephone function of the external module to be switched on.

Switching on and off

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Phone interface "Business"**.

The pairing and connection process takes place in the same way to the Bluetooth® profile HFP » page 152.

If the rSAP profile supported by the phone to be connected, then Infotainment tries to connect using this profile. Depending on the phone, the connection can be blocked or released using an rSAP profile in the phone.

If a SIM card is inserted in the external module, the phone cannot be connected to Infotainment by the rSAP profile.

Note

If an external device is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then the data connection using rSAP cannot be carried out.

Telephone functions

Enter telephone number and select



Fig. 182 **Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Numeric keypad / editing the phone numbers**



Fig. 183 **Infotainment Swing: Numeric keypad / editing the phone number**

Enter a telephone number and dial

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface .
› Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad » Fig. 182 or. » Fig. 183 - A.
› Select the number entered by tapping on the function surface .

Function surfaces of the numerical keyboard

- Enter the last dialled number / dial the telephone number entered
- sos Emergency call (Only applies to some countries)
- Breakdown call in case of breakdown
- Information call (for information regarding the products and services of the brand ŠKODA)
- Choosing the mailbox number (the function is not supported for Infotainment Swing)
- Delete the last number entered
- / Display of function surfaces < / > for the movement of the cursor in the input line » Fig. 182 - » Fig. 183

Breakdown and info numbers

The breakdown and info numbers are free of charge. Charges are only made for a telephone call in accordance with the fare conditions of your telephone service provider.

The phone numbers are already set at the factory. If you want to change the numbers, then consult a ŠKODA service partner.

If no breakdown or info calls can be made then a ŠKODA service partner should be consulted.

Search for a contact using the numeric keypad

The numeric keypad can also be used for a contact search.

If e.g the digits 32 are entered, then, contacts are displayed in the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. in addition to the numeric keypad in the area A » Fig. 182 and » Fig. 183.

Voicemail box (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)

If not import the voicemail number or was not imported or entered, then this can be entered or changed as follows.

▸ In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface → **User profile** → **Mailbox number:**.

▸ To select the voice mailbox number, tap the function surface Or on the numeric keypad, tap on the function surface 1 .

Note

The numeric keyboard can also be displayed during a telephone call.

List of telephone contacts

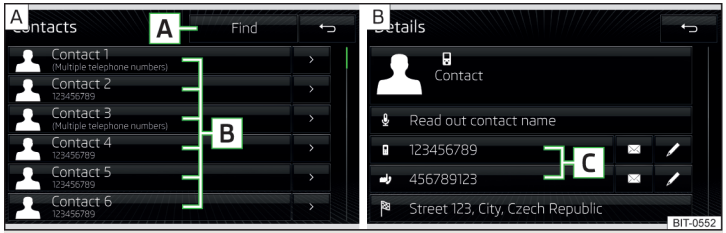


Fig. 184 **Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen: List of telephone contacts / Contact details**

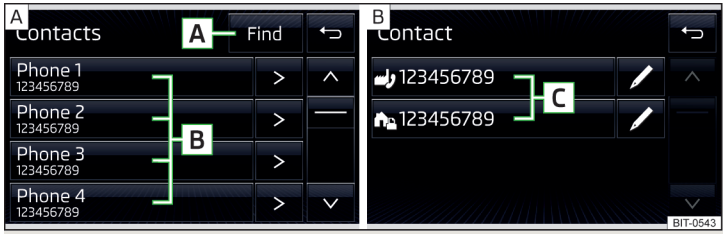


Fig. 185 **Infotainment Swing: List of telephone contacts / Contact details**

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface a list of telephone contacts is displayed » Fig. 184 or. » Fig. 185 - A.

The main telephone is connected to Infotainment, the telephone contacts from the telephone are used.

If there is a SIM card with activated telephone services in the external module of Infotainment Columbus, phone contacts are available on the SIM card. If necessary, you can choose another external device to import the telephone contacts by tapping the function surface D » Fig. 175 *on page 151*.

Function surfaces

A Contact search

B Select a number in the telephone contact list - if a telephone contact contains several telephone numbers, the system displays a menu containing the telephone numbers for this contact after selecting the contact)

> Display the contact details

C Selects the number in the contact details

Edit the telephone number of the contact before dialling

Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero:

The contact name can be read out by Infotainment's generated voice

Open the menu for sending a text message (SMS)

Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen:

Start the route guidance to the contact address

Import list

After the first connection of the primary telephone and/or the SIM card (Columbus) with Infotainment, the import of the telephone contacts to the Infotainment memory starts. The import can take several minutes.

In the Infotainment phonebook, there are 4000 (Columbus) and 2000 (Amundsen, Bolero, Swing) free storage locations for imported telephone contacts. Each contact can contain up to 5 telephone numbers.

The number of imported contacts can be determined in the menu item → **User profile** → **Import contacts:** and **Contacts imp.**.

If an error occurs during the import, an appropriate message appears on the screen.

Refresh list

When the telephone reconnects with Infotainment, the list is automatically updated.

The update can be carried out manually as follows.

▸ In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface → **User profile** → **Import contacts:** or. **Imp. contacts**.

Management of preferred contacts (favourites)



Fig. 186
Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Favourite contacts

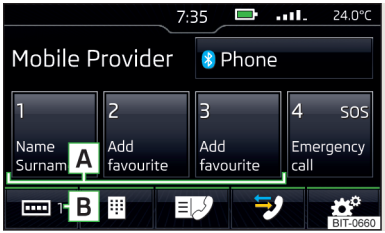


Fig. 187
Infotainment Swing: Favourite contacts

Assigning favourites

› In the main menu *Telephone*, tap on the desired function surface A » Fig. 186 or.» Fig. 187.
› Select the desired contact (if required, one of the contact numbers).

Connecting to a favourite

The function surfaces of preferred contacts allow the contact telephone numbers to be dialled immediately.

The favourites are available in two storage groups.

› To the **change storage group** tap on the function surface B » Fig. 186 and » Fig. 187.
› To **choose** tap on the assigned function area A » Fig. 186 and » Fig. 187.

Change allocated favourites

› In the *Telephone* main menu, hold the desired function surface A » Fig. 186 and » Fig. 187.
› Select the desired contact (if required, one of the contact numbers).

Delete a favourite

› Press the PHONE button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **User profile** → **Manage favourites**.
› Press the desired function surface of the preferred contact and confirm the deletion.

You can delete all contacts by tapping on the function surface **Delete all** / **All** and confirm the deletion process.

Call list

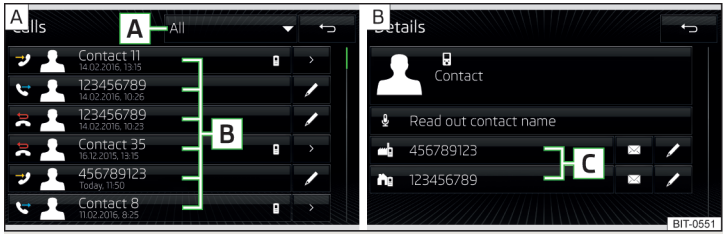


Fig. 188 **Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Call List / Contact details**

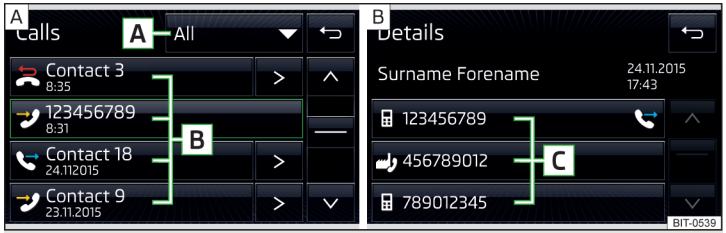


Fig. 189 **Infotainment Swing: Call List / Contact details**

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface a call list is displayed » Fig. 188 or.» Fig. 189 - A.

The call list can also be displayed during a telephone call.

Function surfaces

A Setting the display depending on the type of call
- **All** - List of all calls
- **Missed calls** / **Missed** - List of missed calls
- **Dialled numbers** / **Dialled** - List of dialled numbers
- **Received calls** / **Received** - List of received calls

B Dial a number from the call list

> Display the contact details

C Select the number in the contact details

Edit the phone number before dialling (not applicable to Infotainment Swing)

Call type symbols

Answered call

Outgoing call

Missed call

Telephone call

Depending on the conversation context, the following functions can be carried out.

End dialling / reject incoming call / end call

Accept incoming call / return to held call

Switch on/off ringer

Hold a call

Switch off/on microphone

Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero:

Connect conference call » page 160

Show caller details (if the contact is stored in the list) » page 158

Switch on/off hands-free (call to the telephone / switch to Infotainment)

- To switch off the hands-free system, in the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface Tap on **Hands-free**during a call.
- To switch off the hands-free system, tap on the function surface during a call.

Conference

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

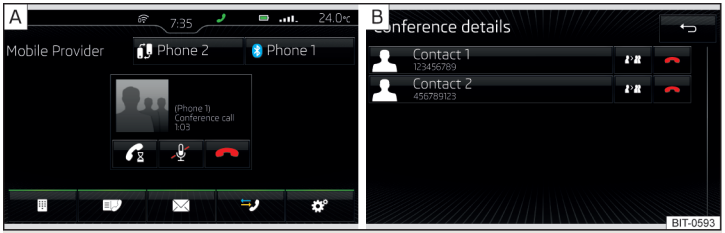


Fig. 190 **Conference call / Meeting details**

The conference call is a shared call with between three and six participants.

Start a conference call/invite additional participants

› During a call/conference call, carry out the next call.

› **or**Take the new incoming call by tapping the functional surface .

› To **initiate conference call** or **return to the conference call**, tap on the function surface .

Ongoing conference call

During an ongoing conference call, the call duration is displayed on the screen. Depending on the context, the following functions can be selected.

Hold a conference call - leave the conference call temporarily (the conference call continues in your absence)

Return to the held conference call

Switch off/on microphone

End conference call

Display conference call

Conference details

- During the ongoing conference call, press the function surface » Fig. 190 - A.

A list of other conference participants is displayed. The following functions can be selected depending on the type of telephone » Fig. 190 - B.

Display details of participant
Talk to a participant separately from the conference call
End the call to a conference participant

Text messages (SMS)

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

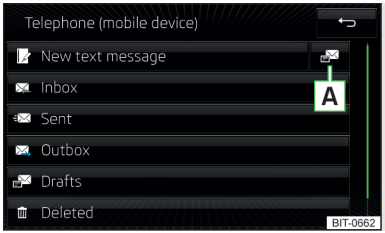


Fig. 191
Main menu text messages

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface ✉ The main menu for text messages appears » Fig. 191.
› If required, Select whether the SIM card inserted in the external module SIM card or the phone (Columbus) is to be used as the source of the text messages.

Depending on your model of connected telephone, you can perform the following functions.

A Opening a list of templates for quick answers
New text message - Creating and sending the message
Inbox- Open a list of received messages
Sent - Open a list of sent messages
Outbox - Open a list of messages not sent
Drafts- Open a list of drafts (messages in progress)
Deleted- Open a list of deleted messages
Send contact details - send the contact details (business card) (Columbus)

Display options to adjust the source of text messages (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
If there is a SIM card in the external module with telephone services and is also a phone connected to Infotainment, then for which source this is for after tapping the functional surface ✉ From the main menu *Telephone*, a menu of text messages should be displayed automatically.

▸ In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surfaces ⚙ → **Text message settings** → **Standard Account**.
▸ Select the desired menu item.

New text message

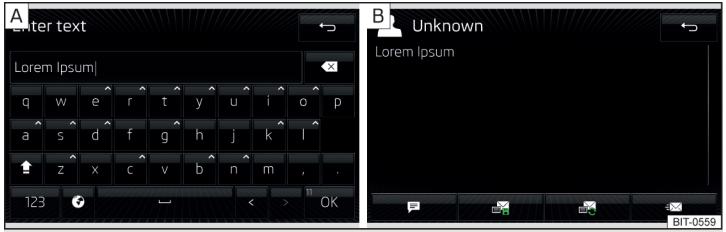


Fig. 192 **Composing a text message / viewing a text message**

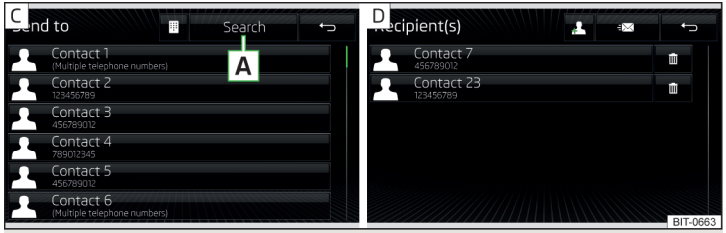


Fig. 193 **Contact list / recipient list**

Creating and sending the message
› In the main menu of the text messages, tap on the function surface ✎ » Fig. 191 *on page 161*.
› Write a message and tap on the function surface **OK** » Fig. 192 -A, a view of the text message is displayed » Fig. 192-B.

› Tap on the function surface ✉ .
› Select the recipient of the message from the displayed list or phone number by tapping the function surface ⠿ » Fig. 193 - C.
› Tap on the function surface ✉ » Fig. 193 - D, the message is sent.

While composing the message in the functional surface is **OK** the number of entered characters displayed » Fig. 192 - A.

The maximum number of characters entered in a message is 440. If a message is longer than 70 characters, then it is split into multiple messages.

Viewing the text message
After opening the view message function » Fig. 192 - B the following functions can be carried out.

- The text can be read out by the device's generated voice
- The text can be stored as a draft
- Open a list of templates with the option to replace the recorded text with the selected template
- Open the contact list

The message can be edited, as long as the text range is within the entered view.

Contact list
After the list has been opened the following functions can be carried out» Fig. 193 - C.

- Insert a contact in the recipient list
- A Contact search
- Enter the telephone number
- Return to view the message

After selecting the contact number or entering the telephone number, the recipient list will be displayed in the screen » Fig. 193 - D.

Recipient list
The following functions can be performed by tapping one of the function surfaces » Fig. 193 - D.

- To display the contact list with the option to add/remove additional message recipients / (to return to the recipient list » Fig. 193 - D tap on the function surface ⮌)
- Removal of the contact from the recipient list
- Sending the message
- Return to view the message

Received text message

When you receive a new message, the number of new messages received is displayed next to the function surface ✉ and at the same time the icon in the status bar is ✉ displayed.

› To **Open the list of received messages** tap on the button PHONE, then the function surface ✉ → ✉ .
› Select a message.

The message content and the following menu is displayed.

- The text can be read out by the device's generated voice
- ... Display a menu with additional options
  - **Reply with template** - Reply using a template
  - **Delete current text message** - Distance of displayed text message (applies to Infotainment Columbus, when the SIM card is inserted in the external module or the phone is connected via the Bluetooth® profile RSAP)
  - **Display numbers** - Recognition of telephone numbers in the message including the contact number (recognised numbers can be dialled directly or edited before dialling, or may be sent to this message)
- Forwarding a message with the option to edit the message before sending
- Reply to the sender via a message

Hotspot (WLAN) and data connection

Hotspot (WLAN)

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

WLAN can be used to connect to the Internet, to playback audio files in the menu *media* (if the connected external device allows this) or for operating the device using an application in the external device (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

The requirement for the WLAN function is that the ignition is switched on. After switching on the ignition, the last-used WLAN connection appears.

It is possible to connect up to 8 external devices to the Infotainment hotspot **and at the same time** to connect Infotainment to the hotspot of other external devices.

If there is a SIM card with activated data services in the external module of Infotainment Columbus or there is a connection to the phone via Bluetooth® profile RSAP, a connection cannot be established to the external device hotspot.

connect an external device to the Infotainment hotspot (WLAN)

Switch Infotainment hotspot on / off

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface Tap on→ **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**.

Set infotainment hotspot

▸ Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface Tap on→ **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Hotspot (WLAN) settings**.

▸ Setting required menu items from the following menu.

- **Security level:** - Setting the connection security
- **Network key** - Entering the access password
- **SSID: ...** - Name of the Infotainment hotspot
- **Do not send network name (SSID)** -Turn Infotainment hotspot visibility on/off

▸ Tap the function surface **Store** to save the parameters of the Infotainment hotspot.

Connect

▸ Enable the Wi-Fi in the external device and search for any available hotspots.
▸ Select the Infotainment hotspot (if necessary, enter the required password).
▸ Confirm the connection.

Establish secure connection using WPS (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)

▸ Turn on Infotainment in the device.
▸ Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **WLAN** → **Portable hotspot** → **WPS Quick Connection (WPS button)**.
▸ Turn on the option to connect to Infotainment hotspot using WPS.

i Note

If the external device is connected to the Infotainment hotspot (WLAN), then the data connection to the external device cannot be used.

Connect Infotainment to the hotspot (WLAN) of the external device

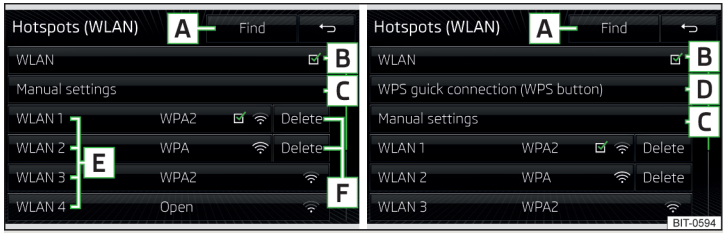


Fig. 194 **List of available wireless networks: Infotainment Columbus / Infotainment Amundsen**

› To **Turn on / off the Infotainment WLAN** press the button MENU, then the functional surface → → **WLAN** → **WLAN** → **WLAN**.

Show available hotspots

▸ Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface → **WLAN** → **WLAN**[1]. ▸

[1] As long as Infotainment is connected to the hotspot of the external device, its hotspot name is displayed in this function surface.

With WLAN activated, a list of available or previously connected hotspots with the following information and function surfacesis displayed » Fig. 194.

- A Searching for available hotspots
- B Turn Infotainment WLAN on/off
- C Manual hotspot search and connect
- D Automatic establishment of the secure connection to the hotspot via WPS (Applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
- E Functional surfaces of the available hotspots
- F Disconnection from the currently connected hotpot by deleting the Infotainment memory access password (The functional surface will only be shown when connected)
- ☑ Current connection
- Wi-Fi strength of the external device

Connect

- ▸ Turn on Infotainment in the device.
- ▸ Show the list of available hotspots, if necessary, update the list by tapping the function surface **Find**.
- ▸ Select the desired hotspot.
- ▸ If the access to the hotspot is password protected, then enter the required password.

Search for connection manually and connect

- ▸ Turn on Infotainment in the device.
- ▸ Display list of available hotspots.
- ▸ Tap on the function surface **Manual settings** and set the required hotspot parameters.
- ▸ Tap the function surface **Connect**.
- ▸ If the parameters for the search are set correctly and the hotspot is available, then the connection will take place.

Establish secure connection using WPS (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)

- ▸ Turn on Infotainment in the device.
- ▸ In the external device, turn on the option to connect to the external device via WPS.
- ▸ Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ Tap on→ **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **WPS quick connection (WPS button)**.

End connection to the hotspot

- ▸ Press button when the desired Hotspot (WLAN) is found MENU ,then the function surface → ⚙ → **WLAN** → **WLAN** → **Delete**.

Data connection

Using the data connection, Infotainment can be connected to the Internet. The data connection can be established in one of the following ways.

Data connection via WLAN

› Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of an external device with activated data services » page 163, *Connect Infotainment to the hotspot (WLAN) of the external device*.

Data connection using the SIM card in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

› Insert a SIM card with activated data services in the external module » page 154, *Use the SIM card in the external module*.

Data connection using rSAP (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

› Connect Infotainment via Bluetooth® profile rSAP to a telephone with activated data services» page 155, *rSAP*.

! CAUTION

When inserting an incorrectly sized SIM card, there is a risk of damage to the CarStick device.

i Note

The Internet connection may be chargeable based on the terms and conditions of your data provider.

SmartLink

Introductory information

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.



Fig. 195
Information on SmartLink on the ŠKODA websites

Read in the QR code» Fig. 195**or**enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with information on the SmartLink system.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity-smartlink

SmartLink offers the option to display certified applications on an external device equipped with a USB device on the Infotainment screen and to operate them.

SmartLink supports the following communication systems.

- Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink®

Using the applications in the connected external device, you can use navigation to make a call and to listen to music.

For reasons of safety, the operation of some applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Depending on the model of the connected external device, some applications can be started using voice activation, via the Infotainment screen, using the operating elements on Infotainment, or using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

The voice control of the connected external device can be activated by holding the button VOICE or holding the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

CAUTION

To establish the connection, it is necessary that the date and time in Infotainment are set correctly. If the date and time setting is based on the GPS signal, then problems may arise with establishing a connection with a poor GPS signal reception.

Note

- During the connection process, information messages may be displayed on the Infotainment screen, and in the phone display. These messages must be observed and confirmed if necessary (e.g. Release of data transfer, enabling the contact import, release of text messages).
- We recommend that you use extension cords from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- With some connected devices, it is necessary that the connected external device is unlocked over the entire duration of the connection for trouble-free functioning of the SmartLink function"".

Main menu

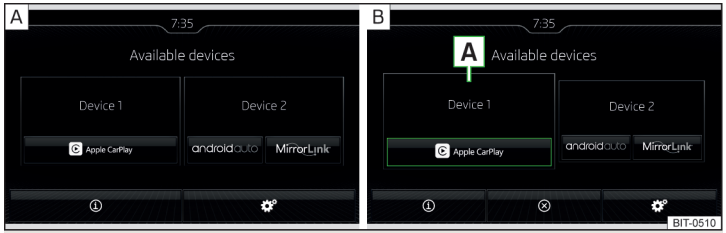


Fig. 196 **Main menu: No connection / example of an active connection**

› To **display** the main menu SmartLinkpress the button MENU, then the function surface **SmartLink** .

Main menu - Functional surfaces

A Active connection
ⓘ Display of information about SmartLink
⊗ Disconnection
⚙ Settings for the menu SmartLink » page 128

Connection set-up

▸ Connect the external device via a connecting cable to the USB input » page 85.

▸ In the main menu SmartLink Choose the connected external device and the type of communication system if necessary» Fig. 196 - A.

Return to the main menu of the active connection from another Infotainment menu

(E.g. From the *Radio* menu)

▸ Press the button MENU and select the active connection.

Disconnection

▸ To end the connection, tap on the function surface in the main menu SmartLink ⊗ » Fig. 196 - B.

▸ **or** Disconnect the device from the USB input.

If the connection was ended by tapping on the function surface ⊗ from the main menu SmartLink, the connection needs to be re-established when the external device is connected again.

If the connection was terminated by disconnecting the cable from the USB port, then the last active connection is shown in the main menu when the external device is reconnected.

Android Auto

Introduction to the subject

The Android Auto- connection can be set up under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.

✓ Infotainment is switched on.

✓ The external device to be connected is switched on.

Some applications require the data connection in the connected external device to be turned on.

If Infotainment is connected to an external device via Android Auto then all the phones currently connected, as well as the Bluetooth® players are disconnected.

The external device to be connected will automatically establish a telephone connection via Bluetooth® as a main phone. Connecting an additional telephone and using telephone services of the SIM card in the external module are not possible for the duration of the connection. A possible data connection using the SIM card inserted in the external module remains operational » page 164.

An external device connected using Android Auto cannot be used as an audio source in the menu *Media*.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment in Infotainment, then there is the option to start the route guidance in the Android Auto application. This is also true reciprocally.

A list of devices and applications that the Android Autoconnection supports can be found on the Google websites. Functionality is not guaranteed outside of the supported regions.

Home Page

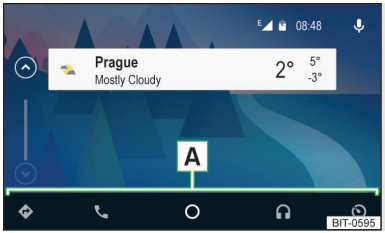


Fig. 197
Android Auto: Main menu

Main menu - function areas and information in the area A

- Navigation applications
- Telephone applications
- Overview regarding current applications, telephone calls, accepted text messages, tasks in the working directory, weather or similar.
- Music applications
- Return to SmartLink main menu

Start the application

▸ Tap on the function surface of the desired application to launch the application.

The symbol appears next to the function surface in the area A ▽, then, by tapping on this function surface again, a list of new applications is displayed.

Apple CarPlay

Introduction to the subject

The Apple CarPlay connection can be set up under the following conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ Infotainment is switched on.
- ✓ The external device to be connected is switched on.
- ✓ The data connection is turned on in the device to be connected.
- ✓ Voice control is turned on in the device to be connected.

If Infotainment is connected to an external device via Apple CarPlay then the use of the Bluetooth® connection is not possible and the *Telephone* menu is not available. A possible data connection via the SIM card remains operational » page 164.

A device connected using Apple CarPlay cannot be used as an audio source in the menu *Media*.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment using Infotainment, then this is terminated by starting the route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application. This is also true reciprocally.

A list of devices and applications that the Apple CarPlayconnection supports can be found on the Apple websites. Functionality is not guaranteed outside of the supported regions.

Main menu

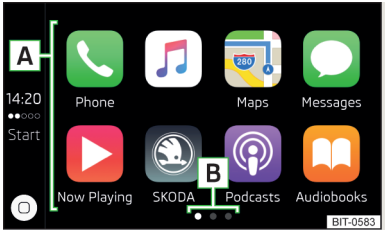


Fig. 198
Apple CarPlay: Main menu

Main menu - function surfaces and information

A List of available applications

B Other pages with applications (by running your finger sideways across the screen or by turning the dial, the next page can be displayed)

Depending on how long the function surface is pressed:
- ▸ **Tap** - Return to main menu Apple Carplay
- ▸ **Hold** - Switching on voice control

Start the application

▸ In the Apple CarPlay main menu connection select the desired application in the field A » Fig. 198.

MirrorLink®

Introduction to the subject



Fig. 199
Information about MirrorLink® on the ŠKODA websites

The MirrorLink®- connection can be set up under the following conditions.

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ Infotainment is switched on.
- ✓ The external device to be connected is switched on.

Some applications require the data connection in the connected external device to be switched on.

If you want to use the menu *Telephone*, then before establishing the MirrorLink® connection with the telephone then connect Infotainment first via Bluetooth®.

An external device connected using MirrorLink®cannot be used as an audio source in the *Media* menu.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment using Infotainment, then this is not terminated by starting the route guidance in the MirrorLink®- application.

Read in the QR code» Fig. 199**or**enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with information on the supported MirrorLink ® system.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity

Main menu

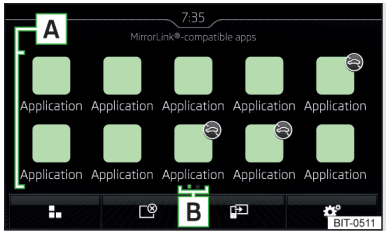


Fig. 200
MirrorLink®: Main menu

Main menu - function surfaces and information

- Return to SmartLink main menu » page 165
- Displays a list of running applications with the ability to terminate them
- Display the application last shown (as long as the application is running)/ show the display content of the connected external device
- Settings for the SmartLink menu » page 128
- A List of applications
- B Other pages with applications (by performing a finger movement sideways across the screen, other pages with applications are displayed)
- Application is not certified for use while driving

Operation

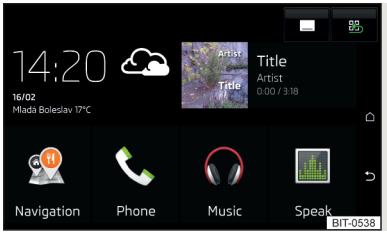


Fig. 201
Example of a running MirrorLink® application

Start the application

▸ In the Mirrorlink® connection main menu, select the desired application in the field A » Fig. 200 *on page 168*.

The application starts and the following function surfaces are displayed.

/ Display of function surfaces below / above

Return to MirrorLink® main menu

Hide/ show the function surfaces

▸ Turning the control knob press.

Display of the running application

▸ In the main menu of the MirrorLink®- connection, press the function surface » Fig. 200 *on page 168* The last displayed application is displayed.

If you want to display a different application, then the function surface of the desired application must be tapped in the main menu of the MirrorLink®connection A » Fig. 200 *on page 168*.

Ending the current application

▸ Tap on the function surface → .

▸ Press the function surface of the desired application with the symbol ⊗ .

By tapping the function surface **Close all**, all running applications are closed.

Function issues

If problems occur with the MirrorLink ®connection, then one of the following messages may occur on the screen.

- **Error: Transfer**- Disconnect the external device and reconnect
- **MirrorLink® audio is not available.** - Disconnect the external device and reconnect

- **MirrorLink® availability on this mobile device is restricted.** Using of the connected device is not possible while driving
- **The mobile device is locked. Please unlock the mobile device to use MirrorLink®** - Unlock the connected "external device"
- **Unable to start app or app not working.** - Disconnect the external device and reconnect

Navigation

Introductory information

Navigation - Function sequence

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

Route guidance is started as follows.

› Search for/ enter a new destination **or** Select one of the stored destinations.
› Confirm the route calculation in the destination details or if necessary, adjust the route options.
› Select the preferred route type, if this is requested by Infotainment.

A route calculation occurs and route guidance starts.

The route guidance is provided by graphical driving recommendations and nav. announcements.

The is an option to add additional destinations during route guidance, or to adapt the route.

If a traffic radio station is available, information concerning traffic delays is evaluated by Infotainment and, if necessary, an alternative route is offered.

If you deviate from the route, then a new route calculation is carried out.

GPS satellite signal

Infotainment uses the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellite signal for route guidance.

Outside the range of the GPS satellite signal (e.g. in dense vegetation, in tunnels, parking garages, etc.), Infotainment navigates only with restrictions using vehicle sensors.

Infotainment offers the option to show in the split screen display the following **Position** » Fig. 204 *on page 171* information about the current geographical position of the vehicle and the satellite signal.

- Geographical longitude
- Geographical latitude
- Elevation
- Number of received/available satellites

If no GPS satellite signal is available, no values are displayed.

Navigation data

Navigation data source Columbus
The navigation data is stored in the Infotainment memory.

Navigation data source Amundsen
The navigation data is stored on an **Original** SD Card.

In order to ensure the function of the navigation, the Original SD card, with the navigation data, must be inserted in the respective slot in the external module » page 115.

If the original SD card is damaged or lost, a new original SD card can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

With a **Non-original** SD Card, navigation does **not work**.

Determining the version of the navigation data
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface Tap→ **Version information** .

Update navigation data
We recommend that you update the navigation data on a regular basis (e.g. Due to newly developed roads and changed traffic signs).

The information on updating the navigation data is to be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or on the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Main menu



Fig. 202
Navigation: Main menu

› To **display**, press the NAV button.
› If the main menu *navigation* is not shown, then press the button again NAV.

Description of the function surfaces A » Fig. 202

- Context-dependent:
  Route guidance is deactivated - Search / enter a new destination
  Route guidance is enabled - The following menu is displayed:
  - **Route details** - Displays the route details » page 181
  - **Change route in map** - Displays a menu for the route change in the map (applies to Infotainment Columbus) » page 182
  - **Congestion ahead** - Manually adjusts traffic conditions » page 186
  - **Enter destination** - Search / enter a new destination / stopover » page 171
  - **Stop route guidance** - Stops route guidance » page 181
- The following menu is displayed:
  - **Store position** - Store the current vehicle position as a flagged destination » page 174
  - **Routes** - Display the list of saved routes » page 183
  - **Destinations** - Display the list of stored destinations » page 174
  - **Last destinations** - Display the list of recent destinations to which route guidance was carried out » page 173
  - **Home address** - Route guidance to your home address » page 174
- Search for POIs in the categories, and
- Map presentation options » page 176
- Operation of **Media/Radio** playback
- *Navigation* settings » page 128

Map



Fig. 203
Card description

The following information and function surfaces can be displayed in the map.

- A Vehicle position
- B Route
- C Function surfaces for card use » page 176
- D Function surface of the POI

E Function surface for the POI list
F Function surface for displaying a traffic incident » page 186
G Information on the maximum permitted speed
Destination position
Intermediate destination position
Destination position **Home address**
Favourite position

Information in the status line

Street name / street number of the current vehicle position
Distance to destination
Route to the stopover
Estimated travelling time to the destination
Estimated travel time to the stopover
Estimated time of arrival at destination / stopover

Split screen

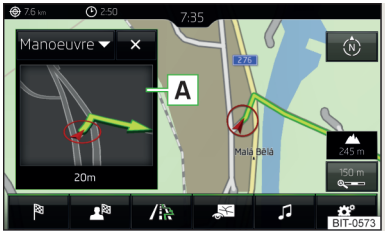


Fig. 204
Split screen

› To **switch on/off** in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Split screen**.
› To **select content** of the additional window A » Fig. 204 tap the function surface ▽ Tap and select one of the following menus, depending on the context.

- **Audio** - Operation of **Radio/Media**playback
- **Compass** - Displays the current vehicle location in relation to the compass directions
- **Freq. Routes** - Displays the three most frequently travelled routes (if route guidance is disabled) » page 181
- **Manoeuvre** - Displays graphical driving recommendations (if route guidance is enabled) » page 180
- **Position** - Displays the geographical coordinates of the current vehicle location
- **Map** - Displays the preview map (applies to Infotainment Columbus) » page 178

Search for destination and enter

Search for destination/ POI

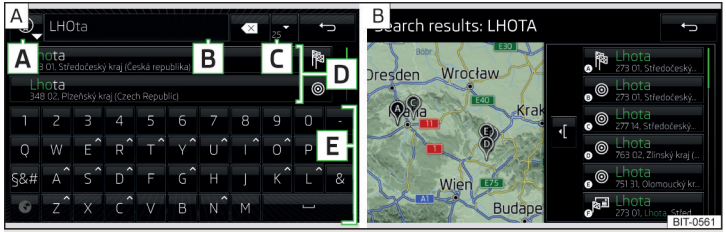


Fig. 205 **Destination search: Main menu / list of visited destinations**

The feature allows a full text search of locations or points of interest (POI) by entering keywords.

Display main menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .
› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Enter destination**.
› If no menu is displayed for destination search, but a display for destination input via the address or the destination entry in the map, then tap on the function surface ☰ → **Find**.

Find destination

› In the entry line, enter the POI name or the POI category (POI), the place and street name or house number / postal code.

If you want to search for a destination (e.g. POI) in the current vehicle environment, then enter the destination name, for example. "Restaurant".

If you want to search for a destination in a particular location (e.g. POI), then enter the destination name and the location, for example. "Restaurant Prague".

During input, destinations are shown in area D » Fig. 205 that best correspond to the instructions.

If route guidance e.g. Is required in a car park or restaurant which is close to the chosen destination, then the **Nearby** function surface must be tapped in the destination details of the chosen destination. Then search for and select the desired destination.

Description of the function surfaces » Fig. 205

A Choice of search
- Searching for a destination or POI (point of interest) by name
- Search for a point along the route (only works with active route guidance)
- Searching for a destination near the entered destination (after selection in destination details » page 179)

B Input line

C Depending on whether a mark is in the entry line, the following menu is displayed.
- View a list of visited locations corresponding to the entered characters » Fig. 205 - B
- Choose the type of destination search / destination entry (no character is entered)
  - **Find** - Destination / POI search » Fig. 205
  - **Address** - Enter destination via the address » page 172, *Enter destination using the address*
  - **On map**- Enter destination via the map point / using the GPS coordinates » page 173

D List of last destinations (no character is entered) / List of visited destinations

E Alphanumeric keypad

List of visited destinations

▸ To **display the list** of visited destinations » Fig. 205 - B, tap on the function surface .

In the list of visited destinations, there is a maximum of 6 destinations shown, each is identified with a letter. Then these destinations are shown in the map with the icon and a letter, which coincides with the letter in the list of destinations visited.

Enter destination using the address

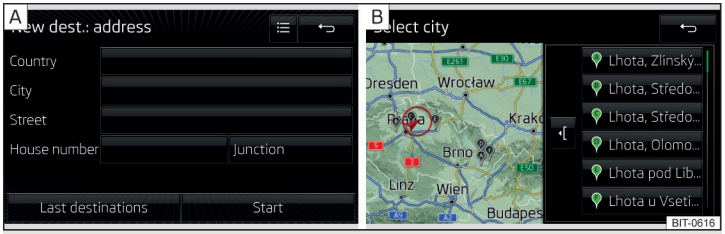


Fig. 206 **Enter destination using the address: Main menu / list of visited locations**

Display main menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .

› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Enter destination**.

› If the destination entry menu » Fig. 206 - A is not shown using the address, then tap on the function surface → **Address**.

Enter destination

› Enter the destination address and then confirm.

Relevant names (e.g. Place/street names) are offered in the entry line during entry, depending on the context. Previously entered names are offered on a preferential basis.

The location of the destination offered, which is specified in the entry line in parentheses, can be displayed in the map by tapping the function surface**Map**.

List of locations visited

There is a possibility that a map with a list of places of the same name will be displayed during entry» Fig. 206 - B.

The list of places visited can also be called up during address entry by pressing the function surface .

In the list of visited locations, there is a maximum of 6 locations shown, marked with a letter. Then, these places are marked with the symbol in the map and a letter, which coincides with the character in the list of visited locations.

If several places were visited, then the list can be scrolled through by turning the controller ⊙ or sliding the slider.

i Note

- While entering a street name there is an option to enter the centre of a given place as a destination instead of a street name by tapping the function surface **Centre**.
- After entering the street name, the house number or intersection can be entered using the name / number of the intersecting road.

Enter destination on the map and using GPS coordinates

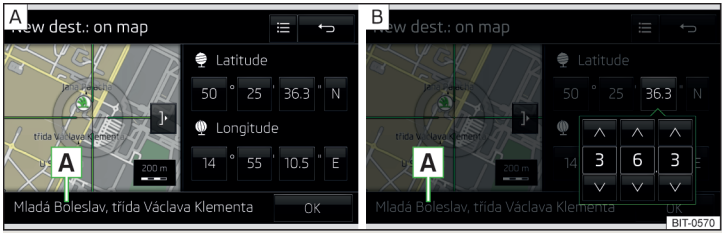


Fig. 207 **Enter destination: via the map point / using GPS coordinates**

Show map

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .
› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Enter destination**.
› Then tap the function surface and choose the menu item **On map**.

Enter destination via the point

› While entering a destination into the map, the map scale displayed can be changed manually » page 177, *Manual change of scale*.
› By sliding the screen move the desired destination into the cross-hair » Fig. 207 - A.
› Confirm the destination entry by tapping the function surface **OK** .

through via coordinates

› The function surface with the desired GPS value coordinates for latitude and longitude » Fig. 207 - B.
› Set the desired value and the destination input by pressing the function surface **OK** .

If information is available about the point entered in the Infotainment navigation data, then these will be displayed instead of the GPS coordinates (e.g. address A » Fig. 207).

Search for petrol station, restaurant or car park

Infotainment enables quick search of petrol stations, restaurants, or parking.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface / .
› The function surface of the desired category button.

Depending on the context below, a list of up to 200 POIs in the selected category is displayed.

▸ **No route guidance is taking place** - The nearest destinations in a radius of 200 km from the current vehicle position are displayed.
▸ **Route guidance is taking place** - Destinations on the route or near the route are displayed.

With the function switched on → **Fuel options** → **Select preferred petrol station** the preferred petrol stations are displayed in the first three positions during the petrol station search.

Last destinations

List of last destinations

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the function surface → **Last destinations**.

Details of the final destination

› In the main menu *Navigation*, press the button NAV.

If route guide is disabled, then the details of the last destination are displayed to where the route guidance was carried out. **If route guidance is enabled**, Then the details of the final destinations are displayed.

Last destinations menu for destination / POI search

In the destination search menu, a short list of last destinations is show in the area D » Fig. 205 *on page 171*.

Function surfaces in the list of last destinations

Search - Destination search by name (the function surface is displayed with more than 5 entries available)
› - Display the details of the selected destination » page 179

Destination memory



Fig. 208 **Select list of stored destinations / categories of saved destinations**

List of stored destinations

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the function surface → **Destinations**.
› Tap on the function surface ▽ » Fig. 208 - A tap and choose and one of the following saved destination categories » Fig. 208 - B

All saved destinations
- - Flagged destination (vehicle position at the time of storage)
- - Stored destination (manually saved destination / in vCard format imported destination)
- - Favourite (destination with additional favourite property)

Favourites (the favourite location is shown in the map by the symbol ★).

Telephone contact addresses of the connected phone or the inserted SIM card.

Function surfaces in the list of stored destinations

Search - Destination search by name (the function surface is displayed with more than 5 entries available)

> - Display the destination details » page 179

Store target

▸ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the function surface → **Last destinations**.
▸ Tap on the function surface > Tap on the desired destination, the destination details are displayed.
▸ Tap on the function surface **Store** .
▸ Rename the destination if necessary and confirm storage.

"Flagged destination" Save (current vehicle position)

▸ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Store position**.
▸ By then pressing the function surface **Rename** the flagged destination can be renamed and stored as a destination in the destination memory.

By storing the next flagged destination, the last flagged destination will be overwritten. To maintain the existing flagged destination, this destination must be stored in the Infotainment memory.

Save as a favourite / cancel

It is not possible to store a contact, a vCard or target image as a favourite.

▸ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Destinations**.
▸ Tap on the function surface ▽ and select the desired group.
▸ Show the destination details by tapping on the function surface > at the desired destination.
▸ Tap the function surface **Edit**.
▸ Tap the function surface **Favourite**.

Delete destination

▸ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Destinations**.
▸ Tap on the function surface ▽ and select the desired group.
▸ Show the destination details by tapping on the function surface > at the desired destination.
▸ Tap the function surface **Edit** .
▸ Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Home address

Define home address

When your home address is not entered, then proceed as follows.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Home address**.
› Defining the home address using the current vehicle position or by entering the address.

Change the home address

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Define home address**.
› Tap the function surface **Edit** .
› Edit the home address or set one up using the current vehicle position or by entering the address.

Delete home address

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Home address**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Import my destinations

Introduction to the subject



Fig. 209
MyDestination application on the ŠKODA websites

In this chapter, destinations are described which can be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Custom destinations can be created using the ŠKODA application "MyDestination".

By reading the QR code » Fig. 209 **or** after typing the following address in the web browser, more information on the "MyDestination"application is displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/my-destination

Custom destination in vCard-format

In the Infotainment memory, a custom destination can be imported in the vCard format (*.vcf) from an SD card or a USB source.

Import

› Insert the SD card into the exernal module or connect a USB source with the file of the custom destination.
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Import destinations (SD/USB)**.
› Select the source and confirm the import.

Route guidance

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Destinations** → → .
› Search for and select the desired imported destination.

Delete own destination

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Destinations** → → .
› Tap on the function surface > Tap on the desired own destination.
› In the destination details, tap the function surface **Edit** → **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Own POI categories (My POIs)

Import / update

› Insert the SD card into the external module or connect a USB source with the POI categories.
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Manage memory**→ **Update My POIs (SD / USB)** → **Update**.
› Select the source and confirm the import.

If there is already the same POI category name in the Infotainment memory, then it will be overwritten during the import.

Show own category destinations in the map

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** → **My points of interest (Personal POI)**.

Clear all own POI categories

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface Tap on→ **Manage memory** → **Delete my POIs** → Delete.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Image with GPS coordinates



Fig. 210
Image with GPS coordinates

Infotainment enables guidance to the GPScoordinate data stored in the image.

› Press the MENU button, then tap on the function surface **Images**.
› Select the connected source and open the image with GPS coordinates.
› Tap on the function surface » Fig. 210 in the image, a menu opens with the option to start route guidance.

The image can be obtained from an external device in which GPS coordinates are stored during image creation. If necessary, this can be created and imported in the "MyDestination" » Fig. 209 *on page 175*application.

Map

Tap map point



Fig. 211
Menu after tapping the map point

By tapping the map in the Main Menu *Navigation* the symbol and a menu with the following menu items appear (depending on the context) » Fig. 211.

A Display the details of the selected item (e.g. Address)
B Display the POI details / display the POI list
Start route guidance to the selected point
Paste the selected point as the next destination in the current route guidance
Start route guidance to the favourite
Start route guidance to the home address
Destination search in the vicinity of the selected point » page 171
C Define the starting point for demo mode (if it is turned on) » page 180

Show POIs in the map

▸ To switch on/off the display in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface → **POIs**.

▸ To select to display POIs in the main menu *Navigation* tap on the function surface Tap on→ **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** and select the desired categories (maximum of 10).

Options for map display

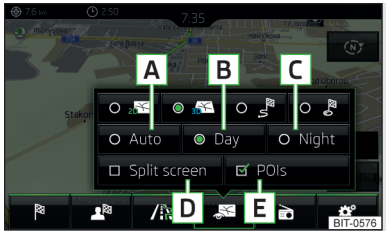


Fig. 212
Map options

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface .

The following function surfaces are displayed » Fig. 212.

2D - Two-dimensional map display
3D - Three-dimensional map display
Display of the route from the current vehicle location to the destination
Presentation of the destination or the next interim destination in the map (depending on the menu item setting) → **Advanced settings** → **Status line:**)
A Automatic map display in day or night mode (depending on the currently active vehicle lighting)
B Daytime map display
C Night-time map display

D Switching on / off of the split screen display » page 171
E Switching on/ off of the selected POI categories display » page 176, *Tap map point*

If the map scale of the 2D Map or 3D Map is greater than 10 km (5 miles), then the map is automatically displayed as 2D and aligned in the direction of north. If the scale is increased beyond this value, then the map is switched back to the original representation.

Map scale



Fig. 213
Function surfaces for the map scale change

It is possible to change the map scale manually or to turn on the automatic change of scale.

Symbols of the scale function surfaces
In the map area A » Fig. 213 the following context-dependent function surfaces and information is displayed.

- Current elevation
- Map view in reduced scale
- Size of the manually set map scale
- Size of the automatically set map scale
- Switch on/off the automatic change of scale

Manual change of scale
Map scale can be changed in the following ways.

- Turning the control knob ⊙ Turn.
- Touching the screen with two fingers and pulling them apart or closing them together.

Enabling automatic scaling
- In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → .

Tap on the function surface is highlighted in green.

The automatic scale is only active as long as the map is centred on the vehicle position (the function surface or. is hidden).

If the automatic scale is active, the map scale will change automatically depending on the type of roads travelled (motorway - smaller map scale / town larger map scale) and from the manoeuvre to be carried out.

Turn off the automatic change of scale
- In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → .

Tap on the function surface is highlighted in white.

The turning off occurs likewise when the map is moved or the map scale is changed manually.

Map view in reduced scale
- In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → or. → .

The map scale is reduced for a few seconds and then restored.

Change map orientation



Fig. 214
Change the map orientation

Changing map orientation is possible under the following conditions.

✓ The map is in the 2D display.
✓ The map is centred (the function surface / is hidden).
✓ The map scale is max. 10 km away.

With a larger map scale than 10 km, the map is automatically oriented towards north.

A change of map orientation is only possible in the 2D display when the map is centred on the vehicle position (the function surface or. is hidden » page 178, *Map alignment*).

With a larger map scale than 10 km, the map is automatically oriented towards north.

› to **Change the map orientation** From the main menu *navigation* the function surface [1] A » Fig. 214.

The map is oriented to the north
The symbol Ⓐ the vehicle position rotates, the map and the Polar Star Symbol [1] do not rotate.

Map oriented to the direction of travel
The map and the Polar Star Symbol [1] rotate, the symbol Ⓐ The vehicle position does not rotate.

Map alignment



Fig. 215
Map centring

The moved map can be centred/aligned to the vehicle, destination or route position.

On the map within the function surface A » Fig. 215, the following symbols are displayed, depending on the map display.

	Aligning to the vehicle position (in the 2D or 3D map display)
	Alignment to the destination position (in the destination position display)
	Centring and displaying the entire route (in the route display)

Options for map display in the split screen

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.



Fig. 216 **Map in the split screen / example of a function surface menu**

› The function surface in the split screen Map or. » Fig. 216 - A.

Depending on the context, some of the following function surfaces are displayed » Fig. 216 - B.

- Map display with the route from the current vehicle location to the destination
- Change the map orientation [1]
- 2D - Two-dimensional map display
- 3D - Three-dimensional map display
- Switch on/off the automatic change of scale

Road sign display

Infotainment offers the option of displaying the traffic signs stored in the navigation data or detected by the front camera during guidance on the Infotainment screen G » Fig. 203 *on page 170*.

› To **switch on/off** the road sign display in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Map** → **Show road signs**.

For some vehicles it is possible to set an **alert when exceeding the permitted** speed limited set by a **road sign**.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on the function surface → **Driver assistance** → **Speed warning:**.

[1] The letter inside the symbol is dependent on the chosen Infotainment language.

For **trailer towing**, We recommend that you activate recognition of road signs relevant to trailers.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Driver assistance** → **Show road signs relevant to trailers**.

Route guidance

Introduction to the subject

A **route** is created by starting route guidance to a destination. Additional **intermediate destinations** can be added to the route.

The route guidance takes place as follows

- Through graphical driving instructions on the Infotainment screen and in the display of the instrument cluster.
- With nav. announcements.

Infotainment tries to allow for continued guidance even if the navigation data is incomplete or there is no data at all for the given area.

The route is recalculated each time if you ignore driving recommendations or change the route.

CAUTION

The nav. announcements provided may vary from the actual situations, e.g. due to out-of-date navigation data.

Destination details

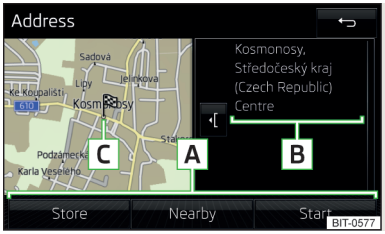


Fig. 217
Destination details

The following menu items and information are displayed in the destination details» Fig. 217.

A Area with function surfaces
B Detailed destination information
C Destination position in the map

Display the destination details

The destination details can be displayed in one of the following ways.

- While entering a destination.
- By tapping on the function surface > in the destination list.
- By pressing NAV From the main menu *Navigation* (The details of the last target indicated is shown, to where route guidance is carried out or was carried out).

Function surfaces

Using function surfaces in the field A the following functions can be performed, depending on the context.

- Start / stop route guidance.
- Searching for a nearby destination » page 171.
- Setting route options.
- Store destination.
- Edit destination (the object can be deleted, renamed or saved).
- Dial the POI phone number (if Infotainment is connected to a phone» page 152, *Pair and connect*).

Route calculation and start route guidance



Fig. 218
Alternative routes

Route calculation is done on the basis of the set route options. The route options can be set: ⚙ → **Route options**.

Alternative routes

With selection of alternative routes turned on, the following menu is displayed after the calculation of a new route » Fig. 218.

A | Calculate the most economical route with shortest travelling time and distance travelled – the route is highlighted green

B | Calculate the fastest route to the destination, even if a detour is necessary - the route is highlighted in red

C | Calculate the shortest route to the destination, even if a longer travelling time is required - the route is highlighted in orange

In the function surfaces of the alternative routes, information on the route length and the estimated travel time and the following symbols are displayed (applies to Infotainment Columbus).

- Use of a toll motorway
- Use of a train / ferry
- Using a toll tunnel
- Use of a toll road
- Using a vignette duty highway

It is possible to select an already calculated alternative route before the calculation of the remaining routes is completed.

Selecting the type of route will start route guidance.

If no route selection is made within 30 s after the calculation of all routes, the route guidance is automatically started according to the preferred route type.

Route calculation for the trailer

When driving with a trailer or any other accessory connected to the trailer socket, we recommend that you switch on the trailer recognition, if necessary to set the maximum speed for towing a trailer.

› For calculating the route for towing a trailer, tap the function surface in the main *navigation* menu → **Route options** → .

Demo mode

The Demo mode provides a travel simulation to the entered destination. The function offers the option to travel through the calculated route "virtually".

When the Demo mode is turned on, a menu for route guidance in the Demo mode or in normal operation is displayed before the start of route guidance.

› To **switch on/off** in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface Tap→ **Advanced settings** → **Demo mode**.

When the DemoMode is switched on, the route starting point can be defined.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface Tap→ **Advanced settings** → **Define demo mode starting point**.

› Define the starting point by entering the address or the current vehicle position.

› The demo mode starting point can also be set as long as the demo mode is turned on by tap the desired map location and the menu item **Start Demo Mode** is selected» page 176, *Tap map point*.

Graphical driving recommendations



Fig. 219 **Driving recommendations / travel recommendation detail**

The display of the graphical driving recommendations is in the extra window **Manoeuvre** as well as the display of the instrument cluster.

In the split screen **Manoeuvre** the following driving recommendations are shown » Fig. 219.

A | Street name / street number of the current vehicle position

B | Driving recommendations with street names / road numbers, with the route and the travel time to the manoeuvre location

C | Details of driving recommendation (is displayed near the manoeuvre)

D | Lane guidance

In the split screen **Manoeuvre**, Infotainment also announces TMC traffic obstructions and on motorways, car parks, petrol stations or restaurants.

Speed limits

With activated function → **Advanced settings** → **Note: National border crossed** display the country-specific speed limits when crossing international borders.

These speed limits can be displayed by tapping the function surface → **Top speeds** in the main *Navigation* menu is displayed.

Nav. announcements

Infotainment issues nav. announcements during route guidance.

The nav. announcements are generated by the instrument system. Flawless clarity of the message (e.g., road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

The last nav. announcement is repeated by pressing the control switch ⊙ Are repeated.

The timing of the nav. announcement is dependent on the type of road and on the driving speed.

The type of nav. announcements can be set: ⚙ → **Nav. announcements**.

Note

Guidance on the most frequently travelled route takes place without nav. announcements.

Most common routes

The most frequently travelled routes are automatically saved by Infotainment. Of these, up to 3 routes can be offered, which best match the current time, day of the week as well as the vehicle position.

A route guidance to one of the routes used most frequently can be started as long as **no route guidance** takes place.

› To display the menus with the most frequently travelled routes, in the split screen, tap on the function surface **Freq.** Tap**Routes**→ **show on map**.
› Select the desired route.

Then a selected route is calculated and the route guidance starts.

The menu display in the split screen can be turned on/off in the main menu *navigation* by tapping the function surface ⚙ → **Route options** → **Freq. Routes switched on/off**.

The stored most frequent routes can be deleted in the main menu *navigation* by tapping the function surface ⚙ → **Manage memory** → **Delete User Data** → **Most frequent routes** .

Note

Guidance on the most frequently travelled route takes place without nav. announcements.

Finish route guidance

The route guidance can be finished in one of the following ways.

› The final destination is reached.
› In the main menu *Navigation* by tapping the function surface 🏁 → **Stop route guidance**.
› By turning off the ignition for longer than 120 minutes.

Abort route guidance

If the ignition is switched off and on again, then the route guidance is continued depending on the stop time in one of the following ways.

▸ Within 15 min. - route guidance continues to take the calculated route into account.
▸ Between 15 min and 120 min - the screen displays the message **Continue route guidance?**, after you confirm the message, the route guidance continues using the calculated route.
▸ After 120 min - the route guidance is cancelled.

Route

Route details

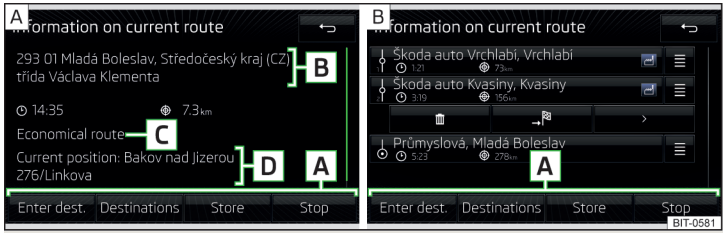


Fig. 220 **Route details: a route destination / several route destinations**

During route guidance, the **Route details** (Information about the current route) can be displayed.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface 🏁 Tap→ **Route details**.

A route destination
In the route details, the following information is displayed at the destination» Fig. 220 - A.

A Area with function surfaces
B Destination information
Estimated time of arrival at destination / remaining driving time to destination[1)]
Remaining distance to the destination
C Chosen route type (economic, fastest, shortest)
D Current vehicle position (address / GPS coordinates)

The display of the arrival time or the remaining driving time can be adjusted as follows.

▸ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Advanced settings** → **Time display:**.

Several route destinations
In the route plan, the following information is displayed at the respective destinations» Fig. 220 - B.

A Area with function surfaces
Stopover (with sequential number)
Final destination
Estimated time of arrival at destination / stopover
Driving distance to destination / stopover
Change destinations with each other
Delete the destination
Continuation of the route guidance from the selected target (previous waypoints are skipped)
> Display the destination details » page 179

Insert destination into the route
▸ In the area A **Enter destination** Tap the function surface and enter a new destination.
▸ **or**Tap on the area A the functional surface **destinations** and select a destination in the list of stored destinations.

Each additional destination is added to the list as the first subsequent destination route.

Change positions of destinations with each other
▸ The relevant function surface ☰ and move the destination to the desired position.

With destinations on the route already reached the note **Dest. reached** is displayed below the destination name. It is not possible to change the position of these destinations with each other.

Store route
▸ In the area A, tap the function surface **Save**.
▸ Save the edited route as a new route or replace the existing saved route.

The route is stored in the route list » page 183.

Stop route guidance
▸ In the area A, tap the function surface **stop** .

Route change in the map

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

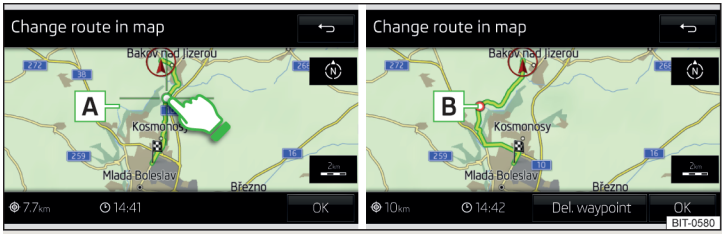


Fig. 221 **Route change in the map / route transit point**

A route in which no waypoints are contained, can be changed during route guidance by adding a transit point.

Add a transit point
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface Tap→ **Change route in map**.

[1)] If the time of arrival to the final destination or remaining travelling time greater than 24 hours, +d is displayed inside the symbol.

› Touch the screen in the route field and move the cross-point to the desired location on the map, e.g. A, move » Fig. 221).

The transit point B is added to the route » Fig. 221.

› Tap on the function surface **OK** .

Then a route is recalculated and the route guidance starts.

Customise transit point

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface Tap→ **Change route in map**.
› Touch the transit point B and move to a different location on the map.
› Tap on the function surface **OK** .

Then a route is recalculated and the route guidance starts.

Remove transit point

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Change route in map**.
› Tap on the function surface**Del. waypoint.**.
› Tap on the function surface **OK** .

Then a route is recalculated and the route guidance starts.

Route list

In the route list, it is possible to create routes, save, delete, or start navigation.

New route

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Routes** → **New route**.

Insert a route destination in one of the following ways.

› Tap on the function surface **enter destination** and enter a new destination.
› **or** tap on the function surface **destinations** and select a destination from the list of saved destinations.
› To save the created route, tap the function surface **Store**.
› Tap the function surface **Start**to start route guidance.

Managing saved routes

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Routes** .
› Choose the desired route, and then select one of the following functions.

Delete Clear saved route
Edit - Edit route » page 181, *Route details*
Start - Calculate route and start route guidance » page 179, *Route calculation and start route guidance*

Waypoint mode

Introduction to the subject

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

This mode is suitable for off-road navigation or for areas where maps are not available.

Infotainment allows the recording of waypoint tours driven using automatic of manually entered waypoints.

Then there is the possibility to start route guidance to the stored waypoint tour or to save the waypoint tour on the SD card.

Main menu



Fig. 222
Waypoint mode: Main menu

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Waypoint mode**.

The *Waypoint mode*menu is displayed » Fig. 222.

Any **ongoing route guidance** is terminated after the selection of this *waypoint mode* menu.

Description of the function surfaces A » Fig. 222

- Context-dependent:
  - **No route guidance is taking place** - Start recording a waypoint tour/ display saved waypoint tour management/ exit*Waypoint mode*
  - **A waypoint tour is being recorded** - Recording a waypoint tour / manually adjust waypoint / exit*Waypoint mode*menu
  - **Route guidance is taking place** Stop guidance / skip the next waypoint /exit*Waypoint mode* menu
- Setting the map display / show / hide the additional window / switch on / off the display of special destinations on the map
- Operation of **Radio/Media**playback
- Setting *Navigation* is not available in the*Waypoint mode* menu

Record waypoints



Fig. 223
Recording a waypoint tour

Start recording a waypoint tour

▸ In the *Waypoint mode* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Record waypoint tour**.

Select one of the following recording types.

- **Select on map** - Enter destination on the map and start recording waypoints
- **Start recording** - Start recording waypoints without entering a destination

Recording a waypoint tour

After starting the recording of a waypoint tour the following contextual information may be displayed » Fig. 223.

A Automatically set waypoints
B Manually set waypoints
C Split screen **Waypoint tour** with the number of already set waypoints / maximum number of waypoints

Add waypoint manually

▸ In the *Waypoint mode* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Add waypoint manually**.

Stop recording

▸ In the *Waypoint mode* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Stop recording**.

The recording also stops when the *waypoint mode* menu is exited.

The recorded waypoints are merged to a waypoint tour and stored in the waypoint memory after completion of the recording.

The recording cannot be continued once it has been stopped. A new recording must be started.

Guide along a saved waypoint tour

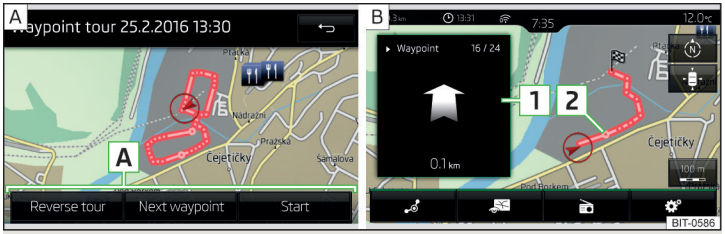


Fig. 224 **Display a waypoint / Guide along a waypoint tour**

Start guidance

› In the *Waypoint mode* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Waypoint memory**.
› select the desired waypoint tour » Fig. 225 *on page 185*.
› Tap on the function surface > .
› Select one of the following menus » Fig. 224 - A.

- **Reverse tour** - Reverse the order of waypoints (suitable for guiding along a waypoint tour in the reverse direction)
- **Next. Waypoint.** - Skip to the next waypoint
- **Start** - starts route guidance

Route guidance

During the guidance along a waypoint tour, no navigation announcements are made by Infotainment.

When driving along the waypoint tour shown, follow as closely as possible the information shown on the Infotainment screen.

While driving along a waypoint tour, the split screen shows the **Waypoint tour** and the direction to drive as well as the distance to the next waypoint, the sequence number of the next waypoint and the total number of waypoints 1 » Fig. 224 - B.

The waypoint tour from the vehicle position to the next waypoint "reduces" continuously while driving " " 2 » Fig. 224 .

If you drive past but very close to the next waypoint, the route guidance will continue with the subsequent waypoint.

If you drive past a waypoint and this does "not disappear" from the waypoint tour (e.g. because the distance to this waypoint is too large), then there is the possibility to "skip" over this waypoint and continue the guidance to the next waypoint.

▸ In the *Waypoint mode* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Skip waypoint**.

Stop route guidance

▸ In the *Waypoint mode* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Stop route guidance**.

The guidance also stops when the *waypoint mode* is exited.

Manage waypoint tour memory

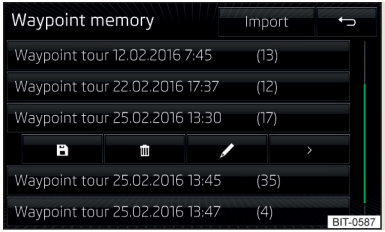


Fig. 225
Management of waypoint memory

› to **display a list of saved and imported waypoint tours,** from main menu *Waypoint mode*, tap the function surface → **Waypoint memory**.

The name of the waypoint tour, the date and time of storage and the number of waypoints appears in the function surface for the waypoint tour.

› Choose the desired waypoint tour, and then select one of the following menu items» Fig. 225.

- Store the waypoint tour on the SD card
- Delete the waypoint tour
- Rename the waypoint tour
- Display the waypoint tour » Fig. 224 *on page 184*

Import waypoint tour from the SD card

▸ In the *Waypoint mode* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Waypoint memory** → **Import**.

▸ Select the source of the waypoint tour recording and confirm the import.

Traffic reports

List of traffic reports



Fig. 226
List of traffic reports

Infotainment allows you to receive TMC traffic reports (Traffic Message Channel), which contain information regarding traffic obstructions.

› To **display the list of traffic incidents**press the button TRAFFIC.

In the list of traffic messages and the map, a max. of 6 messages are displayed, that have a letter and the traffic obstruction symbol (e.g. ⚠, ⚠, ⛔) » Fig. 226.

At present on the route traffic information is taken by using a nav. announcement.

If the symbol TMC in the list of traffic reports is crossed out, then Infotainment is outside the range of the traffic report provider.

Display options
- **Route guidance is disabled** - All traffic messages are displayed.
- **Route guidance is taking place** - After tapping the function surface B » Fig. 226 in the displayed menu all traffic messages can be selected by tapping the function surface **All** , **or** by tapping the functionaface **route**Only the traffic messages present on the route can be selected.

A traffic report may contain some of the following information.

- Symbol of the traffic obstruction
- Number of road affected
- Name of the location affected
- Description of the traffic obstruction

Distinguish the importance of a TMC message traffic obstruction using colour
The symbol for traffic obstruction (e.g. ⚠, ⚠, ⛔) precedes the obstruction and the length of the obstruction is shown in the map on the right along the route.

Depending on the context, the symbol for the obstruction is displayed in one of the following ways.

No route guidance is taking place
- **Red** - All traffic obstructions

Route guidance is not taking place
- **Gray** - The traffic obstruction is not on the route
- **Red** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route will not be recalculated and the route passes through the traffic obstruction
- **Orange** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route is recalculated and an alternative route is available

Update
The list of traffic reports will be updated by Infotainment on a continuous basis.

The list of traffic messages can be updated manually by pressing TRAFFIC.

Detail of the traffic report

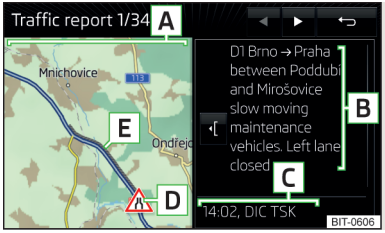


Fig. 227
Detail of the traffic report

› To **display** this, select the desired traffic report from the list of traffic reports.
› **Or** Tip on the traffic obstruction symbol in the map.

The display of the following information and the function surfaces » Fig. 227 follows.

A	Map of the affected location
B	Description of the traffic obstruction
C	Reception time as well as information regarding the traffic report provider
D	Symbol of the traffic obstruction
E	Length of the traffic obstruction

Dynamic route

Infotainment allows an evaluation of the traffic reports received during the route guidance. In fulfilling the following conditions, a bypass route is calculated, and the appropriate announcement is issued.

✓ The dynamic route function is turned on.
✓ The traffic congestion included in the traffic information is on the route.
✓ The traffic obstruction will be evaluated by Infotainment as of great importance.

› To **switch on/off**in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Route options** → **Dynamic route**.

Enter/remove route traffic obstruction manually

If a traffic obstruction is detected during route guidance (e.g. traffic jam), this traffic obstruction be manually entered into the route.

After entering, Infotainment calculates and provides an alternative route.

Enter traffic obstruction

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Congestion ahead.**

› Adjust the length of the traffic obstruction.

The traffic obstruction will be displayed in red in the map to the right along the route.

Remove traffic obstruction

The traffic obstruction is removed from the route after completion of the route guidance or can manually be removed as follows.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Cancel "congest. ahead"**.

Vehicle systems

CAR Vehicle settings

Introduction to the subject

In the menu CAR , travel data and information displayed on the vehicle and some vehicle systems can be set.

Reset to factory settings

The reset to factory settings can be carried out in the CAR → ⚙ → **Factory settings** menu.

Note

Settings relating to the vehicle systems can only be made when the ignition is switched on.

Main menu



Fig. 228
Function surfaces in the main menu

› Press the button CAR The main menu appears with the following function surfaces » Fig. 228.

Selecting the following menu points
- **Conv. consumers**
- **Driving data**
- **DriveGreen**
- **Veh. status**

Operating playback - Radio / Media

Depending on equipment fitted with manual air conditioning: setting the auxiliary heating and ventilation / Operation of heated windscreen

Vehicle system settings

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobiliser and steering lock ____ 188
Switch on/off ignition ____ 189
Starting / stopping the engine ____ 189
Problems with the engine start - vehicles with starter button ____ 190

Depending on equipment fitted, it is possible to switch the ignition on/off and start/stop the engine with the **key in the ignition** or using the **starter button**.

WARNING

- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- While driving with the engine stopped the ignition must always be switched on. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 193, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is a risk of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a risk of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – There is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid.
- On vehicles with the starter button, pay attention to where the key is located. The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobiliser and steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 188 first.

The electronic immobiliser (hereinafter referred to as immobiliser) makes the theft or unauthorised use of your vehicle more difficult.

Immobiliser
The immobiliser allows the engine to start provided an original vehicle key only is used.

Malfunction of the immobiliser
If a component in the immobiliser key fails, it is not possible to start the engine. A corresponding message appears in the display of the instrument cluster to explain the immobiliser is active.

To start, use the other vehicle key or seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock - locking
› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, remove the key and turn the steering wheel until the steering lock engages.
› On vehicles with a **starter button**, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door. If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked automatically after the vehicle has been locked.

Steering lock - unlock
› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, insert the key into the ignition and turn on the ignition. If this is not possible, then move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, as a result of which the steering lock should unlock.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, get into the vehicle and close the driver's door. Under certain circumstances, the steering lock can be unlocked only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - there is a risk of accident!

Switch on/off ignition

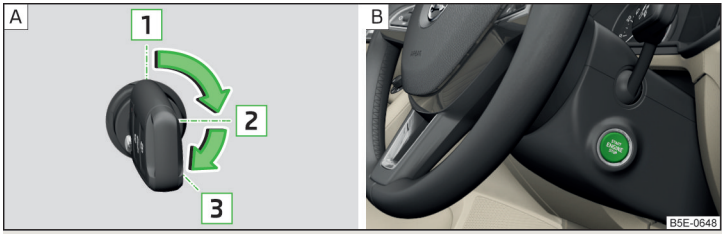


Fig. 229 **Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock / starter button**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 188 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 229 - A

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching on /off ignition in vehicles with starter button

› Press the » Fig. 229 - B button, the ignition is switched on / off.

On vehicles with **manual transmission** the pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the brake pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

Starting / stopping the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 188 first.

Before starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and » !depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.

Starting engine

› On vehicles with **Ignition lock**, turn the key to position 3 and the engine starts» Fig. 229 *on page 189* A. Then release the key, the engine will start automatically.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after 30 s.

› On vehicles with**starter button**, press the button briefly» Fig. 229 *on page 189* - B, the motor will start automatically.

For vehicles with **diesel engines**, the glow plug warning light goes on during starting. The engine starts after the warning light goes out.

Switching the engine off

› Stop the vehicle.
› On vehicles with**ignition lock**, turn the key to position 1 » Fig. 229 *on page 189*-A.
› On vehicles with**starter button**, press the button» Fig. 229 *on page 189* - B, The engine and the ignition will be switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey if the engine has been working at high revs over a prolonged period, but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Emergency shutdown of the engine in vehicles with starter button

The system is equipped with a protective device against accidental switching off, the engine can only be shut off while driving in the event of an emergency.

› Keep the knob pressed» Fig. 229 *on page 189* - Bor press it twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

! CAUTION

When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.

Note

- The engine running noises may be louder at first for a short time after starting the cold engine.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period, otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may (also intermittently) continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Problems with the engine start - vehicles with starter button



Fig. 230
Starting the engine - press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 188 first.

If no engine start is possible and the display of the instrument cluster shows a message that the key could not be detected by the system or there is a system fault, then try to start the engine as follows.

› Press the starter button with the key » Fig. 230.

If the engine does not start, the help of a specialist garage is required.

! CAUTION

The key may not be detected by the system if the battery in the key is running out of charge or the signal fails (strong electromagnetic field) or is shielded (e.g. in an aluminium case).

START-STOPsystem

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation ____ 190
manually activate/deactivate system ____ 191

The START STOP system (hereinafter referred to as the system) reduces CO_2 emissions and harmful emissions, and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops or is at a standstill (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

The system function depends on many factors. Some of them are down to the driver, the others are systemic and can neither be influenced nor identified.

Therefore the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The system is automatically activated **every** time the ignition is switched on (even where this has previously been manually deactivated with the button A OFF).

Note

If the engine has stopped due to the system, the ignition remains on.

Operation

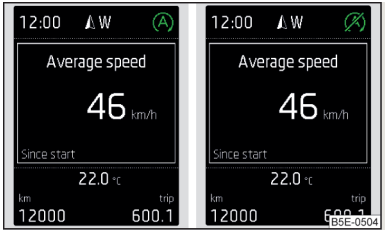


Fig. 231
Display

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine is automatically switched **off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt, the shift lever is moved into neutral and the clutch pedal is released.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine is automatically switched **off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt and the brake pedal is operated.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the brake pedal is released.

Conditions for the system function

The following conditions must be met for the system to function correctly.

✓ The driver's door is closed.

✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.

✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km.h after the last stop.

System status

The system status is shown in the display when the vehicle comes to a halt » Fig. 231.

Ⓐ The engine is automatically switched off; when the vehicle moves off, the ignition process will be automatically initiated.

Ⓐ The engine is not automatically switched off.

The engine does not shut down when the vehicle stops, if e.g. the following applies.

- The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.
- High air conditioning or heating output (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

If the engine has shut down automatically but the system detects that the engine is required to run (e.g. if the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly) then the system automatically starts up the engine.

More information about the current system status can be displayed in infotainment screen, in the CAR → → **Veh. status** menu.

If there is a **system fault**, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened after the engine has switched off automatically, the engine will have to be restarted manually.
- No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shut-down takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

manually activate/deactivate system



Fig. 232
Button for the START-STOP system

› To **deactivate/activate** the system, press the button » Fig. 232.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol in the button lights up.

If the system is turned off, it will be automatically reactivated after turning the ignition off and on.

Note

If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Brakes and Parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 192
Parking 193

The **wear and tear** on the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style. In difficult conditions (e.g. urban, sporty driving), the condition of the brakes should be checked between service intervals by a specialist garage.

Brake response can be slower if the brakes **are covered in moisture or, in winter, have a layer of ice or salt on them**. The brakes should be cleaned and dried by applying the brakes many times over » !.

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads can occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned by applying the brakes several times over » !.

Before negotiating a **long or steep gradient**, reduce speed and shift down a gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. If, nevertheless, there is a need for additional braking, it should be carried out at intervals.

Emergency braking warning - If it is necessary to brake hard, the system may cause the brake lights to automatically flash, to alert the traffic behind.

New brake pads must first be""run in"" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect. Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

If the **brake fluid level** is too low, it can cause **faults in the braking system**; the warning light will light up in the instrument cluster » page 33, *Braking system*. If the warning light does not light up, yet the stopping distance is perceived to be longer than before, the driving style should be adapted in view of the unknown cause of the problem, and braking kept to a minimum - seek the help of a specialist garage without delay.

The **brake booster** increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING

- Greater physical effort for braking is required when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- Do not depress the brake pedal, if there is no requirement to slow down. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear - There is a risk of an accident!
- Only brake for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.
- Recommendations for new brake pads should be followed.
- When stopping and parking, the parking brake should always be applied firmly, otherwise the vehicle could move off - There is a risk of an accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. Otherwise, the front brakes could be in danger of overheating – There is a risk of an accident!

Handbrake



Fig. 233
Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 192 first.

The handbrake secures the vehicle against unwanted movement when stopping and parking.

Apply

› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release

› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the lock button » Fig. 233 .
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light Ⓟ lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied. The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of over 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Disengage the handbrake completely. A handbrake which is only partially disengaged can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the handbrake» page 79.

Parking

Read and observe ! on page 192 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » !.

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **Manual transmission**, select **1st gear** or **Reverse gear R**.
› Release the brake pedal.

! WARNING

▪ The parts of the exhaust system can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle in places where the underside of your vehicle could come into contact with flammable materials (e.g. dry grass, leaves, spilled fuel or the like). - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!
▪ When leaving the vehicle never leave people unattended in the car who could, for example, lock the vehicle or release the brake - There is a risk of an accident and an injury!

Manual shifting of gears and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing ____ 193
Pedals ____ 194

! CAUTION

When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the clutch and the accelerator pedal – There is risk of damage to the clutch.

Manual gear changing

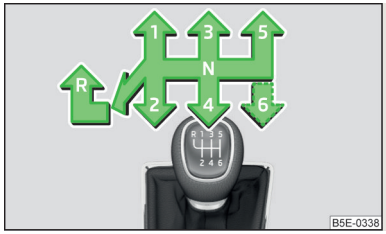


Fig. 234
The shift pattern

Read and observe ! on page 193 first.

On the gear lever, the shift pattern for the individual gear positions is shown » Fig. 234.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 42.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Reverse gear is engaged

› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
› Switch the gear lever to **N**.
› Push the shift lever downwards fully to the left and then forward into **R**» Fig. 234.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

! WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

Read and observe ! on page 193 first.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

Only a floor mat (ex-factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range) which can be secured to the attachment points should be used in the driver's footwell.

! WARNING

There should be no objects in the driver's footwell, otherwise the pedal operation can be impeded - risk of accident!

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Select selector lever position ____ 194
Selector lever lock ____ 195
Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic) ____ 195
Start and drive ____ 196

The automatic transmission performs an automatic gear change irrespective of the engine load, the operation of the accelerator, the vehicle speed and the selected driving mode.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

! WARNING

- Do not accelerate when selecting drive mode prior to moving off - There is a risk of an accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – There is a risk of an accident!

! WARNING (Continued)

- If the vehicle stalls with the engine running, in the **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic mode, then the vehicle must be prevented from rolling away by means of the brake pedal, parking brake or using the Auto Hold function. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever must always be set to **P** . Otherwise, the vehicle could be set in motion - risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- If you want to move the selector lever from position **N** to position **D** / **S** whilst driving, the engine must be running at idling speed.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Select selector lever position

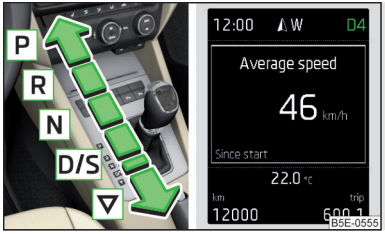


Fig. 235
Selector lever settings / display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

The selector lever can be moved through shifting to one of the following positions » Fig. 235. In some positions you have to push the locking button » page 195, *Selector lever lock*.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 235.

P **Park** - the position can be set only when the vehicle is at a standstill. The drive wheels are mechanically locked.

R **Reverse gear** - The position can only be selected when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is idling.

N **Neutral (idle position)** - Power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted.

D/S **Forward mode / sport programme** - the gear change takes place in the position **S at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**

▽ (Sprung position) - choice between positions **D** and **S**

If the Sport driving mode is selected with the engine running » page 221, *Select the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)* , the transmission is automatically set in the **S** mode.

E – Economical driving mode
If the driving mode Eco or Individual (engine - Eco) » page 221 is selected and the selection lever is in the setting **D/S**, the transmission is automatically set to mode **E**. This mode cannot be selected with the selector lever.

The forward mode is switched up or down automatically in mode**E at lower engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Selector lever lock



Fig. 236
Shift lock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light .

Disengage selector lever from P mode or N
› Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of 1 » Fig. 236.

To move the selector lever from mode **N** to **D / S** only the brake pedal is pressed.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

If it is not possible to release the gear selector from mode **P** in the usual manner, then this can be emergency unlocked » page 277.

Note
If you want to switch the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

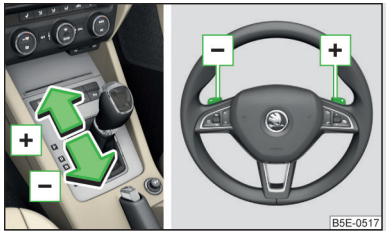


Fig. 237
Selector lever/multi-function steering wheel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel.

Switching to manual shifting using the selector lever
› Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle. The current gear is maintained.

Switching to manual shifting by using the rocker switches under the multifunction steering wheel
› To **change gear**, pull one of the rocker switches - / + briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 237.
› To **cancel** manual shift, pull the rocker switch + towards the steering wheel for more than 1 s.

If you do not pull one of the rocker switches - / + for more than 1 minute, manual shifting of the gears is deactivated automatically.

Changing gear

› To **shift up**, tap the selector lever forwards + or pull the rocker switch + briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 237.
› To **shift down**, tap the selector lever backwards - or pull the rocker switch - briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 237.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the » Fig. 235 *on page 194* display.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 42.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached. If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear on the brakes.

Start and drive

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

Moving off and stopping temporarily

› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Start the engine.
› Press the locking button and move the selector lever to the desired position » page 194.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time (e.g. at a crossroads). However, the brake pedal should be depressed, in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Accelerate to max. speed during the journey (kickdown function)
If the accelerator pedal is depressed while the vehicle is in forward drive mode, the kick-down function is turned on.

The gear change is adjusted accordingly to achieve maximum acceleration.

Accelerate to maximum speed when starting (launch control function)[1)]
The launch control function is available in mode **S** or Tiptronic.

› Disable the TCS » page 200, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
› START STOP deactivate » page 191, *manually activate/deactivate system*.
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
› Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
› Release the brake pedal - the vehicle is running at maximum acceleration.

Driving in neutral ("coasting")
When releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

Operating conditions
▸ The selector lever is in the **D/S** position.
▸ Driving mode Eco or Individual (Drive - Eco) is selected» page 221, *Select the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)*.
▸ The vehicle is travelling at more than 20 km/h.
▸ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

The gear is selected again automatically, when you depress the accelerator or brake pedal or pull the left rocker switch - towards the steering wheel » page 195, *Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)*.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration (e.g. on slippery roads) can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle – There is a risk of accident!

Running in and economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Run in engine 196
Tips on economical driving 197
DriveGreen function 197
Radiator shutters 198

Run in engine

During the first 1 500 km, the driving style is decisive for successful the running in process is.

[1)] This function is only valid for some engines.

During the first 1 000 km, the engine should not be charged with more than 3/4 of the maximum permitted engine revs and without the trailer.

From about **1 000 to 1 500 km** the engine can be pushed up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

Tips on economical driving

Fuel consumption depends on the driving style, road and weather conditions, and similar such factors.

For an economical driving style, the following instructions must be observed.
- Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Observe the recommended gear » page 42.
- Avoid full throttle and high speeds.
- Reduce idling.
- Avoid short distances.
- Ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure is maintained » page 261.
- Avoid unnecessary ballast.
- Remove the roof rack before driving if it is not needed.
- Only turn on electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating) for as long as necessary. In the Infotainment menu CAR → → **Conv. consumers** up to three consumers who currently have the largest share of fuel consumption, can be displayed.
- Briefly ventilate before turning on the cooling system, do not use the cooling system with the windows open.
- Do not leave windows open at high speeds.

DriveGreen function

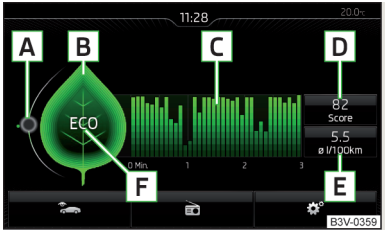


Fig. 238
Display in Infotainment screen

The DriveGreen function (hereinafter referred to as DriveGreen) evaluates the driving efficiency based on the information respecting the driving style.

Drive Green can be displayed on the Infotainment screen in the menu CAR → → **DriveGreen**.

A driving liquid display
With the driving is fluid, the display is located in the middle (near the green dot). When accelerating, the display moves down, and upwards when braking.

B "Green leaf"
The greener the leaf, the more economical the driving style. With less economical driving, the leaf is presented without any green colouring or it can be completely hidden.

C bar graph
The higher the green bars, the more economical the driving style. Each bar shows the driving efficiency in 5-second steps, the current bar is on the left.

D scoring (0 - 100)
The higher the indicated value, the more economical the driving style. When you tap the function surface D, a detailed assessment showing the driving efficiency during the last 30 minutes is displayed.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the assessment from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

E the average fuel consumption from the start
When you tap the E function surface, a detailed overview of the average fuel consumption during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the overview of the average fuel consumption from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

F symbols
The display may show the following four symbols, which give information on the current driving style.

ECO Economical driving style

The current speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption.

The journey does not take place in a fluid manner, this is to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking

3▸4 Recommended gear

Tips for economical driving
Tap on the B leave to display tips for economical driving.

Note

Resetting the single-trip memory "since start" also resets the average consumption E, the driving assessment D, and the diagram C.

Radiator shutters

The radiator shutters located in front of the radiator (hereinafter: shutter) help to reduce CO_2 emissions as well as harmful emissions and to save fuel.

If the system detects that it is possible to reduce the amount of air flowing to the radiator, it closes the blinds. As a result, the air resistance of the vehicle is reduced.

If, due to a **function impairment** of the shutters, a driving speed of 150 km/h is reached, an appropriate message is shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

After the display of the above message, the top speed of the vehicle is automatically limited to around 160 km/h.

If this message appears in the winter, the cause may be ice or snow caught up in the blinds. After the ice or snow has thawed, the blinds are functional again.

If the impairment not due to ice or snow, then assistance from a specialist should be sought.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving Tips 198
Driving through water 198

Driving Tips

Only drive on roads and terrain that correspond to the vehicle parameters» page 288, *Technical data*.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can cope with the conditions and the terrain.

WARNING

- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Too high a speed or an erroneous manoeuvre may cause serious injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
- Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These items can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. to parts of the fuel or brake system).

Driving through water

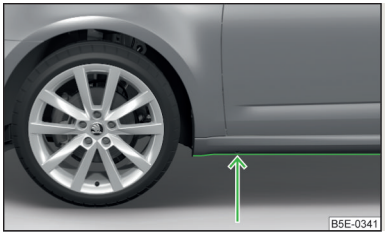


Fig. 239
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water. The water level must not go above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 239.
› Drive at no more than walking pace, otherwise a wave may form in front of the vehicle, which could cause the water to enter into the vehicle's systems (e.g. the air intake system for the engine).
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- If water gets into the vehicle's systems (e.g. the air intake system for the engine) it can cause serious damage to the vehicle!
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Assist systems

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Radar sensor 199

WARNING

- The assistance systems only serve to support and do not relieve the driver of the responsibility for driving the vehicle.
- The increased safety provision, as well as the increased occupant protection provided by the assistance systems must not tempt you to take risks - risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Only activate, deactivate or set the assistance systems so that you have the vehicle fully under control in every traffic situation - risk of accident!

Radar sensor



Fig. 240
Installation location of the radar sensor

Read and observe ! on page 199 first.

The radar sensor» Fig. 240 (hereinafter on referred to as sensor) uses electromagnetic waves to capture the traffic situation ahead of the vehicle.

The sensor is a component of the ACC » page 214 and Front Assist » page 219 systems.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.
- The sensor cover is soiled (e.g. with mud, snow etc.).
- The area in front of and around the sensor cover is obscured (e.g. by labels, auxiliary headlights etc.).
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is covered or dirty, the corresponding message appears in the instrument cluster display for the ACC system» page 218, *Malfunctions*or Front Assist system » page 221, *Malfunctions*.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the ACC system and Front Assist system» page 216» page 220. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- A collision or damage in the front or lower area of the vehicle could affect the sensor function - there is risk of accident! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the area in front of and around the sensor cover. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Stability Control (ESC) 200
ESC Sport 200
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 201
Engine drag torque control (MSR) 201
Traction control (TCS) 201
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS) 201
Active steering assist (DSR) 202
Brake Assist (HBA) 202
Hill Start Assist (HHC) 202
Multicollision brake (MCB) 202
Trailer stabilisation system (TSA) 202

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated.

The error display is in Chapter » page 32, *Warning lights*.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.

Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

ESC improves vehicle stability in critical driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle starts to skid) by the braking the individual wheels to maintain the direction.

If there is a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

ESC Sport

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

ESC Sport allows for a sportier driving style. With ESC Sport activated, no ESC intervention takes place when the vehicle slightly oversteers and understeers, and ASR is so limited that the drive wheels can be spun.

Activation

› Press and hold down the » Fig. 241 *on page 201* button.
› **or:** On Infotainment, press the button CAR → Press the function area → **ESC system:** → **ESC Sport**.

With**activation** the warning light **lights up** in the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Deactivation

› Press the » Fig. 241 *on page 201* button.
› **or:** On Infotainment, press the button CAR → Press the function area → **ESC system:** → **Activated**.

With **deactivation** the warning light **extinguishes** in the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

MSR counteracts the tendency of the drive wheels to lock during downshifts or sudden deceleration (e.g. on icy or an otherwise slippery road surface).

If the drive wheels should lock, then the engine speed is automatically increased. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Traction control (TCS)

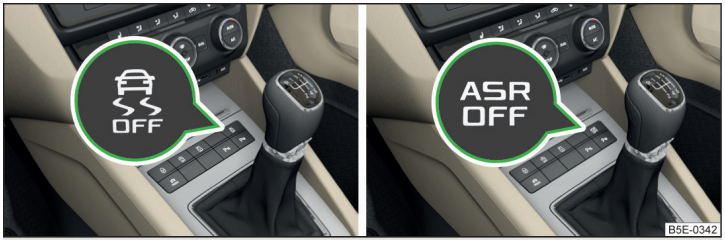


Fig. 241 **System button: Vehicle with ESC / vehicle without ESC**

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

The ASR prevents spinning of the drive wheels. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Deactivation

› Press the » Fig. 241 button.
› **or:**press the button » Fig. 241
› **or:** On Infotainment, press the button CAR → Press the function area → **ESC system:** → **ASR off**.

During**deactivation** the warning light**lights up** in the instrument cluster **and** an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Activation

› Press the » Fig. 241 button.
› **or:**press the button » Fig. 241
› **or:** On Infotainment, press the button CAR → Press the function area → **ESC system:** → **Activated**.

During**activation extinguished** the warning light is and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
▸ When driving with snow chains.
▸ When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
▸ When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

Note

On vehicles without the ESC system, the warning light **does not illuminate** upon deactivation of the TCS system, but a message is only displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes a spinning wheel if required and transfers the drive power force to the other drive wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

XDS is an extension to the electronic differential lock (EDL). XDS does not respond to the relieved inner curve wheel of the driven axle in the case of fast cornering.

By applying braking force to the relieved wheel, spinning is prevented by the XDS. This has a positive effect on the driving stability and steerability of the vehicle.

Active steering assist (DSR)

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

The DSR indicates to the driver in critical situations a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

The HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

When moving off on a gradient, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without the vehicle rolling downhill.

The vehicle is braked by the system for about 2 seconds after releasing the brake pedal.

The HHC is active on gradients upwards of 5 % if the driver door is closed. HHC is always active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

Multicollision brake (MCB)

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision by means of automatic braking interventions and to stabilise the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement.

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ A **head-on** or **side** collision occurred.
- ✓ The impact speed was greater than approx. 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Trailer stabilisation system (TSA)

Read and observe ! on page 200 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The speed is greater than 60 km/h.

Further information » page 230, *Towing device and trailer*.

OFF ROADmode

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation ____ 203
Hill Descent Assistant ____ 203
ESC OFF ROAD ____ 204
ASR OFF ROAD ____ 204
EDS OFF ROAD ____ 204
ABS OFF ROAD ____ 204

The OFF ROAD mode includes functions that help to overcome routes that are difficult to navigate when travelling on non-paved roads.

But even with OFF ROAD mode activated, your vehicle is never a true SUV.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.

CAUTION

- The OFF ROAD mode is not designed for the use on common roads.
- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by ŠKODA AUTO to ensure the OFF ROAD mode operates correctly.

Operation



Fig. 242 **Button for selecting the driving mode / function surface on the Infotainment screen**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

OFF ROAD mode intervenes at a speed up to 30 km / h.

We recommend that you activate the OFF ROAD mode for every trip on non-paved roads.

› To **activate**, press the MODE » Fig. 242 button.

In the Infotainment screen, a running mode menu » Fig. 242 appears.

› Press the **Offroad** function surface on the Infotainment screen. The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.
› to **deactivate** press the button MODE » Fig. 242 and in the infotainment screen, choose another mode than the **Offroad** mode.

The following functions are integrated in the OFF ROAD mode.

- Hill Descent Assistant » page 203
- ESC OFF ROAD » page 204
- TCS OFF ROAD » page 204
- EDL OFF ROAD » page 204
- ABS OFF ROAD » page 204

Note

If the engine "stalls" while driving and is started again within 30 seconds, then OFF ROAD mode will be automatically activated.

Hill Descent Assistant

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

The hill descent assistant (hereinafter referred to as assist system), with its automatic braking action on all wheels, ensures a constant speed is maintained on a steep slope when driving forwards and reversing.

During an intervention of the assistant, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The assistant is automatically engaged under the following conditions.

✓ The engine is running.
✓ For vehicles with **Manual transmission** the shift lever is in the neutral position and or the 1st, 2nd, 3rd gear, or reverse gear is engaged.
✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the R, N, D/S position or in the Tiptronic position.

✓ The downhill gradient is at least 10 % (when driving over sleepers, the limit can briefly drop to 8 %).
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is operated.

Driving speed
Initiate the downhill decent at a reasonable speed of approx. 2 - 30 km / h the assist maintains this speed when driving downhill constant.

If a forwards or reverse gear is engaged for vehicles with **Manual transmission**, the speed must be high enough to avoid "stalling the engine".

The driving speed can be changed by the brake or accelerator pedal. This is true even if the shift lever is in the neutral position and the selector lever in the N position. The engagement of the assistant is resumed after the pedal is released.

WARNING
For the correct operation of the assistant the road surface must be sufficiently adherent. The assistant cannot properly fulfil its function on slushy soil due to physical reasons (e.g. ice or mud). - there is a risk of an accident!

Note
When the wizard brakes the vehicle automatically, then the brake light does not come on.

ESC OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

The ESC OFF ROAD makes driving on a dirt roads easier, as no ESC interventions occur when the vehicle is slightly over or under steered.

ASR OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

The TCS OFF ROAD makes starting and driving on an unpaved surface easier as it partially allows wheel-spin.

Note
When disabled, the TCS » page 201 OFF ROAD mode works without the support of the TCS OFF ROAD.

EDS OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

The EDS OFF ROAD supports the driver when driving on a surface with different grip under the drive wheels or when driving over bumps.

A spinning wheel or wheels are braked earlier and with more force than with the intervention of the standard EDS system.

ABS OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 203 first.

The ABS OFF ROAD supports the driver when braking on an unpaved surface (e.g. gravel, snow etc.).

The system generated by a controlled locking of the wheels braked wheel before a "wedge" of piled material, which shortens the braking distance.

Maximum system efficiency is achieved when the front wheels are in the straight ahead position.

Parking aid (Park Pilot)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Settings in Infotainment 205
Operation 205
Display Infotainment screen 206
Activation / deactivation 206
Automatic system activation when moving forward 207

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to as system) uses acoustic signals on the Infotainment screen when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.

WARNING (Continued)

- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. There is a danger that such objects or people may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. There is a danger that obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, you should satisfy yourself that there are no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 243 *on page 205* clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- In adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the functioning of the system may be impaired - "incorrect recognition of obstacles".
- Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe and on page 204 first.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on the function surface → **Parking and manoeuvring.**

- *ParkPilot* - Settings for the parking aid
  - **Activate automatically** - Activate/deactivate the compact parking aid display (when driving forward)
  - **Front volume** - Adjust the volume of the beeps for obstacle detection in front
  - **Front tone setting** - Setting the pitch of the beeps for obstacle detection in front
  - **Rear volume** - Set the volume level of the beeps for the rear obstacle detection
  - **Rear tone setting** - Setting the pitch of the beeps for the rear obstacle detection
  - **Entertainment fading / Entert. Fading** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid
  - **Manoeuvre braking** - Activation / deactivation of the automatic emergency braking

Operation

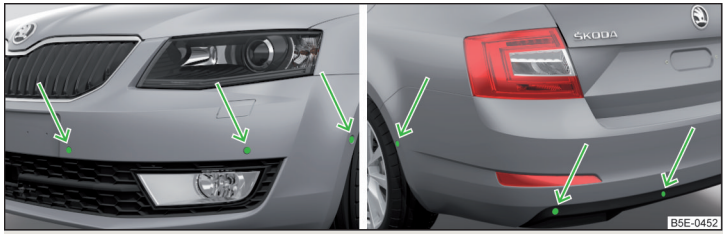


Fig. 243 **Installation location of the sensors on the left side of the vehicle: front/rear**

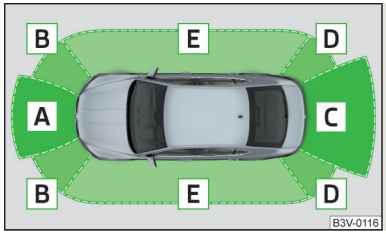


Fig. 244
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe and on page 204 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment,, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 243.

Depending on the equipment, the following system variants are possible » Fig. 244.

- Variant 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
- Variant 2: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D.
- Variant 3: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D, E.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 244	Variant 1 (4 sensors)	Variant 2 (8 sensors)	Variant 3 (12 sensors)
A	-	120	120
B	-	60	90
C	160	160	160
D	60	60	90
E	-	-	90

Audible signals
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of approx. 30 cm a continuous tone starts to sound - danger area. **From this moment do not continue to move towards the obstacle!**

The acoustic signals can be set in Infotainment» page 205.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket only the areas A and B» Fig. 244 are active in the system.

Note

- If with **Version 3** vehicles not all fields around the vehicle silhouette are active after activation, the vehicle should be moved forwards or backwards.
- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.

Display Infotainment screen

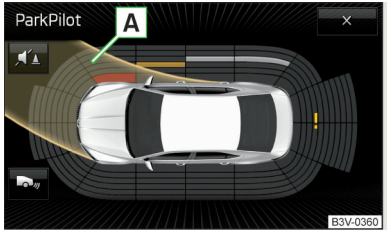


Fig. 245
Screen display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 204 first.

Function surfaces and warnings » Fig. 245

A — Road display.

× / ⮌ — Depending on the Infotainment type: Switching off park assistant display.

/ — Switching audible parking signals on/off.

— Change to rear-view camera display .

— There is an obstacle in the collision area (the distance to the obstacle is less than 30 cm). Stop moving in the direction of the obstacle!

— There is an obstacle in the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).

— An obstacle is located outside of the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).

! — System failure (there is no indication of obstacles).

Road display
The road display A » Fig. 245indicates the road on which the vehicle would take the current steering wheel and shift / selector lever position.

The shift lever is in the neutral position and the gear selector is in mode **N**. the road display is at the front.

Activation / deactivation



Fig. 246
System key (option 2, 3)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 204 first.

Activation
The activation of the system is initiated when the reverse gear is engaged, and with vehicles with the **variant 2 and 3** , also by pressing the P » Fig. 246 button.

When activating, an alarm sounds and the symbol illuminates in the button.

Deactivation
On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with**version 2 and 3**, the system is automatically deactivated by pressing the button or at a speed above 15 km/h (the symbol in the button goes out).

Fault display
If a warning signal sounds for 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The system can only be activated with the button at a speed of below 15 km/h.

Automatic system activation when moving forward

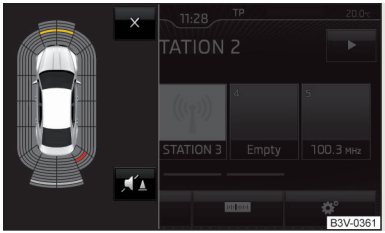


Fig. 247
Infotainment screen: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe and on page 204 first.

The automatic system activation occurs when moving forward at a speed below 10 km/h when the vehicle approaches an obstacle.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment screen» Fig. 247.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

The automatic display can be activated / deactivated in Infotainment» page 205.

Reversing camera

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 208
Guidelines and function surfaces 208

The rear view camera (following as system) helps the driver when parking and manoeuvring by displaying the area behind the vehicle on the Infotainment screen (hereinafter only known as screen).

WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, in section *Introduction*.
- The camera may not be soiled or obscured, otherwise the system function will be significantly affected - there is a risk of an accident. For information on cleaning » page 245.

CAUTION
- The camera image is distorted by contrast with eyesight. For this reason, the screen display is only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin columns, chain link fences or lattice, may not be represented adequately in terms of screen resolution.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

Note
The camera is equipped with a cleaning system » page 73. The spraying is carried out automatically when the rear window is sprayed.

Operation

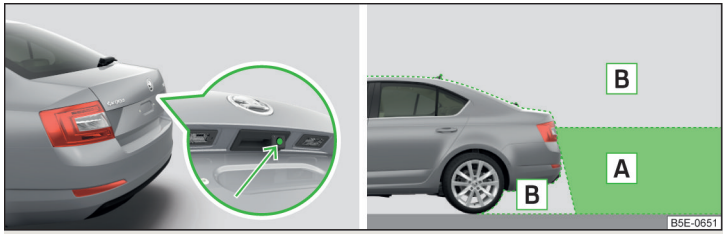


Fig. 248 **Installation location of the camera / scanned area behind the vehicle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 207 first.

The camera for capturing the area behind the vehicle is in the grip of the boot lid » Fig. 248.

Area behind the vehicle » Fig. 248

A Detection range of the camera
B Area outside the detection range of the camera

The system can assist the driver when parking and manoeuvring under the following basic conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.[1)]
✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 15 km/h.
✓ The area behind the vehicle is clearly visible.
✓ The selected parking / manoeuvring area is clear and even.

Note

▪ The screen display can be interrupted by pressing the symbol button P » Fig. 246 *on page 206*.
▪ After disengaging the reverse gear, automatic screen display of the parking aid is carried out (variant 2, 3) » page 205.

[1)] The area behind the vehicle can be displayed for a few seconds more after disengaging the reverse gear.

Guidelines and function surfaces

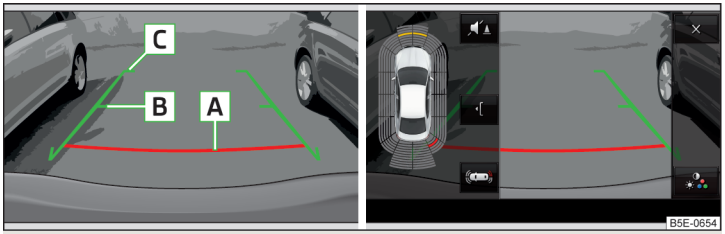


Fig. 249 **Infotainment screen: Orientation lines / function interfaces**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 207 first.

Orientation lines are shown along with the monitored area behind the vehicle on the screen.

Distance of the orientation lines behind the vehicle » Fig. 249

A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
B The distance is about 100 cm.
C The distance is about 200 cm.

The distance may vary slightly depending on the load of the vehicle and the road inclination.

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces » Fig. 249

✖ / ⮌ Depending on the Infotainment model: Turns the display of the area behind the vehicle off
Screen settings - brightness, contrast, colour
/ Switching audible parking signals on/off
/ Enabling and reduced park assistance display
Change to park assistance display

CAUTION

The objects shown on the screen can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.

- Protruding objects, such as the rear of a truck and the like.
- When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
- When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Park Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 209
Search for parking space 210
Parking 211
Leaving a parallel parking space 211
Automatic brake assist 212
Malfunctions 212

Park Assist (hereinafter referred to as system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places or also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements **only** when parking or leaving a parking space. The driver operates the brake, accelerator or clutch pedal and the shift / selector lever.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

The Park Assist is an extension of the parking aid » page 204 and operates on the basis of data collected by the ultrasonic sensors.

For this reason, the chapter on the parking aid is to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, in section *Introduction*.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- During a parking manoeuvre on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road. Therefore, do not use the system in such situations.

CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.

- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by ŠKODA AUTO.
- Abstain from using the system when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.
- If wheels other than those approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If other vehicles are parked behind or on the curb, the system can drive your vehicle over the kerb or up to the kerb - there is a risk of damage to the wheels. If necessary, intervene in good time.

Note

- We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed to about 5 km/h.
- The parking procedure can be stopped at any time by pressing the P button » Fig. 250 *on page 210* or by a steering intervention.

Operation

Read and observe and on page 209 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- While the parking space search is going on, a measurement and evaluation of the parking space size is completed.
- Suitable parking spaces are shown in the display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only in the display).

▸ The display shows instructions and information before the start and during the parking.
▸ Based on the calculated road surface, the front wheels will be automatically rotated during the parking.

Conditions for the system function
The system can look for a parking space only if the following basic conditions are met.
✓ The system is activated.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 40 km/h.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 20 km/h.
✓ The distance to a number of parked vehicles is approximately 0.5-1.5 m.
✓ TCS is activated » page 201.

The system can only carry out the parking procedure if the following basic conditions are met.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 7 km/h.
✓ The parking procedure takes less than 6 minutes.
✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
✓ TCS is activated » page 201.
✓ The TCS does not engage.
✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Activation/deactivation
The system can be activated/deactivated by pressing the button » Fig. 250 *on page 210* A.

When the system is activated, the symbol illuminates.

Search for parking space

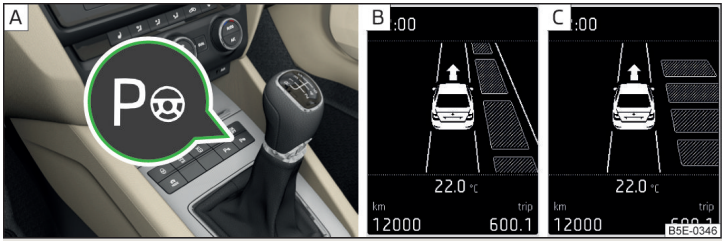


Fig. 250 **System button / display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 209 first.

The system searches for a parking space in a number of parallel and transverse parked vehicles on the passenger or driver's side.

Search for a parking space parallel to the roadway
› Slowly drive past a row of parallel parked vehicles.
› Press the button **once** to » Fig. 250 -A.

The display shows the following B.

Search for a parking space traverse to the roadway
› Slowly drive past a row of traverse parked vehicles.
› Press the button **twice** » Fig. 250 A.

The display shows the following C.

Change sides for the parking
The system will automatically search for a parking space on the passenger side.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to look for a parking space on this side of the road. The display changes and the system searches for a parking space on the driver's side.

Note
If the symbol (km / h) is shown in the display while you are looking for a parking space, the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km/h (parallel parking) or below 20 km/h (transverse parking).

Parking

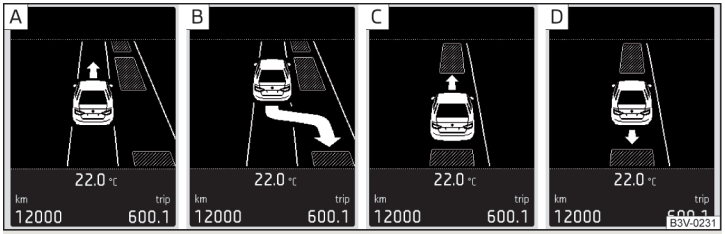


Fig. 251 **Display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 209 first.

The system supports the driver when reverse parking in the parking space found in a number of traverse and parallel parked vehicles.

Display » Fig. 251

A Parking space recognised with the information to drive on
B Parking space recognised with the information to reverse
C Note to drive into the parking space
D Note to reverse to the parking space

Parking manoeuvre

The parking space found is shown in the display » Fig. 251 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until B appears in the display.
› Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue moving forward until the parking procedure starts.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Check area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

› If the arrow in the information display is flashing to the front C, engage 1. gear or move the selector lever into the position **D/S**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully drive forwards.
› If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display - D, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

Leaving a parallel parking space

Read and observe ! and ! on page 209 first.

The system supports the driver when leaving a parking space of a parallel parking space.

Leaving a parking space process

› Press the » Fig. 250 *on page 210* button.

The following message is displayed: **Park Assist: Set indicators and engage reverse gear!**

› Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the system to leave the parking space. A corresponding message is shown in the information cluster display.

Automatic brake assist

Read and observe ! and ! on page 209 first.

Automatic brake assist when speeding
If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic emergency braking
If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

! CAUTION
The automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system when the parking process stops due to the speed of 7 km/h being exceeded!

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 209 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

System unavailable
If the system is not available because the vehicle has a fault, a message appears concerning the unavailability. Seek help from a specialist garage.

System fault
In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 212
Operation description 213

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal. The state where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

! WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Operation

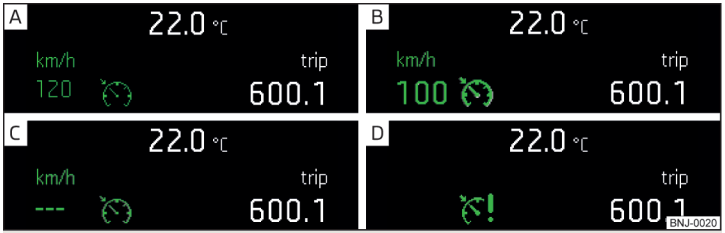


Fig. 252 **MAXI DOT display (monochrome): Examples of status displays the CCS**



Fig. 253 **Segment display: Examples of status displays the CCS**

Read and observe ! on page 212 first.

CCS status displays » Fig. 252, » Fig. 253

- A Speed is set, control is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
- B Control active (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
- C No speed set.
- D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ The CCS is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with **manual transmission**, second gear or higher is engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The current speed is higher than 20 km/h.

This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

! WARNING

If the engine output or engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, the driver must assume control of the accelerator and brake pedals!

Operation description

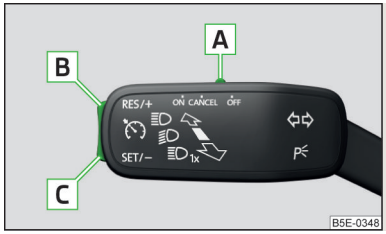


Fig. 254
Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 212 first.

Overview of the CCS controls » Fig. 254

A	**ON**	Activate CCS (control deactivated)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	OFF	Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	**SET/–**	Launch control / reduce speed

[a] If no speed is set, the current speed is used.

Once the controls are activated, the CCS maintains the vehicle at the set speed; the indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Controls are automatically interrupted if any of the following occur.

- ▸ The brake pedal is operated.
- ▸ When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
- ▸ Through an airbag deployment.

! WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent unintentional switching on of the system.
- Control may only be resumed if the set speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

i Note

During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Settings in Infotainment 214
Operation 215
Automatic stopping and starting 215
Operation overview 216
Start control 216
Stop/resume control 216
Set/change desired speed 217
Set the clearance level 217
Special driving conditions 217
Overtaking and towing 218
Malfunctions 218

The automatic distance control (hereinafter referred to as ACC) maintains the set speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead without the accelerator or brake pedal being pressed.

The front of the vehicle and the distance to the vehicle ahead is monitored by a radar sensor » page 199.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The driver must always be ready to take over the operation of the accelerator and brake pedal.
- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.
- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's foot brake.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.

- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
- Driving into "sharp" corners or in steep gradients / on steep inclines.
- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railroad tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like.).

Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.
- The control automatically cancels the engagement of the brake supportive assistance systems (e.g. ESC) or when the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Driver assistance**.

- *ACC (adaptive cruise control)* - Setting for the adaptive cruise control
  - **Driving progr.:** - Set the vehicle acceleration when adaptive cruise control is activated[1)]
  - **Last distance selected** - Switch on/off of the last distance selected
  - **Distance:** - Set the distance monitoring to the vehicles ahead

[1)] This can be set as follows on vehicles with a travel mode option » page 221.

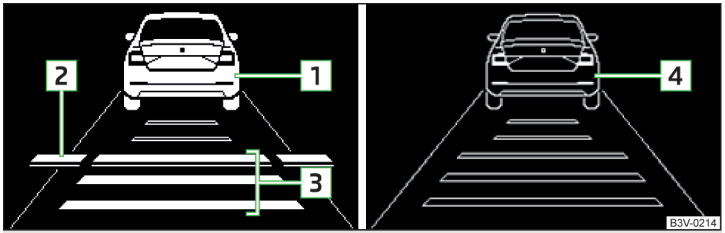


Fig. 255 **Display in the instrument cluster: Examples of ACC displays**

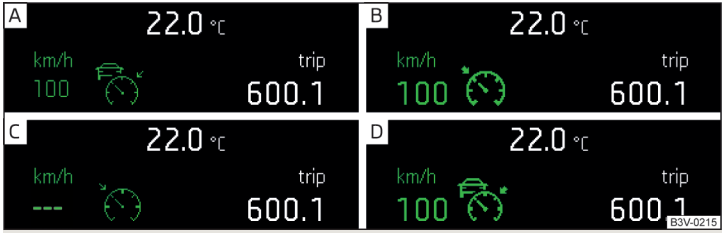


Fig. 256 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

The ACC allows a speed of 30 - 160 km/h to be set or a distance to the preceding vehicle to be very short of very long to be set.

The ACC adjusts the set speed with respect to the detected vehicle ahead, thus maintaining the selected proximity.

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx. 120 m ahead using the radar sensor.

ACC displays » Fig. 255

1 Vehicle detected (control active)

2 Line showing the displacement of the distance when setting » page 217, *Set the clearance level*

3 Set distance to the vehicle ahead

4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated)

ACC status displays » Fig. 256

A Regulation is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).

B Regulation active - no vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).

C Control deactivated - no speed stored.

D Regulation active - vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).

Note to reduce speed

If the delay of the ACC is insufficient in relation to the vehicle in front, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the display shows a message to engage the brake pedal.

Note

Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

Automatic stopping and starting

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a standstill and start moving again using the ACC.

Decelerate to a standstill

If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a standstill.

Starting to drive again after a holding period

As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be regulated. Control is automatically disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

Operation overview

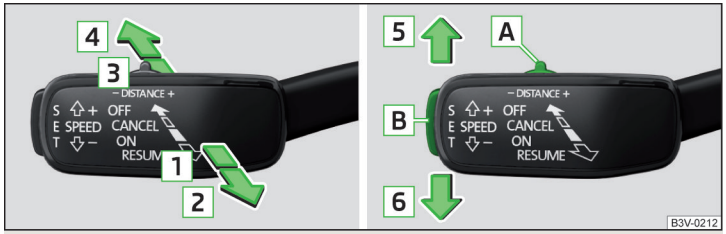


Fig. 257 **Operating lever**

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever » Fig. 257

1	**ON**	Activate ACC (control deactivated)
2	**RESUME**	Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
3	**CANCEL**	Interrupt control (sprung position)
4	**OFF**	Deactivate ACC
5	**SPEED +**	Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
6	**SPEED –**	Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time
A	**– DISTANCE +**	Set proximity level
B	**SET**	Start control / reduce speed in increments of 1 km/h

If the lever is set from the position **OFF** directly into the sprung position **RESUME** the current speed is stored and the control process is started.

Start control

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ On vehicles with **manual transmission**, the second gear or a higher gear is selected and the current speed is greater than 25 km/h.

✓ On vehicles with **automatic transmission** the selector lever is in the position **D / S** or in the Tiptronic position and the current speed is higher than 2 km / h.

Start control

› Press **SET** » Fig. 257 *on page 216* .

› **or** set the lever into the sprung position **RESUME** » Fig. 257 *on page 216* .

The ACC takes the current driving speed and performs the control, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

If the control is started by moving the lever to the position **RESUME** and should the speed be stored already, the ACC adopts this speed and carries out the control.

Note

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Stop/resume control

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

Stop control

› Set the lever into the sprung position **CANCEL** » Fig. 257 *on page 216* .

› **or:** apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

Resume control

› Start control » page 216, *Start control*.

Note

Control is also stopped when the clutch pedal is held down for longer than 30 s or the TCS is deactivated.

Set/change desired speed

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever » Fig. 257 *on page 216*.

Setting/changing the speed by increments of 10 km/h at a time (SPEED) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

Increasing/reducing the speed by increments of 1 km/h at a time (RESUME/SET- requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ Vehicle control takes place.

Changing the speed by adopting the current speed (SET) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » page 216.
- If the vehicle is controlled by a lower speed than the stored speed, then **SET** the current speed is stored by pressing the button again **SET** and the speed is reduced in increments of 1 km/h.

Set the clearance level

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

The proximity to the vehicle ahead can be set with the lever» Fig. 257 *on page 216* or in Infotainment » page 214, *Settings in Infotainment*.

Setting by means of the lever

› Set the switch **DISTANCE** Set in the spring-tensioned position **–** or **+** » Fig. 257 *on page 216*.

The display of the instrument cluster shows line **2** » Fig. 255 *on page 215*, which indicates the proximity.

› Using the switch **DISTANCE** on the lever, adjust the line **2** to the desired distance.

Note

- If the proximity is changed in infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.
- The higher the speed, the greater the proximity to the vehicle ahead.

Special driving conditions

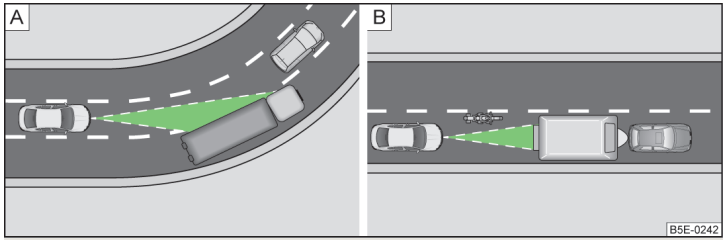


Fig. 258 **Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side**

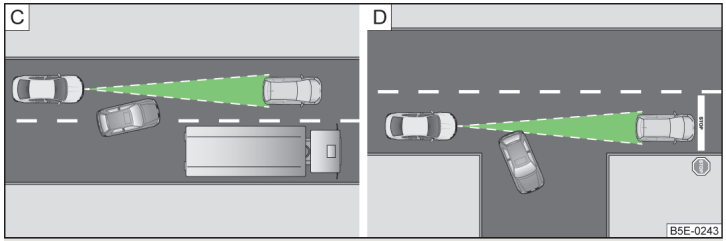


Fig. 259 **Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles**

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

The following (and similar) situations require special attention and possibly the intervention of the driver (braking, accelerating etc.).

When cornering
When driving into or driving out of long corners, it could be that a vehicle is travelling in the adjacent lane and is scanned by the radar» Fig. 258 - A. The host vehicle is then controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side
A narrow or offset vehicle driving can only be recognized by the ACC if this is located in the scanning range of the radar» Fig. 258 - B.

Other vehicles changing lanes
Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small distance» Fig. 259 - C may not be detected by ACC in good time.

Stationary vehicles
The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle,» Fig. 259 - D the ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special body parts
Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Overtaking and towing

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

When overtaking
When your vehicle is being controlled at a speed that is lower than the set speed and the turn signal is operated, ACC assesses this situation as meaning that the driver wishes to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle changes to the overtaking lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

Acceleration can be cancelled at any time by touch on the brake pedal or pressing the button CANCEL on the lever » Fig. 257 *on page 216*.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or if another accessory is connected to the trailer socket, ACC control is set with a lower rate. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! on page 214 first.

If, for some unknown reason, ACC is not available, the warning light ! appears in the display of the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is shown.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor is dirty or covered, a message indicating that there is no sensor view appears. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacles» Fig. 240 *on page 199*.

ACC not available
If the ACC is currently unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If ACC continues to be unavailable, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

ACC fault
With an ACC fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Settings in Infotainment 219
Operation 219
Distance warning 219
Warning and automatic braking 220
Deactivation/activation 220
Malfunctions 221

The Front Assist (hereinafter referred to as system) warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle, and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes where necessary.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor » page 199.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The system does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

CAUTION

In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Driver assistance**.

- *Front Assist (ambient traffic monitor. sys.)* - Set the assistant for distance monitoring to the vehicles ahead
  - **Active** - Activate/deactivate the assistant
  - **Advance warning** (Version 1) - Activate/deactivate advance warning
  - **Advance warning** (Version 2) - Activating/deactivating and setting the distance level at which a warning occurs
  - **Display distance warning** - Activate/deactivate distance warnings

Operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- Warns you of an impending collision.
- Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
- If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, automatic braking is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

✓ The system is activated.
✓ TCS is activated » page 201.
✓ The vehicle is travelling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

Note

The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in "sharp "curves or with an ESC engagement » page 200.

Distance warning

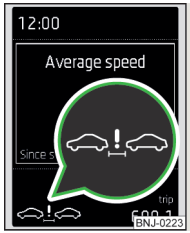


Fig. 260
Display in the instrument cluster: Proximity warning

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

If a safe distance from the vehicle ahead is fallen short of, the warning light appears in the display » Fig. 260.

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking



Fig. 261
Display in the instrument cluster: Warning or emergency braking at low speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

Emergency braking at low speed
If there is a risk of a collision in a vehicle speed range of about 5 km/h to 30 km/h, the system triggers an automatic braking.

With automatic braking, the warning light appears in the display » Fig. 261.

Advance warning
If the system detects a risk of collision, the warning light appears on the display » Fig. 261 and an audible signal is emitted.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.
- If there is a risk of collision with a moving obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 210 km/h.
- If there is a risk of collision with a stationary obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 85 km/h.

When the advance warning is issued, the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle avoided!

Acute alert
If the driver does not react to the advance warning when in danger of a collision with a moving obstacle, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking
If the driver does not respond to acute warning, the system begins to automatically brake the vehicle.

If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.

The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by means of a steering intervention.

Brake Support
If the driver does not brake sufficiently in the event of an impending collision, the system automatically increases the braking force.

The brake support only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Deactivation/activation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » !.

The system can be activated or deactivated in one of two ways.
- In the instrument cluster display » page 47, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.
- In infotainment » page 219, *Settings in Infotainment*.

The following functions can be activated or deactivated separately in infotainment.
- Distance warning
- Advance warning

If the distance-warning function was deactivated before switching off the ignition, it remains deactivated after switching on the ignition.

! WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.
- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- If an unfounded warning was issued or a system action carried out.
- When on a truck, car ferry or similar.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 219 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor is dirty or covered, a message indicating that there is no sensor view appears. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacles» Fig. 240 *on page 199*.

System unavailable
If the system is currently unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the system still is not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Select the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC) 221
Mode **Eco** 221
Mode **Comfort** 222
Mode **normal** 222
Mode **Sports** 222
mode **individual** 222
Mode **Offroad** 222
Mode selection and infotainment display 223
Individual mode **settings** 223

By selecting the driving mode, the driving behaviour can be adapted to the desired mode of operation.

The following modes **Eco**. **Comfort**. **Normal**. **Sports**. **Individual** and **Offroad** are available.

The**Comfort** is only on vehicles with adaptive chassis control (DCC) and the mode **Offroad** available only on vehicles Octavia Scout.

! WARNING
The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.

Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC)

Read and observe ! on page 221 first.

The adaptive chassis control (following known as DCC) provides the ability to adjust the shock characteristics for the sporty, normal or comfortable driving when the corresponding control mode is selected.

The DCC evaluates steering response and road conditions while driving continuously and adjusts the suspension behaviour within the selected driving mode accordingly.

Mode Eco

Read and observe ! on page 221 first.

This mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Drive
Vehicle acceleration is more relaxed than in **Normal** mode.

The recommended gear is controlled such to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption » page 42.

If the START-STOP system is deactivated manually» page 191, this will be automatically activated.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **E** » page 195.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
Acceleration occurs more relaxed than in **Normal** » page 214mode with distance control.

Xenon headlight
The system is in economic mode » page 66. The headlamps are in basic setting and do not adapt to the direction of travel.

Air conditioning (Climatronic)
The air conditioning is controlled so as to save energy. For this reason, for example, it may take longer to reach the desired interior temperature in mode **Normal**.

Note
- If a trailer or other accessory is to be connected to the trailer socket, driving mode **Eco** is not available.
- The maximum vehicle acceleration (kick down function) is possible also in driving mode **Eco**.

Mode Comfort

Read and observe ! on page 221 first.

This mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

Mode normal

Read and observe ! on page 221 first.

This mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

Mode Sports

Read and observe ! on page 221 first.

This mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

DCC
The DCC adjusts the chassis for the sporty driving style.

Steering
The power steering is reduced slightly, i.e., the driver needs to exert more force for steering .

Drive
The vehicle acceleration is more dynamic than in **Normal** mode.

Front axle differential lock
The driving force distribution between the front wheels is adapted to the sporty driving style.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
The acceleration is quicker than in **Normal** mode with distance control » page 214.

Xenon headlight
The headlamps adapt to the driving style more dynamically than in mode **Normal** » page 66.

ProActive passenger protection
The first level of protection is deactivated » page 223.

Engine noise
The engine noise is noticeable in the interior more intensely than in **Normal** mode.

mode individual

Read and observe ! on page 221 first.

In the mode **Individual** each system can be set independently » page 223, *Individual mode* **settings**.

Mode Offroad

Read and observe ! on page 221 first.

The mode **Offroad** is suitable for driving outside paved roads.

Further information » page 203, *OFF ROADmode*.

Note
The mode **Offroad** is deactivated after switching off and switching on the ignition and the mode **Normal** is set automatically.

Mode selection and infotainment display



Fig. 262 **Button for selecting the driving mode: Version 1 / version 2**

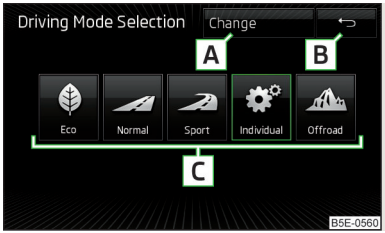


Fig. 263
Display in Infotainment screen

Read and observe ! on page 221 first.

Procedure for the selection of the driving mode

› Press the button and MODE » Fig. 262.

In the Infotainment screen, a running mode menu » Fig. 263 appears.

The mode is changed by repeatedly pressing the button MODE and MODE or by tapping the corresponding function surface on the Infotainment screen.

If a driving mode other than **Normal** is selected, then the symbol lights up on the button MODE or MODE.

If the mode **Sport** or **Individual** was set prior to the engine being switched off (Drive - Sport), the drive changes to **Normal** mode after the engine is started. In order to switch back to **Sport**, select mode **Sport** or **Individual** or set the selector lever of the automatic transmission to mode **S**.

Function surfaces on the screen » Fig. 263

A Sets the mode **Individual** and information on the setting of the currently selected mode

B Cancel the menu to select driving mode

C Modes (the surface of the selected mode is shown in green)

Note

- The currently selected running mode is displayed in the Infotainment in the status bar of the main menu of the symbol.
- If the driving mode menu is not operated within a few seconds, the Infotainment switches to the last selected menu or switches off.

Individual mode settings

Read and observe ! on page 221 first.

In the **Individual** mode, the following menu items can be set.

- **DCC:** - Adjustment of the shock characteristics
- **Steering:** - Set the power steering characteristics
- **Drive:** - set the drive characteristics
- **Front differential lock:** - Sets the characteristics of the front axle differential lock
- **ACC:** - Set the vehicle acceleration when adaptive cruise control is activated
- **Dynamic Cornering light:** - Set the characteristics of the Xenon headlights
- **Air conditioning:** - Set the Climatronic characteristics
- **Engine sound:** - Sets the engine noise in the vehicle
- **Reset mode** - Setting for all menu items in the **Individual** mode to **Normal**
  - **Cancel** - Keep the current settings
  - **Reset** - cancels all menu items in the **Normal** mode

Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 224

Proactive passenger protection (hereafter known as system) increases passenger protection in the front seats in situations that could lead to vehicle impact or overturning.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.

Note

- The system component service life is monitored electronically. Further information » page 35, *Safety systems*.
- If the front passenger front airbag is deactivated, the belt tensioning function for the front passenger seat is switched off.

Operation

Read and observe ! on page 224 first.

In critical driving situations (e.g. during emergency braking or a sudden change in direction), the following steps can be taken separately or combined in order to reduce the risk of serious injury.

- The front passenger's and driver's seatbelts, if worn, are automatically **tensioned** closely over the body.
- Opened door windows in the front doors are closed automatically up to a gap of about 5 cm from the edge.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Once the critical driving situation has passed, the tension on the seatbelts will be released again.

The system operates at two levels of protection.

The first level of protection

The system already intervenes in situations that may occur during dynamic driving. As a result, this primarily helps to keep the driver and the passenger in the correct seated position.

The first protection level can be deactivated in one of the following ways.

- in the menu CAR Infotainment → ⚙ → **Driver assistance**.
- Deactivation of TCS » page 201.
- By selecting the driving mode **Sport** » page 223.

Provided that the driving mode **Sport** is not selected, the system is activated over the two levels of protection after switching the ignition off and on again.

The second level of protection

The system intervenes only if the situation is evaluated as critical, such as when panic braking at high speeds.

This level of protection cannot be deactivated.

Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist)

Introduction

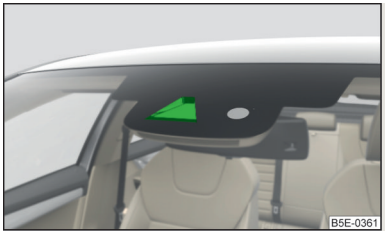


Fig. 264
Sensor for Lane Assist

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Settings in Infotainment 225
Operation 225
Activation / deactivation 226
Malfunctions 226

The lane departure warning (hereinafter known as system) helps to keep the vehicle between the boundary lines of a lane.

The system recognises the boundary lines of the lane using a sensor » Fig. 264.

When the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes, the system makes a **light** movement of the steering wheel in the opposite direction to the boundary line. This corrective steering intervention can be manually overridden at any time.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Lane Assist can help you keep the vehicle within the lane. However, it does not steer the vehicle for you. The driver retains full responsibility for steering at all times.
- Some objects or markings on the road can be recognised as the boundary lines - an erroneous steering intervention may be the result.

WARNING

The system may not be able to recognise the boundary line, or recognise it incorrectly, for example, in the following situations.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When driving in "sharp" bends.
- The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.

CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the system.

Note

- The system is designed for driving on motorways and roads with adequate longitudinal markings.
- The system can detect both continuous and broken lines.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe and on page 224 first.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Driver assistance**.

- *Lane Assist (lane departure warning sys.)* - Settings for Lane Assist
  - **Active** - Activate/deactivate the assistant
  - **Adaptive lane guidance** - Activate/deactivate adaptive lane guidance

Operation

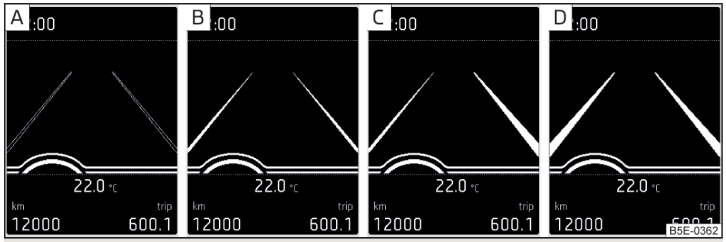


Fig. 265 **Monochromatic display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

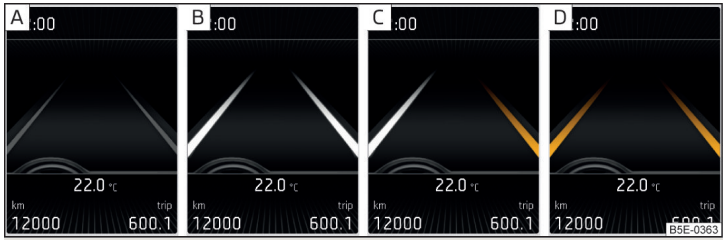


Fig. 266 **Colour display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

Read and observe and on page 224 first.

System displays» Fig. 265 and » Fig. 266

A The system is activated, but not ready to intervene.
B The system is active and ready to intervene.
C The system intervenes when approaching the right-hand boundary lane.
D Adaptive tracking takes place.

The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at more than around 65 km/h.
✓ The boundary line of at least one side of the lane is detected.

✓ The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
✓ The lane is more than 2.5 m in width.

If the turn signal is switched on (e.g. when turning), no steering intervention takes place when the vehicle approaches the boundary line. The system regards the situation as an intended lane change.

Warning lights in the instrument cluster

The system is active, but not ready to intervene.

The system is active and ready to intervene or is currently intervening.

Adaptive lane assist

Adaptive tracking helps to keep the vehicle in the position between the boundary lines selected by the driver, by means of steering intervention.

If the position within the lane is changed, the system quickly adapts and holds the newly-selected position.

Steering wheel vibrations

In the following situations, it may occasionally be the case that due to the steering wheel vibrations, the system indicates that a driver steering intervention is required.

- The system is not able to keep the vehicle by a within the lane due to a steering intervention.
- During an intense system-related steering intervention, the system suddenly cannot recognize the boundary lines.

WARNING

The system function may be restricted if, for example there is danger due to ruts on a downhill road or in a crosswind.

Activation / deactivation

Read and observe and on page 224 first.

The activation/deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of two ways.

- In the instrument cluster display » page 47, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.
- In infotainment » page 225, *Settings in Infotainment*.

Adaptive tracking can also be enabled or disabled In Infotainment.

After switching off and switching on the ignition, the system setting is retained.

Malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 224 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty

If the windscreen is dirty, iced or misted up in the sensor area, a message appears indicating that there is no sensor view. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles from the sensor area.

System unavailable

If the system is currently unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Try to re-activate the machine. If the system still is not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

System fault

In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Request to take over steering

If the system detects that there are no hands are on the steering wheel, this will not work properly. You will be prompted to take over steering. Place your hands on the steering wheel.

Traffic sign recognition

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Settings in Infotainment 227
Operation 227
Additional display 228
Malfunctions and information messages 228

The road sign recognition system (hereinafter referred to as system) shows certain road signs (e.g. Mandatory speed limits) on the instrument cluster display.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Vertical traffic signs must always take precedence over the traffic signs shown in the display. The driver is always responsible for correctly assessing the traffic situation.
- On the system side, only a traffic sign display is undertaken, neither a warning when limit is exceeded or driving speed adjustment is undertaken!
- Speed specifications in the displayed road signs refer to the customary speed units. For example, the view in the display can therefore refer to km / h or mph, specific to the country.

WARNING

The traffic signs may not be displayed or displayed incorrectly in the system e.g. in the following situations.

- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- Travelling at high speed.
- The traffic signs are covered (e.g. by trees, snow or dirt).
- The traffic signs are not standard (round with a red border) or are damaged.
- The traffic signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- The traffic signs were changed (the navigation data are out of date).

Note

The system is only available in some countries.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! on page 227 first.

› Press the CAR button, then tap on the function surface → **Driver assistance**.

- *Dynamic Road Sign Display* - Settings for the Dynamic Road Sign Display
  - **Show in instrument cluster** - Activation/deactivation of the additional traffic signs in the display of the instrument cluster
  - **Speed warning::** » page 221 - Setting a warning when exceeding the speed limit
- *Trailer recognition*
  - **Show road signs relevant to trailers** - Activating / deactivating the display of road signs relevant to trailers
  - **Use for route calculation** - Activation / deactivation taking trailers in account for route calculation in navigation

Operation

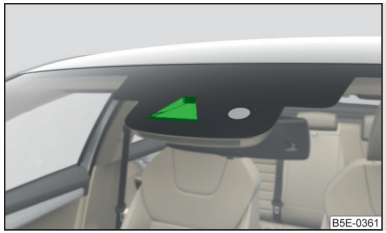


Fig. 267
Sensor for traffic sign recognition

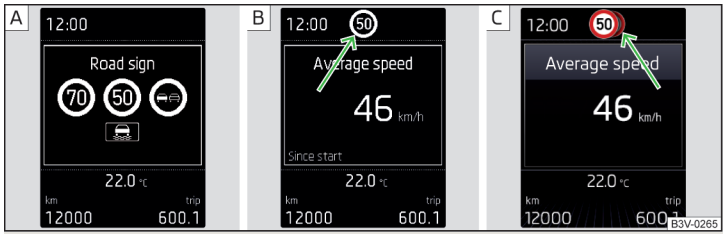


Fig. 268 **Display in the instrument cluster: Display examples**

Read and observe ! on page 227 first.

Description of indications and displayed traffic signs

Display » Fig. 268

A Display of detected traffic signs » page 44, *Driving data (Multifunction display)*

B Additional display (monochromatic display)

C Additional display (colour display)

The system can display the following (vertical) traffic signs where identified.
▸ Speed limit.
▸ Overtaking prohibited.

Additional signs, such as 'when wet' or signs which only apply for a limited time can also be displayed.

The system displays only traffic signs that are in the "viewing area" of the sensor » Fig. 267.

Data from the sensor is supplemented by information from the Infotainment Navigation. This is the reason why traffic signs with maximum speeds can also be shown on sections of roads which do not have any traffic signs.

Mode when towing a trailer
For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device the display for the trailer operation applicable road signs can be enabled or disabled in the Infotainment display» page 227, *Settings in Infotainment*.

Additional display

Read and observe ! on page 227 first.

If the menu item Road sign is currently not shown» Fig. 268 *on page 227* - A, the road sign with the speed limit will appear in the upper display area of the instrument cluster» Fig. 268 *on page 227* - B, C.

If several traffic signs are detected simultaneously, in some cases the next traffic sign will also be displayed in the colour display -» Fig. 268 *on page 227* - C.

All detected traffic signs can be displayed via the multifunction display in the menu item Traffic Sign Recognition» Fig. 268 *on page 227* - A.

The additional display can be activated / deactivated in Infotainment» page 227.

Malfunctions and information messages

Read and observe ! on page 227 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the screen in the sensor area is dirty, iced or misted, a caution to clean the screen appears. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles from the sensor area.

System fault
In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

System limitation (Navigation data not available)
If the Infotainment Navigation submits no data, a message regarding the limitation of the system function appears. Check whether the map documents are up to date or whether the vehicle is currently in a location for which no navigation data are available.

Traffic signs unavailable
No speed restriction is detected, a message is displayed regarding the unavailability of road signs.

Fatigue detection

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter referred to as system) recommends the driver takes a break from driving when driver fatigue can be detected due to the driver's steering behaviour.

From the starting of the journey, the system evaluates the steering behaviour at speeds 65-200 km/h. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

Conditions under which a break from driving is detected by the system
▸ The vehicle is stopped and the ignition is turned off.
▸ The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt is taken off and the driver's door is opened.
▸ The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Driver assistance**.

Pause recommendation
The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster ☕ and a message about the detected fatigue. An audible signal is also emitted.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.
- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display _____ 229

The tyre pressure monitoring function (hereinafter referred to as the system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the tyre inflation pressure changes, the warning light (!) lights up in the instrument cluster and an audible signal sounds» page 35.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and these pressure values are stored in the system.

The tyre pressure values are always stored in the system if one of the following events occurs.

- Change of tyre inflation pressure.
- Change one or more wheels.
- Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- The warning light (!) lights up in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 199, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre inflation pressure must be checked regularly » page 261.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.
- Before storing the pressure values, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 261. If incorrect pressure values are saved, the system may also not issue a warning even if the tyre inflation pressure is too low.

CAUTION

To ensure proper system function, the tire pressure values must be stored every 10 000 km or 1x a year.

Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display

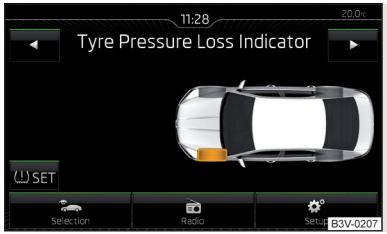


Fig. 269
Button for storing / Example of screen display: it indicates a front left tire pressure change

Read and observe ! and ! on page 229 first.

Procedure for storing the tyre pressure values

› Inflate all tyres to the prescribed pressure.
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Press the CAR button in Infotainment and then tap on the function interfaces on the screen → **Veh. status**.
› Use the function interfaces ◁ ▷ Select the menu item *Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator*.
› Tap on the function surface (!) **SET** » Fig. 269.

In addition, follow the instructions that appear on the screen.

A message on the screen informs about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

Note

When a warning light in the instrument cluster appears, the affected tyre can be displayed on the infotainment » Fig. 269.

Towing device and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description 231
Adjusting the ready position 231
Check the setting of the standby position 232
Assembling the bar ball – Step 1 232
Assembling the bar ball – Step 2 233
Check proper fitting 233
Removing the bar ball – Step 1 233
Removing the bar ball – Step 2 234
Vertical load with mounted accessories 235

The maximum trailer nose weight when towing a trailer is **75 kg**, Vehicles with four-wheel drive **80 kg** and G-TEC vehicles **56 kg**. Other data (e.g. shown on the nameplate of the hitch) on provides information about the test values of the device .

WARNING

- Before each time you make a journey when using the ball rod, check that it is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess.
- When the knee-joint bar is not used and properly secured in the receiving shaft, it is damaged or incomplete, this must not be used - there is a risk of an accident.
- Do not perform any modifications or changes to the towing device.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing device clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball rod from being attached securely!

Note

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the original reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

Description

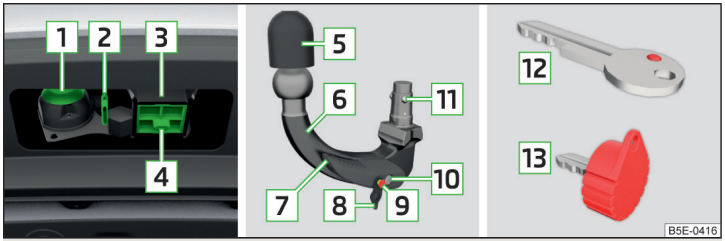


Fig. 270 **Support for the hitch equipment / ball bar / key (Version 1 and 2)**

Read and observe ! on page 230 first.

The knee-joint bar is detachable and is located in the storage compartment for the spare / emergency wheel.

The hitch comes with two key versions. The handling of the hitch is identical for the two key versions. The difference is only in the key version.

Support for the towing device and tow bar » Fig. 270

1 13-pin power socket
2 Safety eye
3 Mounting recess
4 Cap
5 Dust cap
6 Ball rod
7 Operating lever
8 Lock cap
9 Trigger pin
10 Lock
11 Locking ball
12 Key – Version 1
13 Key – Version 2

Adjusting the ready position

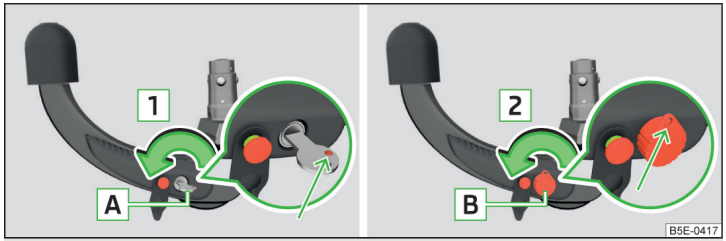


Fig. 271 **1. Step: Key Version 1 / key Version 2**

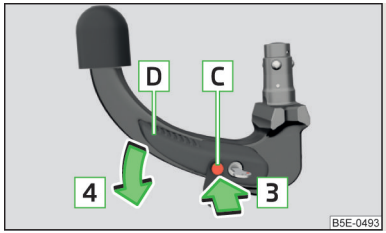


Fig. 272
Step 2: Both key variants

Read and observe ! on page 230 first.

The ball rod must be set to the ready position prior to installation » page 232, *Check the setting of the standby position*.

1. Step - applies to the key version 1
› Remove the cap from the lock
› Insert key A into the lock so that the green marking is pointing upwards.
› Turn key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the red marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 271.

1. Step - applies to the key version 2
› Remove the cap from the lock
› Insert key B into the lock so that the eye of the key is pointing downwards.
› Turn the key in the direction of arrow B 2 so that the conclusions release shows up » Fig. 271.

2. Step - applies to both key versions

› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Push release pin C in the direction of arrow 3 to the stop, and simultaneously push operating lever D in the direction of arrow 4 to the stop » Fig. 272.

Operating lever D remains locked in this position.

Check the setting of the standby position

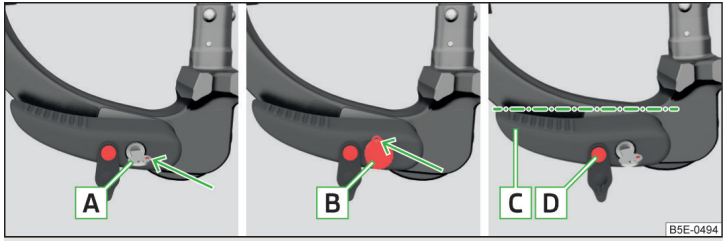


Fig. 273 **Ready position: Key Version 1 / key Version 2 / position of the lever and the release bolt with two key versions**

Read and observe ! on page 230 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 273

✓ Applies to key version 1 - the red marking on key A is pointing upwards.
✓ Applies to key version 2 - the eye of the key B is pointing upwards.
✓ Operating lever C is locked in the lower position.
✓ The trigger pin D can be moved.

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed or turned into a different position. The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

Assembling the bar ball – Step 1

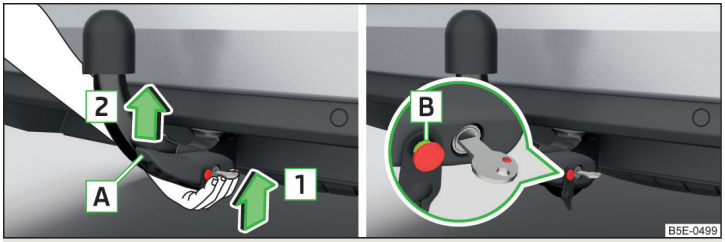


Fig. 274 **Insert ball rod / trigger bolt in the extended state**

Read and observe ! on page 230 first.

Insert ball rod - applies to both key versions

› Remove the cover for the mounting recess 4 in a downwards direction» Fig. 270 *on page 231*.
› Adjust the ball rod to the ready position » page 231, *Adjusting the ready position*.
› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 274 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction 1 until you hear it click into place » !.

The lever A **automatically** turns upwards in the direction of arrow 2 and the release pin B pops out (both its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If lever A does not turn automatically, or if the release pin B does not pop out, remove the ball rod from the mounting recess by turning lever A downwards as far as it can go. Clean the contact surfaces on the ball rod and the mounting recess.

! WARNING

- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball rod – risk of finger injuries!
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever violently upwards to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball rod is not attached correctly!

Assembling the bar ball – Step 2

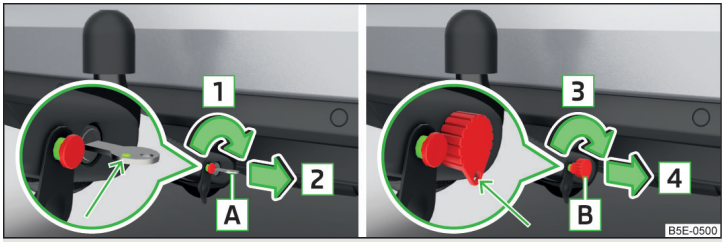


Fig. 275 **Lock lock: Key Version 1 / key Version 2**

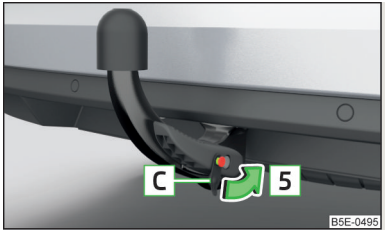


Fig. 276
Place cap on the lock

Read and observe ! on page 230 first.

Applies to the key version 1

› Turn key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the green marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 275.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.

Applies to key version 2

› Turn the key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the conclusions release points down » Fig. 275.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 4.

Applies to both key versions

› Fit and press cap C onto the lock in the direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 276.
› Check that the ball rod is securely attached » page 233, *Check proper fitting*.

! WARNING

After fitting the tow bar, always secure the lock and remove the key. The tow bar must not be operated with the key inserted.

Check proper fitting

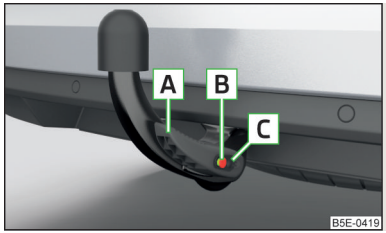


Fig. 277
Correctly connected tow bar

Read and observe ! on page 230 first.

Correctly secured ball rod » Fig. 277

✓ The ball rod does not come off the mounting recess even after strong "shaking".
✓ Operating lever A is as far up as possible.
✓ The release pin B is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
✓ The key is removed and the cap C attached to the lock.

Removing the bar ball – Step 1

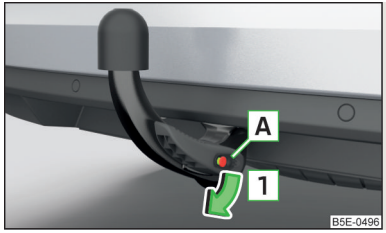


Fig. 278
Remove the cap from the lock

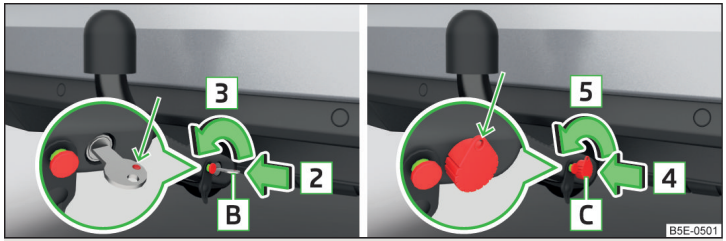


Fig. 279 **Unlock lock: Key version 1 / key version 2**

Read and observe ! on page 230 first.

No trailer or other accessory is connected to the tow bar. We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.

Applies to both key versions

› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 278.

Applies to key version 1

› Insert key B into the lock in the direction of arrow 2 so that the green marking is pointing upwards.
› Turn key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the red marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 279.

Applies to key version 2

› Insert key C into the lock in the direction of arrow 4 so that the eye of the key is pointing downwards.
› Turn key C in the direction of arrow 5 so that the eye of the key is pointing upwards » Fig. 279.

Removing the bar ball – Step 2

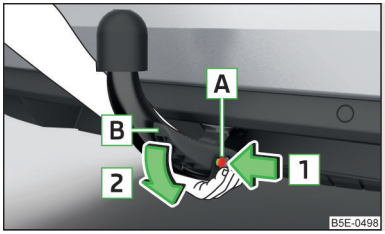


Fig. 280
Release ball bar

Read and observe ! on page 230 first.

› Grasp the ball rod from **below** » Fig. 280.
› Push release pin A in the direction of arrow 1 to the stop, and simultaneously push operating lever B in the direction of arrow 2 to the stop .

The ball rod is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

› Place the cap 4 » Fig. 270 *on page 231* onto the mounting recess.

If lever B is held firmly and not pushed downwards to the stop, it will move back up after the ball rod is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The knee-joint bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is installed» page 231, *Adjusting the ready position*.

The knee-joint bar must be cleaned before storing in the box with the vehicle tool always.

! WARNING

Never allow the ball rod to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

! CAUTION

- Store the ball rod in the box in the ready position and with the key facing upwards - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the key!
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not climb on it)!

Vertical load with mounted accessories

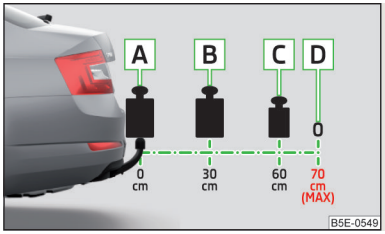


Fig. 281
Representation of the maximum length of the mounted accessories and the permissible total weight of the accessory depending on the load centre of gravity

Read and observe ! on page 230 first.

When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The **maximum length** of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) is **70 cm** » Fig. 281.

The total permitted weight of the accessories including load changes with increasing distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head of the towing device.

Distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head		Permissible total weight of the accessory, including load
A	0 cm	75 kg / 56 kg[a)]
B	30 cm	75 kg / 56 kg[a)]
C	60 cm	35 kg / 28 kg[a)]
D	70 cm	0 kg / 0 kg[a)]

[a)] Applies to G-TEC vehicles.

! CAUTION

Never exceed the permissible **total weight** of the accessories incl. load and **maximum length** of the accessories - There is a risk of damage to the towing device.

i Note

We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

[1)] Applies to vehicles with xenon headlights.

Using hitch

Trailer (accessory) connect and disconnect

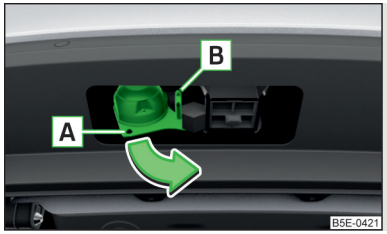


Fig. 282
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Connect / disconnect

› Fit the ball rod.
› Grip the 13-pin socket at point A and swing out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 282.
› Remove the protective cap 5 » Fig. 270 *on page 231*.
› Place the trailer (the accessory) onto the tow ball.
› Open the socket cap and insert the plug of the trailer (accessories) into the 13-pin socket A » Fig. 282. (If the trailer / accessories have a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding reduction piece from the ŠKODA Original Accessories).
› Suspend the breakaway cable of the trailer at the safety eyelet B (the breakaway cable must **sag** in all trailer settings in view of the vehicle).

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Exterior mirrors

You should have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer using the standard rear-view mirrors.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer (accessory) is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users. Set the range of the headlights » page 64, *Operating the lights*[1)].

Power supply of the trailer / accessory power system

In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory), the trailer (accessories) is supplied with power from the vehicle (with ignition switched on and off).

With the engine switched off, the vehicle battery is discharged by the connected consumers.

At low charge state of the vehicle battery, the power supply to the trailer (accessories) is interrupted.

WARNING

- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) may result in an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- Do not make any adjustments to the electrical installation of the vehicle and the trailer (accessories) - risk of an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- After the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory) the trailer / accessory lights should be checked for function.
- Never use the securing eye to tow - The is a risk of an accident!

CAUTION

- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) can lead to the inoperability of the vehicle electronics.
- The total power consumption of all the connected loads to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle.

Loading a trailer

Correct the **tyre inflation pressure** on the vehicle for "full load"» page 261.

Distribution of the cargo
Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the load from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Nevertheless, maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

WARNING

Sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - risk of accident!

Trailer

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances.

Permissible trailer load - Octavia

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	MG	1300	610
	DSG	1300	620
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1100	610
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1400	690
	DSG	1400	700
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1500	620
	DSG	1500	630
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	MG	1100	600
	AG	1100	620

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG	1600	650
	DSG	1600	660
	DSG 4x4	1600	710
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1400	640
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	MG5	1500	650
	MG6	1000	640
	MG 4x4	1700	700
	DSG	1500	650
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	660
	DSG	1600	670
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	660
	MG 4x4	2000	710
	DSG	1600	670
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1800	730

Permissible trailer load - Octavia RS

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
2.0 l./162 kW TSI	MG	1600	710
	DSG	1600	720
2.0 l./169 kW TSI	MG	1600	720
	DSG	1600	730
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	720
	DSG	1600	730
	DSG 4x4	1800	750

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	MG	1300	620
	DSG	1300	630
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1100	620

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1400	700
	DSG	1400	710
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1500	630
	DSG	1500	640
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	MG	1100	610
	AG	1100	620
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG	1600	660
	DSG	1600	670
	DSG 4x4	1600	720
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1400	650
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	MG5	1500	660
	MG6	1000	640
	MG 4x4	1700	710
	DSG	1500	660
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	670
	DSG	1600	680
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	670
	MG 4x4	2000	720
	DSG	1600	680
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1800	730

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi RS

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	MG	1600	720
	DSG	1600	730
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	MG	1600	730
	DSG	1600	740
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	730
	DSG	1600	740
	DSG 4x4	1800	750

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi Scout

Engine	Gearbox	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) with gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1600	750
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	1700	750
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	2000	750
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1800	750

WARNING

The maximum vertical load and the maximum trailer load must not be exceeded - there is risk of an accident!

Trailer operation

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive with the trailer any faster than 100 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a passenger car of category M1) or 80 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a truck of category N1).

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

CAUTION

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

The alarm is triggered if, with a vehicle with activated anti-theft alarm (hereinafter only warning system), the electrical connection to the trailer (accessory) is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer (accessory) is coupled or uncoupled » page 55.

Conditions for including a trailer (accessory) in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer (accessory) is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is not equipped with LED taillights.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle operation in different weather conditions 240
Statutory checks 240
ŠKODA service partner 240
ŠKODA Original parts 241
ŠKODA Original accessories 241
Spoiler 241
Component protection 241
Airbags 241
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 242

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when using accessories or carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

WARNING

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist. Work carried out incorrectly (including work on the electronic components and their software) can result in malfunctions - there is a risk of accident and, potentially, increased wear on parts!
- We recommend that you use only ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- Do not use any products which have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, even though these may be products with a type approval or which have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

Vehicle operation in different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 240 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with its intended weather conditions, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. He or she will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant, changing the battery or similar).

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 240 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability, safety and, where applicable, roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at regular intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service partners can prepare your vehicle for the official inspections, so as to ensure that it passes.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation for a legally required test, we recommend that you consult your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

ŠKODA service partner

Read and observe ! on page 240 first.

All ŠKODA service partners work according to the instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 240 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts comply wholly with ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 240 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch the suitability of other products for your vehicle, despite the fact that some products may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 240 first.

! WARNING

If your vehicle is equipped with a Genuine Accessories spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the boot lid, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries!

- The vehicle can only be equipped with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the corresponding spoiler on the boot lid.
- A Genuine Accessories spoiler cannot be fitted to the front bumper either on its own (without a spoiler on the boot lid) or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the boot lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.
- Unprofessional work carried out on the spoilers of your vehicle may result in malfunction.

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 240 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 240 first.

! WARNING

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can impair the functioning of the airbag system - There is a risk of accidents and fatal injury!

WARNING

- No changes may be made to airbag system components, the front bumper and the bodywork.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- If the airbag has been deployed, the airbag system must be replaced.

WARNING

The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can impair the functioning of the airbag system -There is a risk of accidents and fatal injuries! The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- Any work on the front doors and their door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never drive the vehicle with the inner door panels removed or with openings in the panelling.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 240 first.

All new ŠKODA vehicles are 95% recyclable.

Service intervals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview of service intervals 243
Fixed service intervals QI1 - QI4 243
Variable service interval QI6 243
Digital Service Plan 244

The service interval display in the display of the instrument cluster will remind you to carry out every service stipulated by the manufacturer at the right time in order to prevent you from forgetting any» page 48.

The completion of services can be verified through the printed verification from the digital service schedule and the respective receipts.

The specified service intervals are tailored to normal operating conditions.

In the case of aggravated operating conditions, it will be necessary to have some service work carried out before the date of the next regular service or between the specified service intervals. This applies mainly to the cleaning or the replacement of the air filter insert in regions with heavy dust pollution as well as checking and replacing the toothed belt, but also to vehicles with diesel particle filters, which can put greater strain on the engine oil.

The following is taken to mean aggravated operating conditions:

- Fuel containing sulphur.
- Frequent short trips.
- Longer periods of engine idling (e.g. taxis).
- Operation in areas with heavy dust pollution.
- Frequent trailer operation.
- Predominantly stop-and-go traffic as is e.g. often the case in city driving.
- Operation predominantly during winter.

You will be told at the specialist garage whether the operating conditions of your vehicle may make it necessary for service work to be carried out between the normal service intervals.

Different service charges may apply according to the particular scope of work required, the vehicle type and specification, and your vehicle's condition.

Note

- The customer is responsible for covering the cost of all services including changing or replenishing the oil, even during the warranty period, unless stated otherwise in the ŠKODA AUTO warranty terms or other agreements.
- You will be informed about the service checks and actions at each service by the specialist garage.

Overview of service intervals

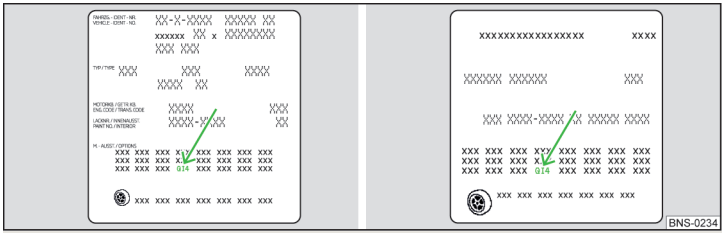


Fig. 283 **Vehicle data: Service Interval**

The service interval prescribed by the manufacturer is indicated on the vehicle data » Fig. 283. The vehicle data is affixed in the instructions and under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One of the following service intervals applies for your vehicle.
- Fixed service interval QI1.
- Fixed service interval QI2.
- Fixed service interval QI3.
- Fixed service interval QI4.
- Variable service interval QI6.

In order to operate a vehicle with a variable service interval, it must only be filled and topped up with the prescribed engine oil.

If this engine oil is not available, the oil change is subject to a fixed service interval. In this case, the vehicle **must** be changed to the fixed service interval.

Note

- The corresponding motor oil specifications » page 255.
- For vehicles with variable service interval QI6 you can initiate a change to the fixed service interval or back to the variable service interval to be carried out by a specialist garage.

Fixed service intervals QI1 - QI4

Oil change service	QI1	Every 5 000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI2	Every 7 500 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI3	Every 10 000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI4	Every 15 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 1	QI1 - QI4	After the first 30 000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 2		Every 15 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 3		Every 10 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Brake fluid change	QI1 - QI4	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years.

[a] Depending on which comes first.
[b] For information about the variant that applies to your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA partner.

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system when braking sharply. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes –There is an risk of accident!

Note

For diesel operation with a high sulphur content, an oil change service must be carried out every 7 500 km. Ask your specialist garage for information on the countries where diesel fuel has a high sulphur content.

Variable service interval QI6

The oil change service intervals depend on the intensity at which the vehicle is driven and the local conditions in which the vehicle is used. For example, your vehicle is subjected to different demands when driven over short distances than when driven over long distances. The intervals are therefore **variable**.

Oil change service	In accordance with the service interval display (after 30 000 km or 2 years[a] at the latest).
Inspection[b] Variant 1	After the first 30 000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30 000 km or every 1 year[a].

Inspection[b] Variant 2	Every 15 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Brake fluid change	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years.

[a] Depending on which comes first.
[b] For information about the variant that applies to your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA partner.

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system when braking sharply. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes –There is a risk of an accident!

Digital Service Plan

A specialist garage will not record the work carried out in a service evidence in this Owner's Manual, but in the service information system called Digital Service Plan.

We therefore recommend that you always have the record of work carried out in a service printed out for you.

Benefits of the Digital Service Plan

- High level of security preventing manipulation of the entries.
- Transparent documentation of service work carried out.
- Protection against loss or damage of the entries – you receive a complete service record of the work carried out, if required.
- Option to receive the record in electronic form.
- The vehicle can be serviced in any specialist garage (also abroad) – the database is accessible worldwide.
- Increased transparency when purchasing a used vehicle due to entries being stored centrally.
- The system entries support you in making a claim on the ŠKODA extended warranty and mobility guarantees.

Cleaning and care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car washing 244
Exterior vehicle care 245
Remove ice and snow from the windows 247
Caring for the interior 247

Regular and thorough care helps to retain the value of your vehicle.

The instructions for use on the packaging must be observed when using care products. We recommend that you use ŠKODA Original Accessories care products.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - There is a danger of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents - danger of damaging the surface to be cleaned.

Note

We recommend that the vehicle is cleaned and maintained at a ŠKODA service partner.

Car washing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 244 first.

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is frequent washing. ▸

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain on the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is also essential to thoroughly clean the underside of the vehicle at the end of the winter.

Washing by hand
Wash the vehicle from top to bottom, with a soft sponge or a wash mitt and plenty of water, and, if necessary, with the appropriate detergents. Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

For wheels, door sills and lower areas of the vehicle use a different sponge.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

Automatic Car Washes
The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle (e.g. closing the windows and the tilt/slide roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts (e.g. spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc.) it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the wiper blades should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

Pressure Washers
When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This particularly applies to instructions regarding the **pressure** and **spraying distance** from the vehicle surface.

WARNING
- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Take care when cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel wells - there is a risk of injury from sharp metal parts!

CAUTION
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight, do not exert pressure on the body while washing. The temperature of the washing water should be no more than 60 °C max. - otherwise there is a risk of damaging the vehicle paint.
- Before driving through a car wash fold in the exterior mirrors - There is a risk of damage.

CAUTION
Washing the vehicle with high-pressure cleaners
- Films should not be washed with any high-pressure cleaners - risk of damage.
- Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter – there is a risk of freezing.
- During cleaning, always keep a sufficiently large spraying distance to the parking sensors, the rear camera lens, to external decorative and protective plastic parts (e.g. Roof racks, spoilers, protective strips) and other vehicle parts made of non-metallic materials such as rubber hoses or insulation materials.
- The sensors of the parking aid can be sprayed only for a short time and there must be a minimum distance of 10 cm - there is a risk of damage.

Exterior vehicle care

Read and observe ! and ! on page 244 first.

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Paint	Spilled fuel	Clear water, cloth, (clean as soon as possible)
	No water droplets form on the paint	Use hard wax preserve (at least twice a year), apply wax to clean and dry body
	Paint has gone matt	Use polish, then wax (if the polish does not contain any preservative ingredients)
Chrome and anodised parts	Soiling	clear water, cloth, possibly cleaners provided for this purpose, clean then polish with a soft dry cloth
Films	Soiling	Soft sponge and mild soap solution[a)]
Windows and door mirrors	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a wipe specifically for that purpose

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Head / tail lights	Soiling	Soft sponge and mild soap solution[a)]
Reversing camera	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a soft cloth
	Snow/ice	Hand brush / de-icer
Door lock cylinders	Snow/ice	De-icing fluid specifically for that purpose
Wipers / wiper blades	Soiling	Windscreen cleaner, sponge or cloth
Wheels	Soiling	Clear water, then apply appropriate substance

a) Mild soap solution = 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

The **jack** is maintenance-free. If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

The **towing device** is maintenance-free. Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Protection of cavities
All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected by a layer of long-lasting protective wax applied in the factory.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

Underbody
The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

We recommend having the protective coating — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

Product life of the films
Environmental influences (e.g. sunlight, humidity, air pollution, rockfall) affect the life of the films. Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal; this is not a fault.

Sunlight may also affect the strength of the film colour.

When transporting a load on the roof rack (e.g. roof box or similar), there is an increased risk of film damage (e.g. of chipping from the secured load).

! CAUTION

- **Vehicle paint**
  - Repair damaged areas as soon as possible.
  - Matt-painted parts should not be treated with polishes or hard waxes.
  - Do not polish in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
  - Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not use paint polish.
- **Chromed and anodised parts**
  - Do not polish in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.
- **Films**
  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of film damage.
  - Do not use dirty cloths or sponges for cleaning.
  - Do not use a scraper or other means to remove ice and snow.
  - Do not polish the films
  - Do not use a high pressure cleaner on the films.
- **Rubber seals**
  - Do not treat the door seals and window guides deal with anything - the protective varnish coating could be damaged.
- **Windows and door mirrors**
  - Do not clean the insides of the windows/mirrors with sharp objects - There is a risk of damage to the filaments or the antenna.
  - Do not use a cloth which has been used to polish the body - this could dirty the window and impair visibility.
- **Head / tail lights**
  - Do not wipe head/tail lamps dry, do not use any sharp objects - risk of damage to the protective coating and cracks forming on the headlamp glass covers.
- **Reversing camera**
  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of camera damage.
  - Do not remove snow / ice with warm / hot water.
  - To wash, never use a pressure washer or steam jet.
  - For cleaning, do not use abrasive cleaners.
- **Door lock cylinders**
  - Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!
- **Wheels**
  - Heavy soiling of the wheels can affect the balance of the wheels - the result can be a vibration, which can cause premature wear of the steering.

Remove ice and snow from the windows

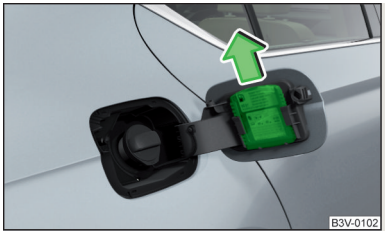


Fig. 284
Installation location of the ice scraper, removing the scraper

Read and observe ! and ! on page 244 first.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. This can be on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap and slide the scraper in the direction of arrow » Fig. 284.

! CAUTION

- Move the scraper in one direction only, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the glass surface.
- Do not remove snow / ice on the surface that is soiled (e.g. pea gravel, sand, road salt) - there is a risk of damaging the surface.
- Remove snow / ice carefully, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the labels that have been fitted to the vehicle by the factory.

Caring for the interior

Read and observe ! and ! on page 244 first.

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / Material	Dust, surface soiling	Vacuum cleaner
	Stubborn stains	Cleaning fluid specifically for this task
	Care (natural leather)	Treat the leather periodically with a leather protecting fluid / use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning
	Care (Alcantara® / material)	Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove" Remove pills from materials with a brush
Plastic parts	Soiling	Water, slightly damp cloth or sponge, if necessary cleaners specifically for this purpose
Windows	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a wipe specifically for that purpose
Covers on electrically heated seats	Soiling	Cleaners specifically for this purpose
Seat belts » !	Soiling	soft cloth and mild soap solution[a)]

[a)] Mild soap solution = 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

! WARNING

- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

! CAUTION

- **Natural leather /Faux leather / Alcantara® / material**
  - Avoid standing for lengthy periods in bright sunlight, and protect the materials by covering to prevent them from fading.
  - Remove fresh stains (e.g. from pens, lipstick, shoe polish and similar) as soon as possible.

▪ Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams - There is risk of damaging the leather!
▪ Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
▪ Do not use leather cleaners, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® seat upholstery.
▪ Some clothing fabrics (e.g. dark denim) do not have sufficient colour fastness - this could lead to clearly visible discolouration on the upholstery. This is not a defect in the fabric.
▪ Sharp objects on garments (e.g. zips, rivets, sharp- edged belts) can damage the upholstery fabrics in the vehicle. Such damage will not be recognised as a justified complaint.

- **Plastic parts**
  ▪ Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – risk of damage to the dash panel.
- **Windows**
  ▪ Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- **Covers on electrically heated seats**
  ▪ Do not clean either with water or with other liquids - There is a risk of damage to the heating system.
  ▪ Do not dry by switching on the heating.
- **Seat belts**
  ▪ After cleaning the belts, allow them to dry before retracting them.

Note

During vehicle use, some minor changes may become visible on the leather and Alcantara®(due to e.g. folds, discolouration).

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction



Fig. 285
Stickers showing the prescribed fuel

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Petrol and diesel refuelling 249
Unleaded petrol 249
Diesel fuel 250
Refuel CNG (compressed natural gas) 251
CNG 252

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 285.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **50 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **6 litres**.

WARNING

The fuel and fuel vapours are explosive - risk to life!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! Irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage.
- If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than the one for which it was intended, please talk to a ŠKODA Partner. They will tell you whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in that country and/or whether the manufacturer will sanction operating the vehicle with another fuel.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

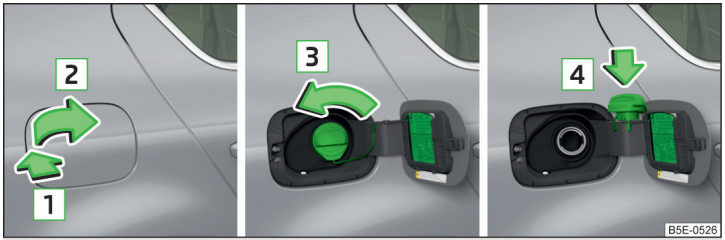


Fig. 286 **Open fuel filler flap/unscrew tank cap/place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

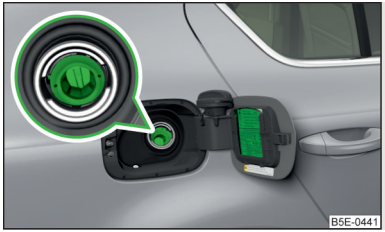


Fig. 287
Fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines

Read and observe and on page 248 first.

Perform the refuelling under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off.

› Press the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 1 and fold in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 286.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place in the recess on top of the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go, and refuel.

The fuel tank is full as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time. Not continue refuelling.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler tube and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it securely engages.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Incorrect refuelling guard on vehicles with diesel engines
The fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines is fitted with an incorrect refuelling guard » Fig. 287.

If the diesel pump nozzle does not sit directly in the fuel filler tube, move it to and fro with slight pressure to insert it correctly.

The diameter of the diesel pump nozzle can be identical to that of the petrol pump nozzle in some countries. When driving in these countries, the incorrect fuelling protection should be removed by a specialist company.

Unleaded petrol

Read and observe and on page 248 first.

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 285 *on page 248*.

The vehicle can only operate with **unleaded petrol** that meets standard **EN 228**[1], and contains **maximum** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Prescribed fuel 95 / min. 92 and 93 RON / ROZ
We recommend using petrol **95** ROZ.

Optionally, the petrol **92** or. **93** ROZ can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency** petrol **91** ROZ can be used (slight power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

Specified petrol is unleaded, min. 95 RON / ROZ
Use min. **95** ROZ petrol.

In an **emergency**, **91**. **92** or**93** ROZ petrol can be used (slight loss of power, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

Prescribed petrol 98/(95) RON / ROZ
We recommend using petrol **98** ROZ.

Optionally, petrol **95** ROZ can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91**. **92** or**93** ROZ petrol can be used (slight loss of power, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

! CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the engine and to the exhaust system.
- When petrol with a lower than the prescribed octane is used, only continue driving at mid-range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine. Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- **Lower** than **91** octane petrol should not be used, even in an emergency!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.

! CAUTION

Petrol additions (additives)
- Unleaded petrol complying with the EN 228 standard[1] meets all the conditions for problem-free engine operation. We therefore do not recommend mixing fuel additives into the petrol - risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.
- **The following additives may not be used - risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system!**
  - Additives with metal components (metallic additives), in particular with manganese and iron content.
  - Fuels with metallic content (e.g. LRP - lead replacement petrol).

i Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- The use of petrol with an octane rating higher than **95** ROZ in does not result in either a noticeable increase in power nor lower fuel consumption in vehicles for which unleaded petrol **95/min 92 or 93** ROZ is specified.
- On vehicles using the prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** ROZ, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** ROZ can lead to an increase in power and reduction in fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 248 first.

The correct grades of fuel for your vehicle are stated on a sticker affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 285 *on page 248*.

The vehicle can only be operated using **diesel fuel** that complies with the standard **EN 590**[2] and contains a **maximum** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[3].

Operating under different weather conditions
Use only diesel in accordance with the current or expected weather conditions. Ask the petrol station personnel whether the diesel fuel offered corresponds to these conditions.

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.
[2] In Germany DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590: 2004, in India IS 1460 / Bharat IV or in an emergency IS 1460 / Bharat III.
[3] In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the engine and to the exhaust system.

- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition!
- The biofuel **RME** must not be used!

CAUTION

Diesel fuel additives

- The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. Therefore, we recommend that you do not add any fuel additives to the diesel - - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.

Refuel CNG (compressed natural gas)

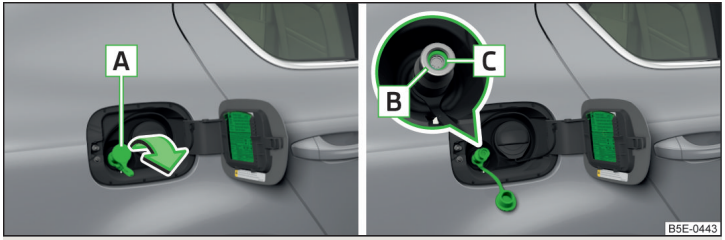


Fig. 288 **Natural gas filler tubes**

Read and observe and on page 248 first.

Refuel with natural gas under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » page 109.

Natural gas refuelling may vary from station to station. If refuelling with natural gas at a station is unfamiliar to you, get someone to instruct you or allow the fuelling operation to be carried out by the station staff.

Refuelling operation

› Open the fuel filler flap.
› Remove cap A » Fig. 288in the direction of the arrow and insert connector for the refuelling system into filler neck B.

The fuel tank is full when the compressor of the refuelling system automatically switches off.

› Check that sealing ring C » Fig. 288has remained inserted in filler neck B. If the sealing ring has slipped on the connector, reinsert it into the filler neck.
› Insert cap A into the filler neck and close the fuel filler flap until it locks into place.

The natural gas refuelling systems have an overfill protection relating to the outdoor temperature. At very high outside temperatures, it may happen that the gas tank may not be fully refuelled.

If the vehicle is parked directly after a refuelling operation, on restart the pointer of the gas gauge may not show exactly the same level as immediately after the filling process. This is not a leak in the system, but a reduction in pressure due to the cooling of the gas in the gas tank after refuelling.

The maximum lifetime of the gas tank is 20 years.

The capacity of the natural gas fuel tank is approximately **15 kg**.

WARNING

- Natural gas is highly explosive and highly flammable.
- When refuelling, never get into the vehicle. If you have to get into your vehicle in exceptional cases, touch a metal surface before you touch the filling coupling again. Otherwise, electrostatic discharging may occur - There is a risk of fire!

Note

During the filling process sounds are heard which are harmless. If you are unsure which service station staff to use, ask the petrol station staff.

CNG

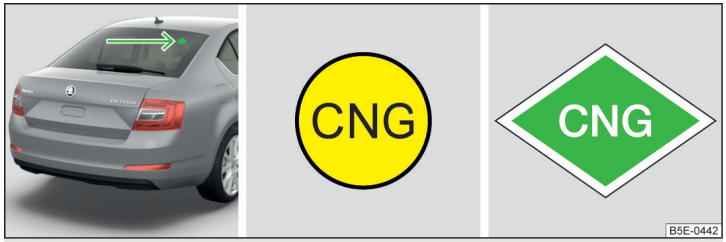


Fig. 289 **Position of the CNG label(s).**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 248 first.

A G-TEC-vehicle may be operated with CNG and petrol.

Positioning of the CNG sticker in natural gas vehicles » Fig. 289.

Automatic switching from natural gas to petrol operation - Automatic switching from natural gas to petrol operation takes place in the following situations (examples).
- With an empty gas tank or not enough pressure in the tank.
- After refuelling with natural gas.
- At very low surrounding temperatures.

To ensure the correct functioning of the fuel system, every 6 months the fuel tank for petrol should be run down until the warning light comes on.

Gas leak
If a gas leak is suspected (noticeable odour), proceed as follows.
- Stop the vehicle.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Extinguish cigarettes, switch off spark-producing or incendiary items and remove them from the vehicle.
- Open the doors and the boot lid to ventilate the vehicle sufficiently.
- Do not continue to drive if the odour persists.
- If it is not possible to leave an enclosed area with a vehicle with a gas leak (e.g. in a tunnel, underpass, garage, ferry, etc.), call the emergency services immediately.

Seek help from a specialist garage to correct the gas system fault.

In a traffic accident
If a gas leak is suspected in a traffic accident, proceed as follows.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Extinguish cigarettes, switch off spark-producing or incendiary items and remove them from the vehicle.
- Have all the occupants get out.
- Keep all persons away from the vehicle. We recommend standing at least 10 metres from the vehicle.
- Inform the emergency services that it is a natural gas vehicle.

Regular gas system checks
Regular gas system checks must be carried out in a specialist workshop on natural gas-powered vehicles. The vehicle owner is responsible for ensuring tests are conducted properly.

Every 2 years
- Check the filler cap.
- Check the condition of fuel filler tubes and the sealing ring in the fuel filler tubes, and clean the sealing ring if necessary.
- Check the gas system for leaks and carry out an examination of gas containers.

Every 20 years
- Replace the gas tank.

! WARNING
- Do not underestimate the smell of gas in the car or when refuelling - risk of fire, explosion and injury.
- The natural gas tanks in the vehicle must not be exposed to unwanted heat sources.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet 253
Engine compartment overview 254
Windscreen washer fluid 254

WARNING

Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – risk of fire!

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise risk of injury or fire. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment

- Stop the engine and remove the ignition key, on vehicles with the KESSY system, open the driver's door.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** the lever into the neutral position. For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment

- Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- Never touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may still turn suddenly about 10 minutes after switching off the ignition!
- Do not smoke in the vicinity of the engine and avoid the use of open flames or sparks.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- If it is necessary to work on the engine with the engine running, beware of **rotating engine parts and electrical plants** - There is a risk to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.

CAUTION

Only refill using fluids with the proper specification - There is risk of damage to the vehicle!

Note

- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.
- We recommend you have the operating fluids replaced by a specialist garage.

Opening and closing the bonnet

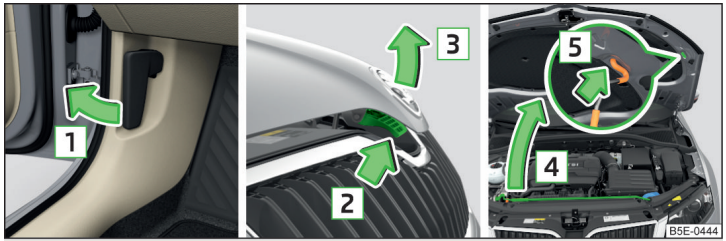


Fig. 290 **Open the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 253 first.

Open flap

› Ensure that the windscreen wipers are not raised away from the windscreen - There is risk of damage to the bonnet.
› Open the front door and pull the release lever below the dash panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 290.
› Press the release lever in the direction of arrow 2 and the bonnet will be unlocked.

› Raise the bonnet in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Drop down the bonnet lid from a height of about 20 cm applying light pressure until it clicks safely into place.

If the bonnet lid is not properly closed, the display of the instrument cluster will show a representation of a vehicle with an open bonnet lid.

WARNING

- Never drive with the bonnet lid not properly closed - risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the bonnet, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

Engine compartment overview

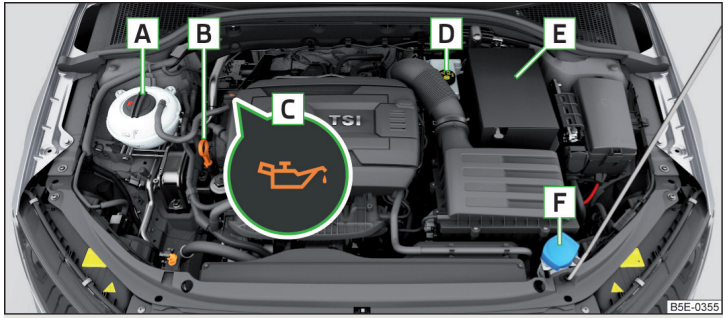


Fig. 291 **Arrangement (example) in the engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 253 first.

A	Coolant expansion reservoir	257
B	Engine oil dipstick	256
C	Engine oil filler opening	256
D	Brake fluid reservoir	257
E	Vehicle battery	258
F	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	254

Windscreen washer fluid

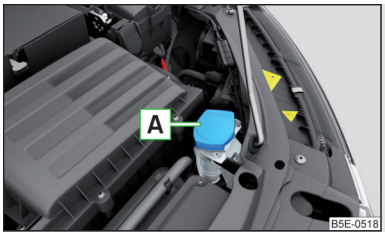


Fig. 292
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 253 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 292.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 4.7 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system[1].

Use a suitable windscreen washer fluid for the current or expected weather conditions. We recommend that you use windscreen washer fluid from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

CAUTION

- If the vehicle is equipped with a headlight cleaning system, then only use windscreen washer fluid types that do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights - otherwise there is a risk of damage to headlights.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid - otherwise the liquid transportation system might be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

[1] In some countries, 4.7 ltr. applies for both variants.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specification 255
Check and refill 256

The engine has been filled ex-factory with a high-grade oil that can be used throughout the year (except in extreme climate zones).

We recommend that the oil changes be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The engine oil should be changed at specified service intervals » page 242.

The engine uses up some oil, depending on driving style and operating conditions (up to 0.5 l / 1 000 km). Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 252.

CAUTION

Do not add any additives to the engine oil - risk of engine damage.

Note

We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Specification

Read and observe ! and ! on page 255 first.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.0 l./85 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.2 l./63 kW TSI	
1.4 l./110 kW TSI	
1.8 l./132 kW TSI	
2.0 l/162, 169 kW TSI	

Diesel engines	Specification
1.6 l/66, 81 kW TDI	VW 507 00
2.0 l/105, 110, 135 kW TDI	

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.0 l./85 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.2 l./63 kW TSI	
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	
1.4 l./110 kW TSI	
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	
1.8 l./132 kW TSI	
2.0 l/162, 169 kW TSI	

Diesel engines	Specification
1.6 l/66, 81 kW TDI	VW 507 00
2.0 l/105, 110, 135 kW TDI	

Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

CAUTION

- If no prescribed engine oil is available, then **max. 0.5 l** oil of the following specifications can be refilled.
  - Petrol engines: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - Diesel engines: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Check and refill

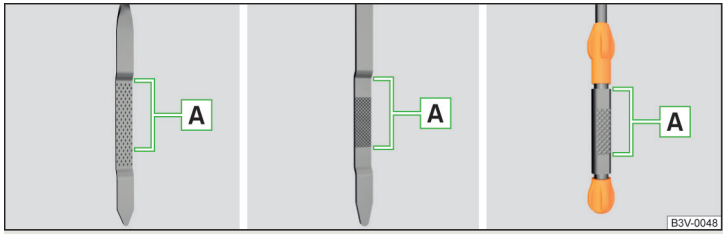


Fig. 293 **Dipstick variants**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 255 first.

Check and refill oil under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
› Pull the dipstick out and wipe with a clean cloth.
› Push the dipstick back to the stop and then pull it out again.
› Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in.

The oil level must lie in range A» Fig. 293. If the oil level is below range A, oil must be added.

Refilling

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening C » Fig. 291 *on page 254*.
› Add oil of the correct specification in portions of 0.5 litres» page 255.
› Check the oil level.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.

! CAUTION

▪ The oil level must never be below range A » Fig. 293there is a risk of damage to the engine as well as to the exhaust system.
▪ If a top up with oil is not possible or the oil level is above range A, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Note

An engine oil level which is too low is shown in the instrument cluster by the warning light illuminating and also indicated by the message » page 38. Nevertheless, we recommend checking the oil level on a regular basis using the dipstick.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking and refilling 257

The coolant helps to keep the engine temperature down, and consists of water and coolant additive (with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevent furring).

The proportion of coolant additive in the coolant must be 40 to 60 %.

The correct mix of water and coolant additive should be checked and if necessary corrected by a specialist garage.

! WARNING

▪ The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 252.
▪ Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurised - risk of scalding or injury from splashes of coolant!
▪ To protect against the coolant splashing, cover the cap with a cloth when opening.
▪ Coolant and coolant fumes are harmful - avoid contact with the coolant. If the coolant comes into contact with the eye or skin, wash the affected area with plenty of water for several minutes, and where appropriate seek medical help.

! CAUTION

Do not cover the radiator and install any parts (e.g auxiliary lights.) in front of the air intakes - There is a risk of the engine overheating.

Checking and refilling

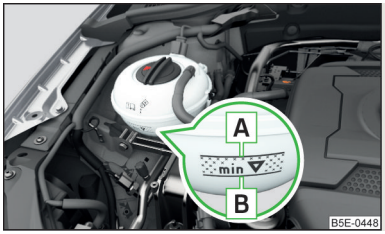


Fig. 294
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 256 first.

Check and refill coolant under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.

✓ The engine is not warm (if the engine is warm the result of the check may be wrong).

✓ The engine is turned off.

Check the coolant level - The coolant level must lie between the marks A and B» Fig. 294. If the coolant level is below the mark B, top up with coolant.

Refilling

The reservoir must always contain a small amount of coolant » !.

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir and unscrew the cap **carefully**.

› Always top up using coolant of the correct specification.

› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

The **specification** for the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 294.

If the specified coolant is not available, then refilling only with distilled or purified water, and get a specialist garage to correct the water-coolant additive mix as soon as possible.

! CAUTION

- If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could aerate - There is a risk of engine damage! Stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 294. The coolant could, when heated, be expelled from the cooling system - There is a risk of damage to the engine parts.
- If it is not possible to add coolant, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- A coolant additive which does not correspond to the correct specification can reduce the anti-corrosion effect of the cooling system - risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine.
- If distilled (purified) water has been used to top up, the coolant should be replaced by a specialist garage - risk of engine damage.
- A loss of coolant indicates **leaks** in the cooling system - risk of engine damage. Top up with coolant and then seek assistance from a specialist garage.

i Note

A coolant level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and shown by the relevant message » page 38. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Brake fluid

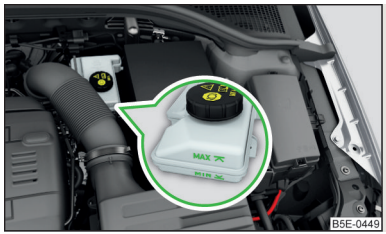


Fig. 295
Brake fluid reservoir

Check the brake fluid under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.

✓ The engine is turned off.

Check brake fluid level - The brake fluid level must lie between the markings "MIN" and "MAX"» Fig. 295.

Specification - The brake fluid must comply with the standard **VW 501 14** (this standard meets the requirements of FMVSS 116 DOT4).

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 252.
- If the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" » Fig. 295mark, this may be an indication of a leak in the brake system. Stop driving - There is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
- A low brake fluid level which is too low is indicated by the warning light being shown on the display of the instrument cluster as well as the corresponding message» page 33. We still recommend inspecting the brake fluid level in the reservoir from time to time.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Check condition 259
Charging 259
Disconnect/reconnect and change 260

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery
The on-board power supply system tries to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging in the following ways when it is subject to heavy loading.

- ▸ By increasing the engine idle speed.
- ▸ Through the power limitation of certain loads.
- ▸ By switching off some loads(heated seats, heated rear window) for as long as necessary.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection!
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery!
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery!

WARNING

Battery acid is highly corrosive - it can cause injury, chemical burns or poisoning! Corrosive vapours in the air irritate and damage the respiratory tract and the eyes. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Get medical assistance without delay.
- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent (e.g. children).
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.

WARNING

Working on the car battery may cause explosion, fire, injury or chemical burn! The following guidelines must be observed.

- Do not smoke, use open flames or light or transmitting devices.
- **A discharged vehicle battery may freeze slightly.** Never charge up a frozen or thawed vehicle battery. Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery.
- Do not connect the battery terminals, bridging the two poles will cause a short circuit.

CAUTION

Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – There is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Check condition

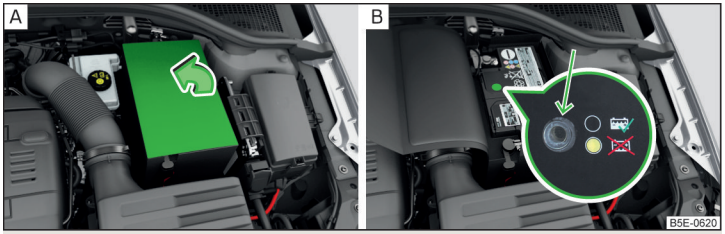


Fig. 296 **Vehicle battery: Open the cover / acid level indicator**

Read and observe and on page 258 first.

The battery condition is checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Check the acid level

For car batteries with acid level indicator, acidity can be checked on the basis of a colour display. In vehicle batteries with the label **"AGM"** there is no acid level examination.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle battery may be provided with a cover, this can be opened in the direction of arrow» Fig. 296 - A.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully tap on the indicator before carrying out the check » Fig. 296 - B.

Black colour – electrolyte level is correct.

Colourless or light yellow colour – electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Battery discharge

If frequent short journeys are made, the vehicle battery does not recharge sufficiently.

The battery capacity decreases at low temperatures.

If the vehicle is not used for longer than 3 to 4 weeks, then disconnect the negative terminal⊖ of the battery or charge the battery constantly with a very low charging current.

Charging

Read and observe and on page 258 first.

Only charge the battery when the ignition and all consumers are switched off.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

Charging

› For vehicles **with** the START-STOP system or auxiliary heater ⊕, connect the -terminal of the charger on the battery's ⊕-pole, ⊖ the -terminal of the charger to the ground point of the engine » page 272.
› For vehicles **without** the START-STOPsystem or auxiliary heating, connect the charger terminals to the corresponding battery poles (⊕ to⊕,⊖ to⊖).
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
› After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Disconnect the terminals of the charger from the vehicle battery.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

WARNING

- When charging the vehicle battery, hydrogen is released - risk of explosion. An explosion can be caused through sparking while unclamping or loosening the cable plug.
- So-called "quick-charging" of the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge. Therefore, have"Quick loading" carried out by a specialist garage.

Disconnect/reconnect and change

Read and observe ! and ! on page 258 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and size as the original battery.

We recommend you have the battery**replaced** by a specialist garage.

› To **disconnect**, switch off the ignition and disconnect the negative terminal first ⊖, then disconnect the positive terminal⊕.
› When **reconnecting** the battery, reconnect the positive terminal first⊕, then connect the negative terminal ⊖.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Power windows	» page 61
Panorama sliding/tilting roof	» page 62
Sun screen	» page 63
Time settings	» page 42

! CAUTION

▪ Disconnect the battery only with the ignition and consumers turned off - There is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
▪ Before disconnecting the battery, close the electric tailgate, all the windows, the sliding / tilting roof and the electric sunshade - otherwise malfunctions of equipment elements may occur.
▪ Under no circumstances mix up the charging cables – There is a risk of fire.

i Note

After disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of the vehicle is guaranteed.

Wheels

Wheels and tyres

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Advice on tyre/wheel usage 260
Tyre pressure 261
Tire wear and wheel change 262
Spare wheel 262
Spare wheel 262
Tyre marking 263

Advice on tyre/wheel usage

During the first 500 km, **new tyres** do not offer optimum grip; appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Tyres with the deeper profiles should always be fitted to the front wheels.

Rims and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheels and tyres should always be **stored** in a cool, dry and dark place. The tyres themselves should be stored vertically.

Tyre life
Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. We recommend that you do not use tyres that are more than 6 years old.

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the **inside**). For example, **DOT ... 10 16...** means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10. week of 2016.

Tyre damage
We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges etc.) on a regular basis.

Remove any foreign objects in the tyre's profile immediately (e.g. small stones).

Foreign bodies which **have penetrated into the tyre** (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed and help should be sought from a specialist garage.

Fitting new tyres
Only fit approved radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When fitting new tyres, the tyres must be replaced axle by axle.

Unidirectional tyres
The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The specified running direction must be strictly adhered to, otherwise the following tyre characteristics may be degraded.
- Driving stability.
- Traction.
- Tyre noise and tyre wear.

WARNING
- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about their condition and age - risk of accidents.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident.

CAUTION
- The tyres must be protected from contact with substances (e.g. oil, grease and fuel) which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend having them checked out in a specialist garage.
- Do not use rims with ground or polished surfaces in winter conditions - there is a risk of rim damage (e.g through salt spreading).

Note
- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use tyres, snow chains and full wheel trims from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Tyre pressure

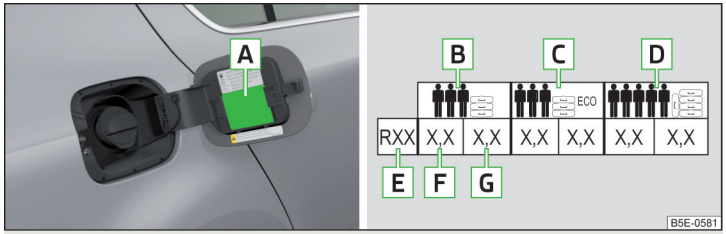


Fig. 297 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres**

The prescribed tyre inflation is on the sticker with pictograms A» Fig. 297 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.
- B Inflation pressure for half load
- C Inflation pressure for environmentally friendly operation (slightly lower fuel consumption and emissions)
- D Inflation pressure for full load
- E Tyre diameter in inches
  This information serves merely as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a list of shared tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in so-called COC document).
- F Tyre pressure value on the front axle
- G Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

Checking the tyre pressures
Check the tyre pressure (including that of the emergency or spare wheel) at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure on warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved each time the pressures are changed » page 229.

WARNING

- Do not drive with incorrect tyre pressure, there is a risk of an accident.
- In the event of very rapid pressure loss (e.g. in the event of tyre damage) an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking - risk of accident.

Note

The declaration of conformity (the COC document) can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner [1].

Tire wear and wheel change

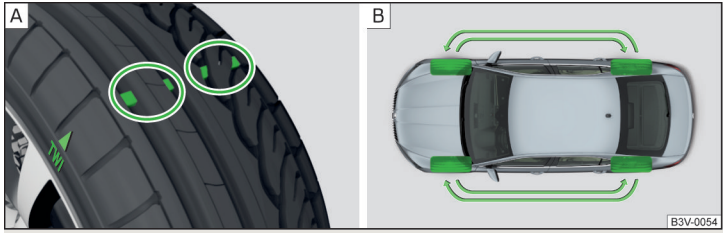


Fig. 298 **Tyre wear indicator / wheel change**

Tyre wear increases in the following circumstances.

- Incorrect tyre pressures.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration / braking).
- Incorrect wheel balancing (you should have the wheels balanced after changing/repair tyres or if the steering "is drifting").
- Wheel alignment errors.

There are **wear indicator markers** in the tyre profiles, indicating whether the minimum permissible tread depth has been reached» Fig. 298 - A. A tyre should be regarded as worn out when this indicator is flush with the tread. Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI" and/or other symbols (e.g. △), identify the position of the wear indicators.

To ensure uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you **change** the **wheels** every 10 000 km, in line with the schedule» Fig. 298 - -B.

WARNING

- Change the tyres at the latest when they are worn down to the wear indicators - risk of accident.
- Faulty wheel alignment affects handling - There is a risk of an accident.
- Unusual vibrations or the vehicle"pulling" to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. Reduce speed and stop! If there are no external signs of tyre damage, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Spare wheel

The size of the spare wheel is identical to that of the vehicle factory installed wheels.

After changing the spare wheel, the tyre pressure must be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 229.

WARNING

- If, you get a puncture and a spare tyre has to be mounted with opposite direction of rotation, then drive carefully. The tyre no longer retains its optimal characteristics in this situation.
- If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.

Spare wheel

Only use this emergency spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is **not intended for permanent use**.

A warning label is always placed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.

- Do not cover the warning sign.
- Be specially attentive when driving.
- Inflate the temporary spare wheel to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle» page 261 (the prescribed tyre pressure of the spare wheel R 18 is 4.2 bar).

[1] Only valid for some countries and some models.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 229.

WARNING

- Never drive with more than one temporary spare wheel mounted!
- Avoid full throttle acceleration, sharp braking and fast cornering when driving with the temporary spare wheel.
- Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.
- Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

Tyre marking

Explanation of tyre markings - e.g. 195/65 R 15 91 T

195	Tyre width in mm
65	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
15	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	Load index
T	Speed symbol

Load index - indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre

Load index	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95
Load (In kg)	560	580	600	615	630	650	670	690

Speed symbol - indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in a given category

Speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270	300

[1] Valid in certain countries.

WARNING

Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** and **speed** for the tyres fitted – risk of accident.

Operating in winter conditions

All-year (or "winter") tyres

All-year or "winter" tyres (indicated by an **M+S** or a mountain peak/snowflake symbol ⛄) to improve the performance of the vehicle in winter conditions.

To get the best possible driving characteristics, all-year or "winter" tyres, with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm on all four wheels, should be fitted.

If "winter" tyres are mounted, summer tyres should be fitted again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

Speed symbol
All-year or "winter" tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol ⛄) of a lower speed category than listed in the vehicle's technical documentation can be used provided that the maximum permissible speed for these tyres is not exceeded even if the maximum possible speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for all-season or "Winter" tires can be adjusted in the infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → **Tyres**.

If the vehicle has all-season or "winter" tires of a lower speed category then the specified maximum speed of the vehicle (referring to tyres that have not been delivered by the factory, a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category provided for the mounted tyres must be fixed in the interior of the vehicle in a constantly visible place in the driver's field of vision. The warning label (sticker) can be replaced by setting the maximum value of the speed category supplied for the mounted tyres in Infotainment[1]. This specification defines the maximum vehicle speed with mounted all-season or "winter"tyres that may not be exceeded.

Snow chains

The snow chains improve handling in wintry road conditions. ▸

Remove the full wheel trims before fitting the snow chains » page 267.

Snow chains must only be fitted on the front wheels and are applicable only to the following wheel / tyre combinations.

Octavia

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 15[a)]	43 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 15[a)]	47 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 16[b)]	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 16[b)]	50 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17[b)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[b)]	48 mm	205/50 R17

[a)] Only use snow chains with links and locks which are not larger than 13 mm.
[b)] Only use snow chains with links and locks which are not larger than 12 mm.

Octavia Scout

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16[a)]	50 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17[a)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 16[a)]	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 16[b)]	48 mm	205/60 R16
6J x 17[a)]	48 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[b)]	48 mm	205/55 R17

[a)] Only use snow chains with links and locks which are not larger than 12 mm.
[b)] Only use snow chains with links and locks which are not larger than 9 mm.

Octavia RS

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 17[a)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[a)]	48 mm	205/50 R17

[a)] Only use snow chains with links and locks which are not larger than 12 mm.

WARNING

Do not use chains on snow and ice-free routes - the handling would be impaired and there is a risk of damage to the tyres.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle ____ 265
Location of reflective vest ____ 265
Fire extinguisher ____ 265
Vehicle tool kit ____ 266

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle

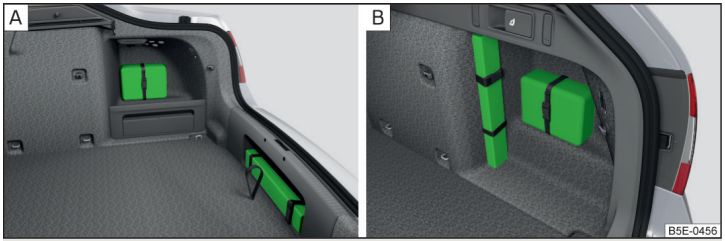


Fig. 299 **Placement of first aid kits and the warning triangle: Variant 1 / Variant 2**

The following information applies to the first-aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Placing the first-aid kit
The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 299.

Placing of the warning triangle - variant 1
The warning triangle can be inserted into the recess under the loading edge and secured with the fastener tape» Fig. 299 A. Natural gas vehicles have the warning triangle located under the floor mat in the luggage compartment.

Warning triangle – version 2
The first-aid box can be attached to the right-hand side of the boot using a strap» Fig. 299 B.

WARNING
Properly secure the first aid kit and the warning triangle, or there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Location of reflective vest



Fig. 300 **Storage compartment for the reflective vest**

The reflective vest can be stored in brackets under the front seats » Fig. 300.

Fire extinguisher



Fig. 301 **Release the fire extinguisher**

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

- To **remove** the fire extinguisher, release the safety catches on the two belts in the direction of arrow» Fig. 301and remove the fire extinguisher.
- To **secure**, place the fire extinguisher back in the mount and secure with the belts.

The Owner´s Manual is attached to the fire extinguisher.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. After this date, the correct function of the device is not guaranteed.

WARNING

Always properly secure the fire extinguisher, there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Vehicle tool kit

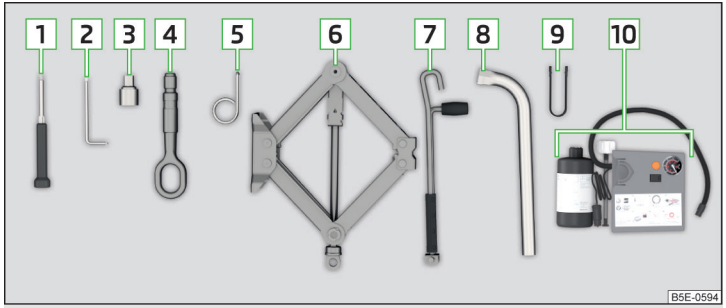


Fig. 302 **Vehicle tool kit**

The box with the tool kit is located in the storage compartment for the spare wheel and may be secured with tape, depending on specification.

Depending on the equipment variant, the vehicle tool kit may not contain all of the following components.

1. Screwdriver
2. Key for removing and installing the tail light
3. Top section for the anti-theft wheel bolts
4. Towing eye
5. Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6. Jack with sign
7. Crank for the jack
8. Wheel wrench
9. Extraction pliers for the wheel bolt caps
10. Breakdown kit

WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift other vehicles or loads with it – there is a risk of injury.
- Always stow the tool safely in the box and make sure that it is attached with the belt to the spare wheel - otherwise it could cause injury to the occupants if breaking suddenly or colliding with another vehicle.

CAUTION

Screw the jack back to its starting position prior to putting it back in its box - Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the box.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Preliminary work

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

› Park the vehicle as far as possible away from the traffic flow - choose a place with a flat and firm surface.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission** select 1. **gear**.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
› Have **all the occupants get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road while the wheel is being changed (they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance).
› Uncouple any trailers.

Changing a wheel

› Take out the emergency or spare wheel » page 267.
› Remove the full wheel trim» page 267or caps» page 268.
› Loosen the wheel bolts » page 269 ».

› Jack up the vehicle» page 269 until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench ("pulling crossways")» page 269.
› Replace the wheel trim» page 267and caps» page 268.

When fitting a wheel with unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 261.

All bolts must be clean and must turn easily. If screws are corroded and difficult to move, these must be replaced.

! WARNING

▪ Undo the wheel bolts just a little (about one turn), provided the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come loose and fall off – There is a risk of an injury.
▪ Under no circumstances must the bolts be greased or oiled - There is a risk of an accident.

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Stow the replaced wheel in the well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and secure with a locking screw.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
› Check tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary and, with vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 229.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible. The prescribed tightening torque is **120 Nm**.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

! WARNING

Tightening torque which is too high can damage the threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim. Where tightening torque is too low, the wheels may become loose while driving - risk of accident. Therefore drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Removing/stowing the emergency or spare wheel

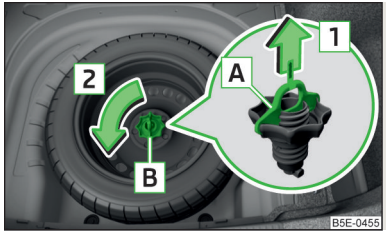


Fig. 303
Take out the wheel

The wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with special bolt B» Fig. 303.

Take out the wheel
› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Remove locking A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 303.
› Unscrew the screw B in direction of arrow 2 and remove the wheel.

Store wheel away
› Place the wheel into the wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw in nut B in the opposite direction to arrow 2 » Fig. 303.
› Insert locking A in the opposite direction to which arrow 1 is pointing.
› Place the box with the tool kit back inside the wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.

Full wheel trim

Remove trim
› Hang the clamps for removing the full wheel trims on the edge of the full wheel trim.

› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Install trim

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

The position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is indicated by means of a symbol on the back of the wheel trim supplied ex-factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories. If using the anti-theft wheel bolt, it should be fitted at this point » !.

WARNING

We recommend that you use hub caps from ŠKODA Original Accessories. A sufficient air supply may not be able to be guaranteed with other wheel trims to cool the braking system - there is a risk of an accident.

CAUTION

- If the wheel trim is positioned outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.
- Only use manual pressure and do not hit the full wheel trim – there is a risk of damaging the trim.

Note

We recommend that you use hub caps from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 304
Remove the cap

› To **remove the cap** insert the extraction pliers as far as they will go on the cap and pulling them out in the direction of arrow » Fig. 304.
› To **install**, insert the cap onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

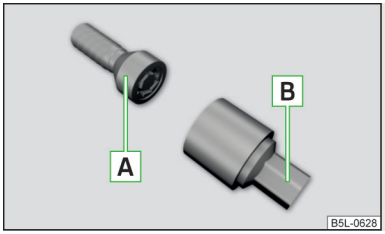


Fig. 305
Anti-theft wheel bolt and attachment

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. This can only be B.with the attachment» Fig. 305 **loosened / tightened**.

› Insert the attachment B » Fig. 305as far as it will go on the anti-theft wheel bolt A.
› Insert the key as far as it will go onto attachment B and loosen / tighten the wheel bolt.
› Remove the attachment.

The attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle in case of a possible wheel change!

For wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories, the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

Note

The attachment and the anti-theft wheel bolts are provided with a code number. A replacement attachment can be ordered from ŠKODA Genuine Accessories using this.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 306
Loosening the wheel bolts

› Insert the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop. Use the associated attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts » Fig. 305 *on page 268*.
› To **loosen the screws**,grasp the key end and turn the screw about **one** turn rotation in the direction of the arrow» Fig. 306.
› To**tighten the screws**grasp the key end and turn the screw about against the direction of the arrow» Fig. 306until it is tight.

! WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing - There is a risk of injury.

Raising the vehicle

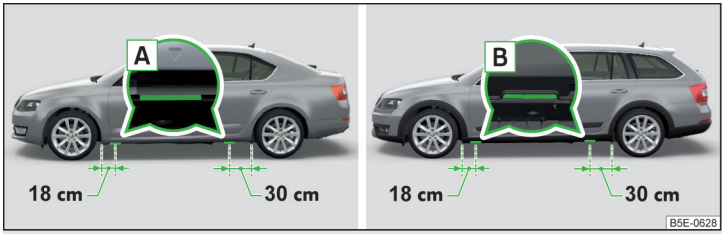


Fig. 307 **Runner connectors for the jack: Variant 1 / Variant 2**

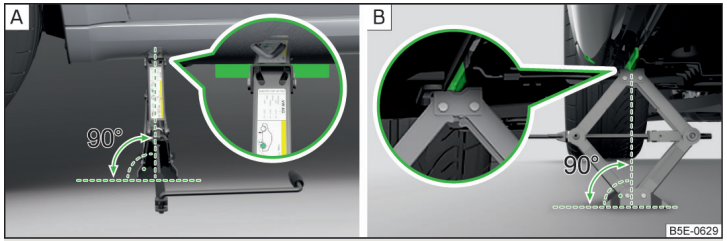


Fig. 308 **Positioning the jack**

Before the vehicle is raised, please take note of the safety instructions » !.

The jack from the vehicle tool kit must be used in order to raise the vehicle. Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre.

The runner connectors are located on the lower sill **variant 1** A or. **Variant 2** B » Fig. 307.

› Insert the crank 7 into the mount on the jack 6 » page 266.
› Position the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack will fit in the jacking point when raised» Fig. 308 - A.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its pawl covers the jacking point» Fig. 308- B.
› Raise the vehicle until the wheel is a little off the floor.

! WARNING

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of injury.
- Ensure the vehicle cannot unexpectedly roll away.
- Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip.
  - Place a wide and stable base material under the jack if on a loose surfaces (e.g. gravel).
  - Place an anti-slip base material (e.g. a rubber mat) under the jack if on a smooth surface (e.g. cobblestones).
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts (e.g. arms or legs) under the vehicle while the vehicle is raised.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly positioned against the bar of the lower beam - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Breakdown kit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description of the breakdown kit ____ 270
Preparing to use the breakdown kit ____ 271
Sealing and inflating tyres ____ 271
Information on driving with repaired tyres ____ 271

The following information applies for the breakdown kit supplied ex-factory.

The breakdown kit can be used to seal punctures with a diameter of up to about 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit as soon as possible, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre (e.g. nails).

Do not use the breakdown kit in the following cases.
- The rim is damaged.
- The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the instruction manual of the tyre filling bottle with sealant.
- Tyre punctures greater than 4 mm.
- Damage to the tyre wall.
- The use-by date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING

- If there is skin contact with the sealant wash the affected area immediately.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

Description of the breakdown kit

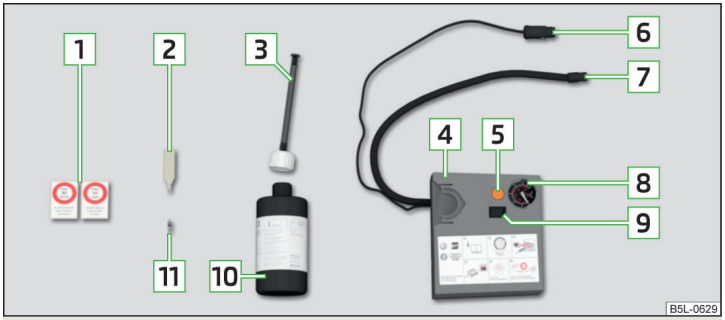


Fig. 309 **Description of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 270 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

1. Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
2. Valve remover
3. Inflation hose with plug
4. Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor delivered with the vehicle)
5. Button for tyre pressure reduction
6. 12 volt cable connector
7. Tyre inflation hose
8. Tyre inflation pressure indicator
9. ON and OFF switch
10. Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11. Replacement valve core

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Preparing to use the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 270 first.

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before undertaking a wheel repair on a road.

› Park the vehicle as far as possible away from the traffic flow - choose a place with a flat and firm surface.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission** select 1. **gear**.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
› Have **all the occupants get out**. While the repair is being carried out, the passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance).
› Uncouple any trailers.

Sealing and inflating tyres

Read and observe ! on page 270 first.

Sealing

› Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
› Insert the valve remover 2 » Fig. 309 *on page 270* on the valve insert, so that the valve insert fits into the slot of the valve remover.
› Unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean base (rag, paper etc.).
› Forcefully shake bottle 10 several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflater bottle 10. The film on the bottle cap is pierced.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and insert the bottle onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
› Screw in the valve insert with the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the tyre inflation hose 7 » Fig. 309 *on page 270* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, set the lever in the neutral position.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Start the engine.
› Plug the connector 6 into 12 volt socket » page 90.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Once tyre inflation pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar has been reached, turn off the air compressor. Maximum run time of 6 minutes » !.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 7 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› Stick the corresponding sticker 1 on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.

At a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar, the journey can be continued at a maximum speed of 80 km/h or 50 mph.

! WARNING

- If the tire does not inflate at least. 2.0 bar, the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. STOP Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – risk of burning.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor if it has been running for as much as 6 minutes – risk of damage to the compressor! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Information on driving with repaired tyres

Read and observe ! on page 270 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› You cannot properly seal the tyre using the breakdown kit. STOP **Stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value » page 261.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre. The following guidelines must therefore be observed.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle ____ 272

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 252.
- When handling the vehicle battery, the following warnings must be observed » page 258.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle –There is a risk of explosion and injury!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – There is a risk of explosion and caustic burns!

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

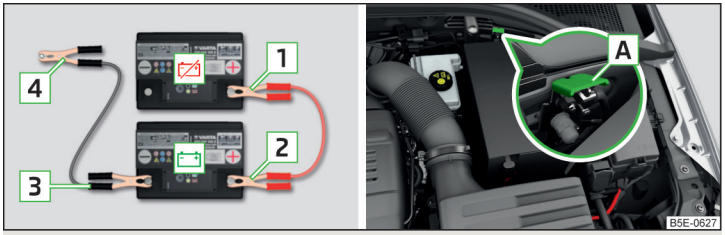


Fig. 310 **Jump-starting: - Discharged battery, - power-supplying battery / ground point of the engine for the START-STOP system**

Read and observe ! on page 272 first.

If, because of a discharged battery, it is not possible to start the engine, the battery of another vehicle can be used to start the engine. To do this, jump-start cables are required which have a sufficiently large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps.

The **rated voltage** of the two batteries must be 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the power-supplying battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged battery.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the power-supplying battery.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the power-supplying battery.
› For vehicles **with** the START-STOPsystem, attach clamp 4 to the ground point of the engine A » Fig. 310.
› For vehicles **without** the START-STOPsystem, attach clamp 4 to a solid metal part firmly attached to the engine block or directly to the engine block.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Initiate the starting process in the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start within 10 s, then cancel the starting procedure and repeat after half a minute.
› Remove the jump-start cables exactly in the **reverse** sequence as for attaching.

WARNING

- Never clamp the jump cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery - There is a risk of explosion.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Position the jump cables so that they cannot be caught in rotating parts in the engine compartment - danger of injuries and the risk of vehicle damage.

Towing the vehicle

Information about the towing process

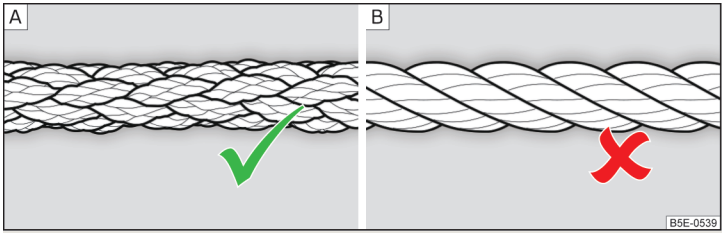


Fig. 311 **Braided tow ropes/spiral tow rope**

To tow with a tow rope, only use a braided synthetic fibre rope» Fig. 311 - A» !.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the**towing eyes at the front** » page 274,**towing eyes at the rear**» page 274or to the**towing device of the trailer device** » page 230.

Conditions for towing.

✓ **Cars with automatic gearboxes must not be towed with the rear wheels raised - there is a risk of gearbox damage!**

✓ If the gearbox has no oil, your vehicle must be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.

✓ The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

✓ The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

Driver of the tow vehicle

› On vehicles with **manual transmission**, engage gear slowly when starting.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, accelerate with particular care.
› Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› If possible, the vehicle should be towed with the engine running. The brake booster and power steering only operate if the engine is running, otherwise much greater force has to be applied to the brake pedal and more power has to be expended for steering.
› If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel does not lock and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Keep the tow rope taut at all times during the towing procedure.

WARNING

- Spiral tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 311- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - There is a risk of an accident.
- The tow rope should not be twisted - risk of accident.

CAUTION

- Do not tow-start the engine – There is a risk of damaging the engine. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 272, *Jump-starting*.
- For off-road towing manoeuvres, there is a risk to both vehicles that the fasteners may become overloaded and damaged.

Note

We recommend that you use a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Front towing eye



Fig. 312 **Remove cap / install towing eye**

Cap removal/fitting

› To **remove**, press down on the cap in the direction of arrow 1 and remove it in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 312.

› To **fit** it, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› To **fit**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 312 until it clicks into place» !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› To **remove**it, unscrew the towing eye in the opposite direction to arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be firmly in place, otherwise the towing eye could break whilst being towed.

Towing eye rear

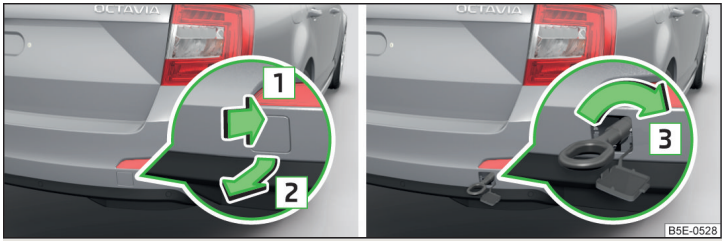


Fig. 313 **Remove cap / install towing eye - Variant 1**

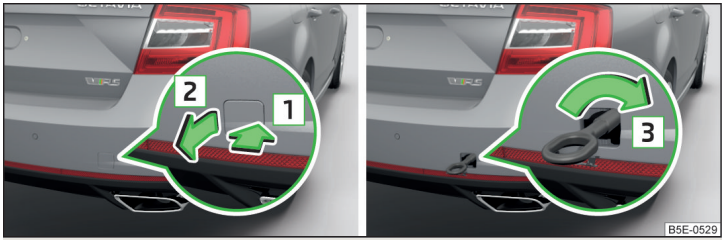


Fig. 314 **Remove cap / install towing eye - Variant 2**

Cap removal/fitting

› To **remove**, press down on the cap in the direction of arrow 1 and remove it in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 313.

› To **fit** it, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› To **install**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 313 » Fig. 314until it clicks into place» !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› To **remove**it, unscrew the towing eye in the opposite direction to arrow 3.

Vehicles with a tow hitch
For vehicles with factory-fitted towing device, at the back there is no mount for a screw-in towing eye. Use the detachable ball rod for towing » page 230, *Hitch*.

WARNING
The towing eye must always be firmly in place, otherwise the towing eye could break whilst being towed.

Remote - replacing battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Remote control key ____ 275
Remote control of the auxiliary heating ____ 275

CAUTION
- The replacement battery must correspond to the original specification.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.

Note
- We recommend you have the battery replaced by a specialist garage.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Remote control key



Fig. 315 **Remove cover/take out battery**

Read and observe ! on page 275 first.

› Pop out the key bit.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 315 with your thumb or by using a flat screwdriver in region B.
› Open the battery in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 2 and install a new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the key after replacing the battery » page 55.

Remote control of the auxiliary heating

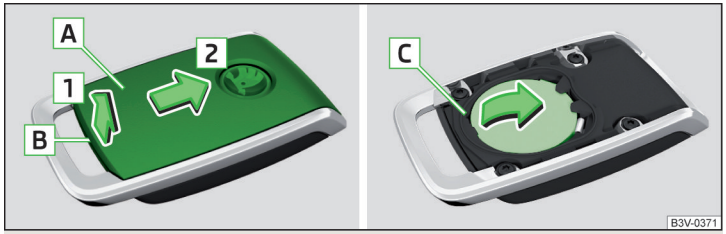


Fig. 316 **Radio remote control: Battery cover**

Read and observe ! on page 275 first.

› Use a thin screwdriver to remove the cover A in the area B» Fig. 316.
› Open the cover in the direction of arrow 1 and push out in the direction of arrow 2.
› Use the screwdriver to remove and replace the battery in the area C.
› Insert the battery cover in the opposite direction to arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

Emergency unlocking / locking of doors

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door 276
Locking the door without locking cylinders 276
Unlock the boot lid 276
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 277

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

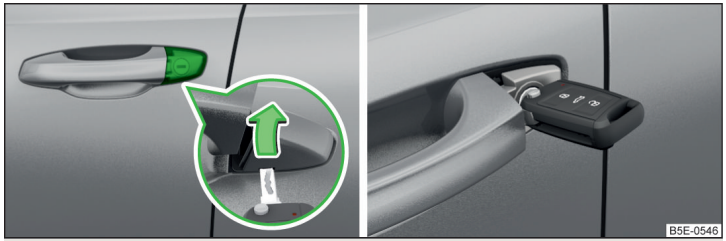


Fig. 317 **Handle on the driver's door: Open lock cover / lock cylinder with key**

The driver's door can be emergency unlocked / emergency locked using the key via the lock cylinder.

› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Insert the key into the recess on the lower side of the cover and fold up the cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 317.
› Release the door handle.
› For vehicles with**LHD**,insert the key with the fold-out key bit **with the buttons facing upwards** » Fig. 317into the lock cylinder and unlock/lock the vehicle.
› For vehicles with **RHD**, insert the key with the fold-out key bit **with the buttons facing downwards** into the lock and unlock/lock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Replace the cover.

CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without locking cylinders

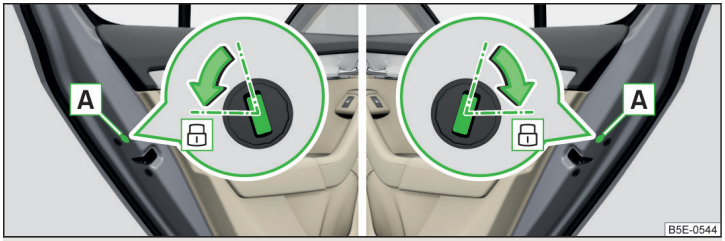


Fig. 318 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

› Open the corresponding back door remove the trim A » Fig. 318.
› Insert the key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (spring-loaded position).
› Replace the cover A.

After closing, the door is locked.

Unlock the boot lid

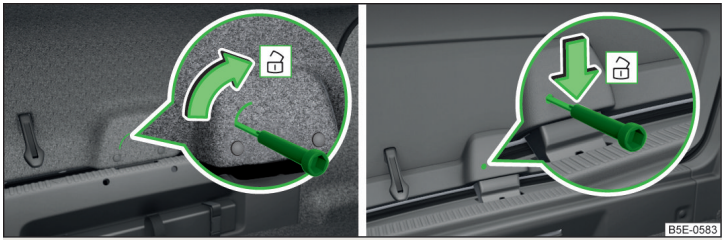


Fig. 319 **Unlock Flap: Variant 1 / Variant 2**

The boot lid can be unlocked manually from inside the vehicle.

› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the recess or the opening in the trim» Fig. 319 as far as the stop.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking



Fig. 320 **Remove / release the selector lever**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Open the stowage compartment in the front centre console.
› Grab hold of the cover A in the area of the arrows and carefully raise it forwards in the direction of the arrow 1 and then backwards » Fig. 320.
› Press on the yellow plastic part in the direction of arrow 2, simultaneously press the lock button in the selector lever handle and put the lever in position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

CAUTION

Make sure when lifting not to damage cover parts by the screwdriver in the shift lever environment.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades ____ 277
Replacing the rear window wiper blade ____ 278

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades



Fig. 321
Setting the service position for the wiper arms



Fig. 322 **Changing the front windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 277 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blades, close the bonnet and put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Setting the service position
› Switch the ignition on and off again.
› Push the lever in the direction of arrow» Fig. 321within 10 seconds and hold for approximately 2 seconds.

Removing the wiper blade
› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 322.

› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Grip the wiper arm and press securing latch A down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Slide the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 321.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

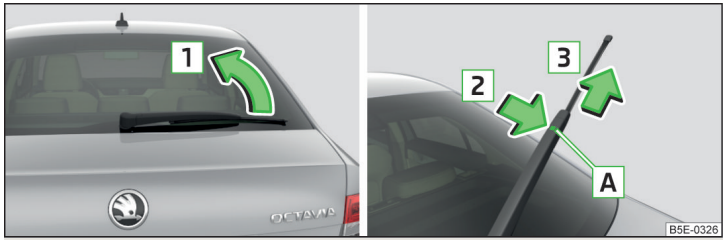


Fig. 323 **Changing the rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 277 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 323.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Grip the wiper arm and press securing latch A down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Slide the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

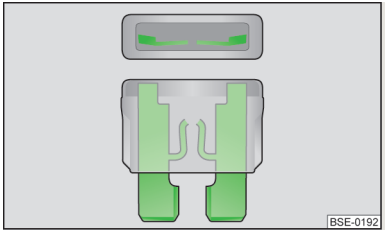


Fig. 324
Blown fuse

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dashboard - LHD 279
Fuses in the dashboard - RHD 279
Fuse assignment in the dashboard 280
Fuses in the engine compartment 281
Fuse assignment in engine compartment 281

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. A blown fuse is recognisable from the melted-through metal strip » Fig. 324.

! WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 252.

! CAUTION

- Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a newly inserted fuse again blows after a short time, then seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- "Do not repair" the fuses and do not replace them with stronger fuses - There is a risk of fire and damage to another electrical system.

i Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse. Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dashboard - LHD

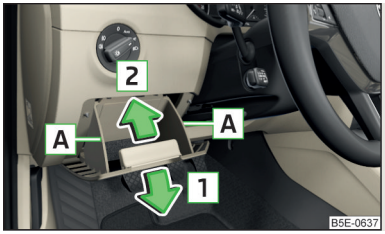


Fig. 325
Storage compartment on the driver's side

Read and observe ! and ! on page 278 first.

In left-hand drive, the fuse box is located on the driver side behind the storage compartment.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Open the storage box on the driver's side.
› Hold the stacker laterally in the region A and open by pulling in the direction of arrow 1 (A greater force is required to open) » Fig. 325.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment » Fig. 328 *on page 281*.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Close the compartment by pushing in the direction of arrow 2.

Fuses in the dashboard - RHD

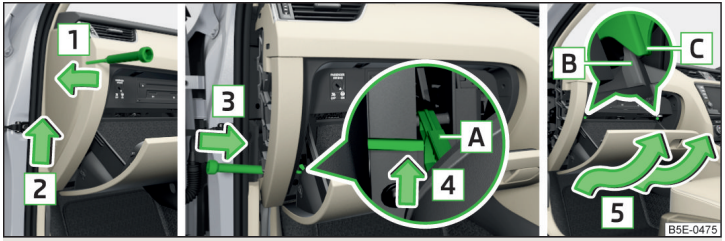


Fig. 326 **Storage compartment on the front passenger side**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 278 first.

In right-hand drive, the fuse box is located on the passenger side behind the storage compartment.

Fold down the storage compartment and replace the fuse

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Insert a screwdriver under the side cover » Fig. 326.
› Unlock the cover in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Push the cover out in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Open the storage compartment.
› Insert a screwdriver from the side into the dash panel in the direction of arrow 3.
› Use the screwdriver to unlock the brake rod A of the storage compartment in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment » Fig. 328 *on page 281*.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.

Fold back the storage compartment

› Move the stop buffer B of the storage compartment behind the brackets C » Fig. 326.
› Push in the storage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 5.
› Insert the brake rod and lock it against the arrow 4 with a screwdriver.
› Push in the side cover against the direction of the arrow 2.
› Press the side cover fully against the direction of the arrow 1.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuse assignment in the dashboard

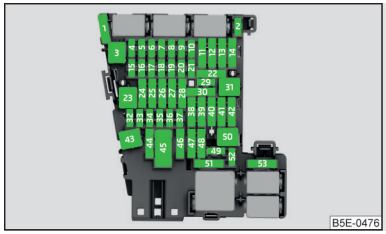


Fig. 327
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 278 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Not assigned
3	Voltage stabilizer for taxi vehicles
4	Not assigned
5	Databus
6	Sensor Alarm
7	Air conditioning, heating, recipient of the wireless remote control for auxiliary heating, selector lever of the automatic transmission
8	Light switch, rain sensor, diagnostic socket
9	All-wheel drive
10	Infotainment screen
11	Belt tensioner - driver's side
12	Infotainment
13	Heated rear seats
14	Air blower for air conditioning,heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	Phonebox, Wireless phone charging
17	Instrument cluster, emergency call
18	Reversing camera
19	KESSY
20	Operating lever underneath the steering wheel
21	Adaptive Shock absorber
22	Trailer device - electrical outlet
23	Light - right
24	Panoramic tilt / slide sunroof
25	Central locking- front left door, window - left, exterior mirrors - Heating, fold-in function, setting the mirror surface
26	Heated front seats
27	Music amplifier
28	Towing hitch - left lighting
29	CNG relay
30	Not assigned
31	Light - left
32	Parking aid (Park Assist)
33	Airbag switch for hazard warning lights
34	TCS, ESC, Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator, air conditioning, reversing light switch, mirror with automatic blackout, START-STOP, heated rear seats, 230 volt plug, Sport sound generator
35	Headlamp levelling, diagnostic connector, camera, radar
36	Headlight right
37	Headlight left
38	Towing hitch - right lighting
39	Central - front right door, window lifter - right, right Mirrors - Heating, fold-in function, setting the mirror surface
40	12-Volt power socket
41	Belt tensioner - front passenger side
42	Central - rear doors, headlamp washers, washer
43	Xenon headlights, ambient lighting
44	Trailer device - electrical outlet
45	Electrically adjustable seats
46	230 volt power outlet
47	Rear window wiper
48	Not assigned
49	Engine starting, clutch pedal switch

No.	Consumer
50	Opening the boot lid
51	Multi-function unit for taxi vehicles
52	Voltage stabiliser for taxi vehicles
53	Rear window heating

Fuses in the engine compartment

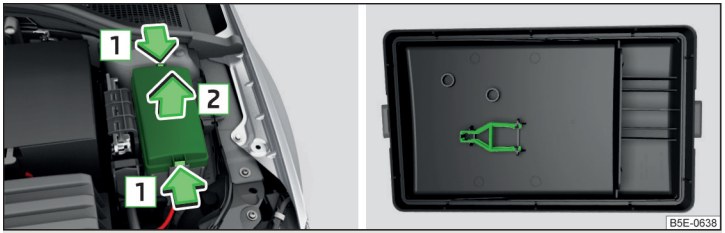


Fig. 328 **Fuse panel cover: Removing cover / plastic clip for fuses**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 278 first.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Press together the lock buttons of the cover simultaneously in the direction of arrow 1 and remove the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 328.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box» Fig. 328.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Replace the cover, push the lock buttons of the cover together and lock.

! CAUTION

The cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be used correctly, otherwise water may penetrate into the fuse box – there is a danger of damage to the vehicle!

Fuse assignment in engine compartment

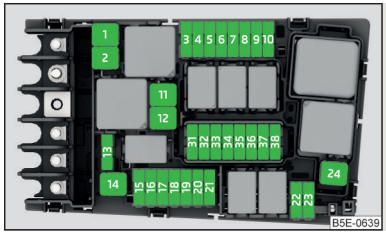


Fig. 329
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 278 first.

No.	Consumer
1	ESC, ABS
2	ESC, ABS
3	Engine control system
4	Radiator fan, oil temperature sensor, air mass meter, valve for fuel pressure control, electric auxiliary heater, oil pressure relief valve, valve for exhaust gas recirculation
5	Ignition coil of CNG relay, fuel injectors, fuel metering valve
6	Brake sensor
7	Coolant pump, radiator shutters, oil pressure valve, gear oil valve
8	Lambda probe
9	Ignition, preheating unit, flue damper, heating the crankcase ventilation
10	Fuel pump, ignition
11	Electrical auxiliary heating system
12	Electrical auxiliary heating system
13	Automatic gearbox
14	Windscreen heater
15	Horn
16	Ignition, fuel pump
17	ABS, ESC, motor control system, Relay for heated windscreen
18	Databus, battery data module

No.	Consumer
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Anti-theft alarm
21	Windscreen heater
22	Engine control system, voltage stabilizer for taxi vehicles
23	Starter
24	Electrical auxiliary heating system
31	Vacuum pump
32	Not assigned
33	Not assigned
34	All-wheel drive
35	Not assigned
36	Not assigned
37	Aux. heating
38	Not assigned

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Bulb arrangement in the front headlights 283
Replacing the bulb for the side light (Halogen headlights) 283
Changing the bulb for main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light 283
Replacing the bulb for the side light (Xenon headlights) 284
Change bulb for fog lights switch - Variant 1 284
Change bulb for fog lights switch - Variant 2 285
Changing the bulb for the licence plate light 285
Removing/installing tail light 286
Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly - Variant 1 286
Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly - Variant 2 287

We recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the low, high or fog beam.

In the case of failure of a Xenon gas discharge bulb or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 252.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 H8 and H15 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Do not carry out any work on the Xenon gas discharge lamps - risk of death!

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle.

Bulb arrangement in the front headlights

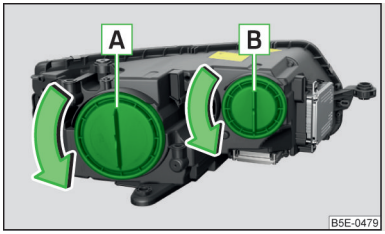


Fig. 330
Left headlight

Read and observe ! and ! on page 282 first.

The vehicle is equipped with headlights with halogen lamps or with a xenon discharge lamp and a halogen bulb.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 330

A Low beam with halogen bulb or Xenon gas discharge bulb

B Main beam, daytime running lights and parking lights/additional parking light

Replacing the bulb for the side light (Halogen headlights)

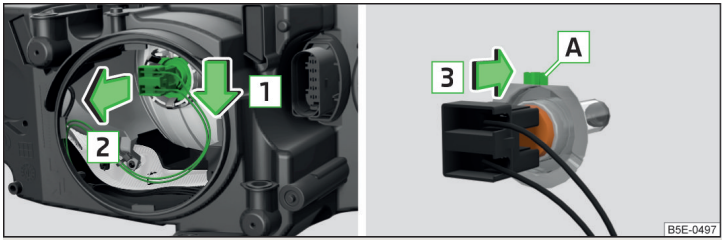


Fig. 331 **Changing the bulb for the low beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 282 first.

› Turn the protective cap A » Fig. 330 *on page 283* in direction of the arrow.
› Disconnect the connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 331.
› Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb so that the fixing lug A » Fig. 331fits the bulb into the recess on the reflector.
› Remove the hook in the direction of arrow 3.
› Insert the protective cap A » Fig. 330 *on page 283* and turn it opposite to the direction of the arrow.

Changing the bulb for main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light



Fig. 332
Changing the bulb for main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light

Read and observe ! and ! on page 282 first.

› Turn the protective cap B » Fig. 330 *on page 283* in direction of the arrow.
› Pull the holder until it stops in the arrow direction 1 » Fig. 332.
› Remove the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn opposite to arrow direction 1 as far as the stop.
› Insert the protective cap B » Fig. 330 *on page 283* and turn it in the direction opposite to the arrow.

Replacing the bulb for the side light (Xenon headlights)

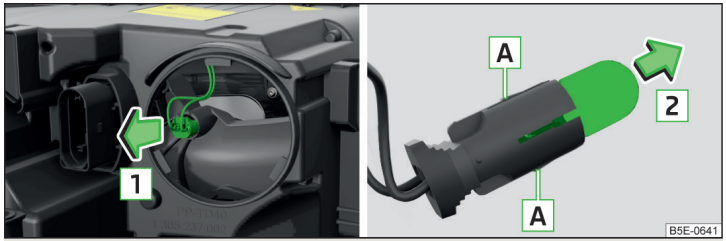


Fig. 333 **Changing the light bulb for the parking light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 282 first.

› Turn the protective cap B » Fig. 330 *on page 283* in direction of the arrow.
› Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 333.
› Grasp the pedestal with the light bulb in the area A.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Insert a new bulb in the bulb holder up to the stop.
› Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
› Insert the protective cap B » Fig. 330 *on page 283* and turn it in the direction opposite to the arrow.

Change bulb for fog lights switch - Variant 1

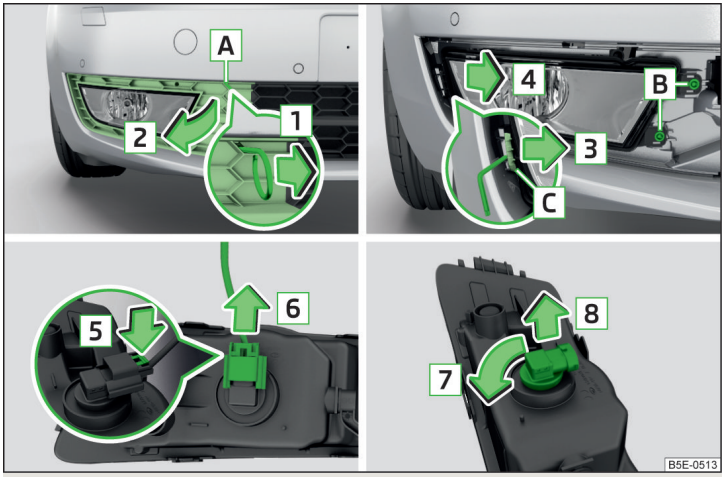


Fig. 334 **Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - variant 1**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 282 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A » Fig. 334.
› By pulling the hook in direction of arrow 1 remove the protective grille in the arrow direction 2 » Fig. 334.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› With the key 2 » page 266, *Vehicle tool kit* unlock the locking C in direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 4.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Turn the socket with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 7.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 8.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 7 as far as the stop.

› Fit the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 334 and tighten.
› Insert the guard and push it gently until it locks into place.

Change bulb for fog lights switch - Variant 2

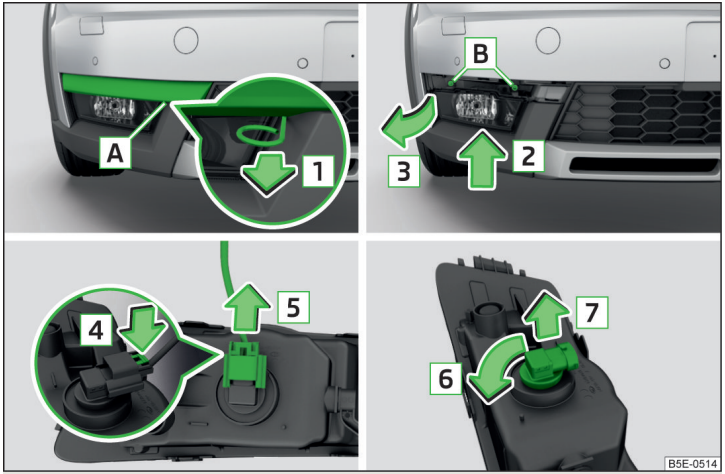


Fig. 335 **Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - variant 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 282 first.

Remove the cover and headlight

› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A » Fig. 335.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 3.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Turn the socket with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 7.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 6 as far as the stop.
› Fit the connector.

Refit the headlight and cover

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 335 and tighten.
› Insert the guard and push it gently until it locks into place.

Changing the bulb for the licence plate light

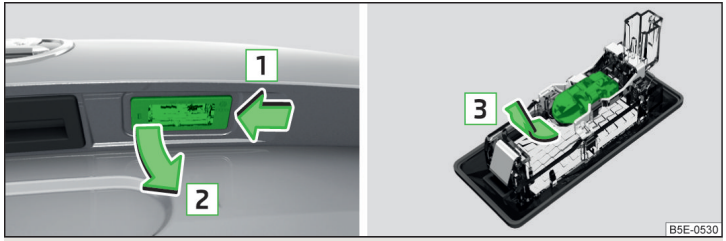


Fig. 336 **Remove the number plate light / replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 282 first.

› Push in the light in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 336until it is detached.
› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Removing/installing tail light

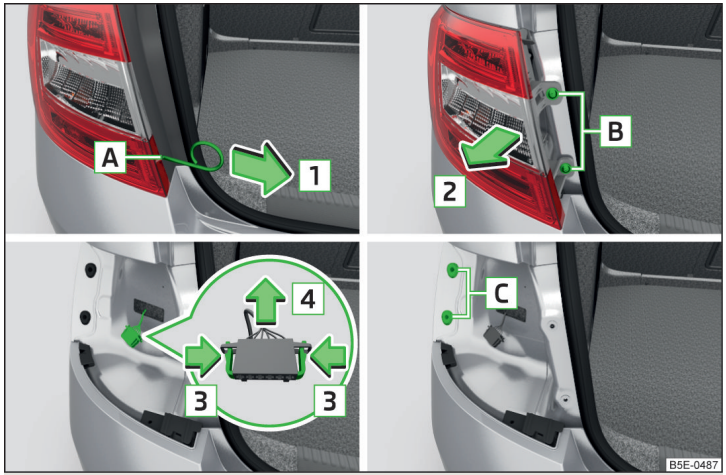


Fig. 337 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 282 first.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A[1] » Fig. 337.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the key from the tool kit.
› Hold the light and carefully remove in the direction of arrow 2.
› Press the latches on the connector[2] in the direction of arrow 3.
› Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow 4.

Fitting

› Insert the connector into the light and lock it securely.
› Insert the lamp with the pin A » Fig. 338 *on page 286* into the recesses C » Fig. 337 in the body.
› Carefully push the cover in » !.
› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover. The cover must engage securely.
› Shut the boot lid.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become stuck between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – or there is a risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly - Variant 1

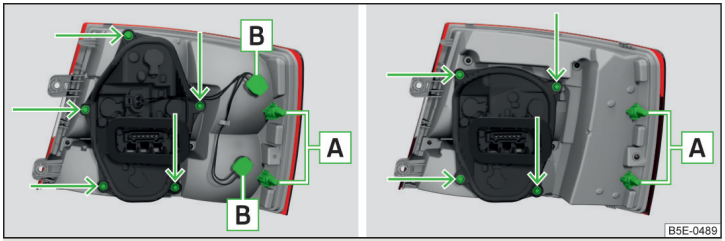


Fig. 338 **Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

[1] The position of the opening may vary depending on the vehicle model.
[2] The design of the plug can vary depending on the vehicle equipment.

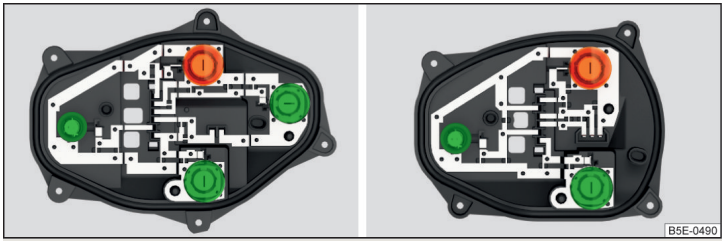


Fig. 339 **Inner part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 282 first.

Outer part of the lamp

› Rotate the version with the light bulb B » Fig. 338 **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the lamp housing.
› Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Replace the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn **in** a clockwise direction to the stop.

Inner part of the light

› Unscrew the lamp holder » Fig. 338 with the screwdriver from the car tool kit, and remove the lamp holder from the light assembly.
› Turn the respective light bulb » Fig. 339 until it stops **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder into the light and screw in.

Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly - Variant 2

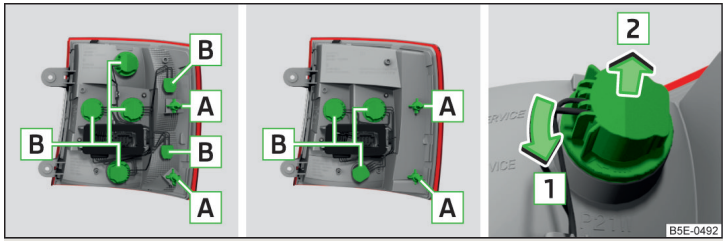


Fig. 340 **Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 282 first.

› Turn the socket with the bulb B in the direction of 1 » Fig. 340.
› Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow 2.
› Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 to the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Basic vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle data ____ 288
Operating weight ____ 289
Payload ____ 291
Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives ____ 291
Dimensions - Octavia ____ 292
Dimensions - Octavia estate ____ 293
Track gauge front/rear ____ 294
Departure angle ____ 295

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The performance values listed were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The values given have been determined in accordance with regulations and in conditions prescribed by legal or technical provisions for determining the operating and technical data of vehicles.

The values listed are for the basic model without optional equipment.

Vehicle data

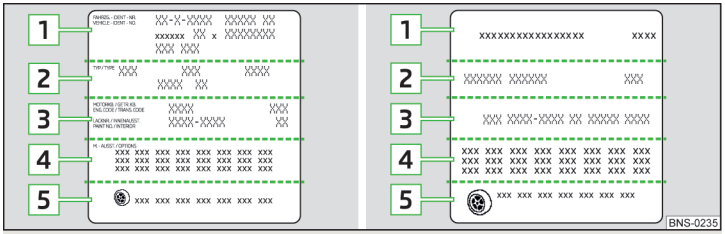


Fig. 341 **Vehicle data sticker**

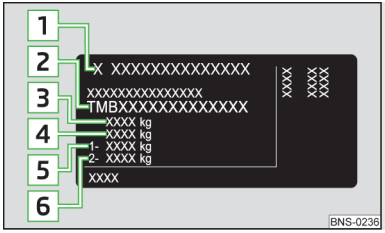


Fig. 342
Type plate

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data carrier» Fig. 341 is affixed in the instructions and under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Approved tyre diameter in inches[1)]

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

The approved tyres and rim sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.

Rating plate
The type plate » Fig. 342 is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right-hand driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.
1 Vehicle manufacturers
2 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
3 Maximum permissible gross weight
4 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
5 Maximum permissible front axle load
6 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

The VIN number can also be displayed in the Infotainment menu CAR → ⚙ → service.

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents, field 17.

Maximum permissible trailer weight
The listed maximum allowable trailer weight is only valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight

This value is only a guide value and corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without any equipment added that would also increase the weight (e.g. air conditioning, emergency or spare wheel etc.). It also includes a weight allowance for the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight - Octavia

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l./85 kW TSI	MG	1225
	DSG	1250
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1225
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1394
	DSG	1419
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG (EU5)	1250
	MG (EU6)	1255
	DSG (EU4, EU5)	1265
	DSG (EU6)	1270
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1210
	AG	1250
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG (EU4, EU5)	1315
	MG (EU6)	1320/1315[a)]
	DSG 4x4	1428
	DSG (EU4, EU5)	1330
	DSG (EU6)	1335/1330[a)]
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1305
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	MG5	1305
	MG6	1280
	MG 4x4	1413
	DSG	1320

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1325
	DSG	1345
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1332
	MG 4x4	1438
	DSG	1352
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1463

[a] Only valid for some countries.

Operating weight - Octavia RS

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	MG	1420
	DSG	1440
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	MG	1445
	DSG	1465
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	1445
	DSG	1465
	DSG 4x4	1550

Warning triangle – Octavia Combi

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l./85 kW TSI	MG	1247
	DSG	1272
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1247
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1416
	DSG	1441
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG (EU5)	1272
	MG (EU6)	1277
	DSG (EU4, EU5)	1287
	DSG (EU6)	1292
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1232
	AG	1272

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG (EU4, EU5)	1337
	MG (EU6)	1342/1337[a]
	DSG 4x4	1450
	DSG (EU4, EU5)	1352
	DSG (EU6)	1357/1352[a]
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1327
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	MG5	1327
	MG6	1280
	MG 4x4	1435
	DSG	1342
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1347
	DSG	1367
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1354
	MG 4x4	1458
	DSG	1374
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1485

[a] Only valid for some countries.

Operating weight - Octavia Combi RS

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	MG	1442
	DSG	1462
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	MG	1467
	DSG	1487
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	1467
	DSG	1487
	DSG 4x4	1572

Operating weight - Octavia Combi Scout

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1522
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	1505

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	1526
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1559

Note

If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.

- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- The trailer drawbar load with trailer operation (max. 75 kg or 80 kg for vehicles with 4-wheel drive or 56 kg for G-TEC vehicles).

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note

- The emission and fuel consumption figures given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by statutory or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

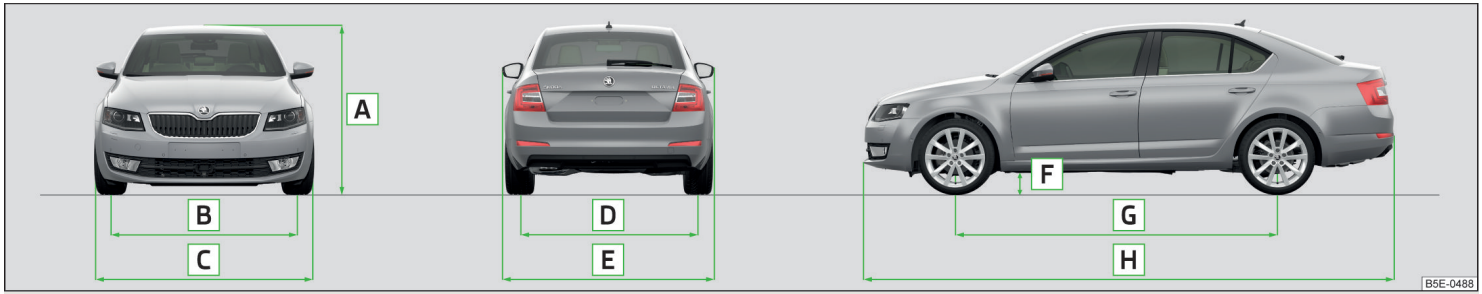


Fig. 343 **Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 343	Specification		Octavia	Octavia 4x4	Octavia RS
A	Height		1461	1460	1449
B	Front track » page 294				
C	Width		1814	1814	1814
D	Rear track » page 294				
E	Width including exterior mirrors		2017	2017	2017
F	Clearance		140	138	128
G	Wheelbase	Basic dimension	2686	2680	2680
		Vehicles with 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine	2680	-	-
		G-TEC vehicles	2680	-	-
H	Length		4659	4659	4685

Dimensions - Octavia estate

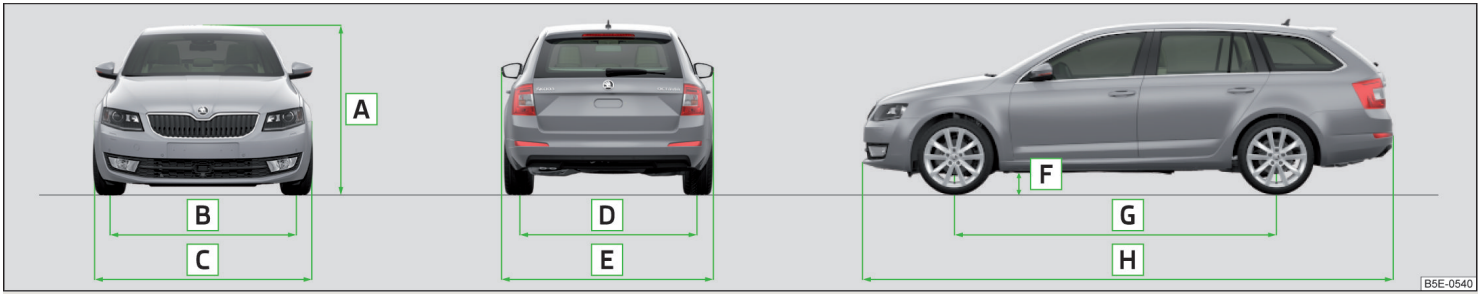


Fig. 344 **Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 344	Specification		Octavia Estate	OCTAVIA Estate 4x4	OCTAVIA Estate RS	Octavia Combi Scout
A	Height		1465	1465	1452	1531
B	Front track » page 294					
C	Width		1814	1814	1814	1814
D	Rear track » page 294					
E	Width including exterior mirrors		2017	2017	2017	2017
F	Clearance		140	139	127	171
G	Wheelbase	Basic dimension	2686	2680	2680	2679
		Vehicles with 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine	2680	-	-	-
		G-TEC vehicles	2680	-	-	-
H	Length		4659	4659	4685	4685

Track gauge front/rear

Engine	Front track	Rear track
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	1549	1520
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	1549	1520
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	1543	1515
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	1543	1514
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	1549	1520
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	1543/1538[a)]	1512/1506[a)]
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	1535	1506
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	1535	1506
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	1549	1520
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	1549/1538[a)]	1520/1518[b)]/ 1506[a)]
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	1543	1514
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	1543/1538[a)]	1514/1506[a)]/ 1512[b)]
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	1535/1538[a)]/ 1543[b)]	1506/1512[b)]

[a)] Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.
[b)] Applies to Octavia 4x4/Octavia Combi 4x4 vehicles.

Departure angle

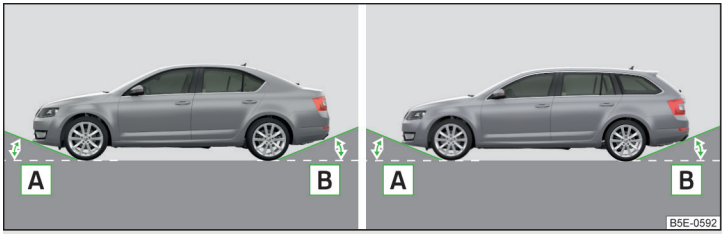


Fig. 345 **Overhang angle: Octavia/Octavia Estate**

Angle » Fig. 345

A Overhang angle, front

B Overhang angle, rear

The overhang angle values indicate the maximum incline of a slope, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without the bumper or underbody making contact with the slope. The values listed correspond to the maximum axle load, front or back.

Departure angle (°) - Octavia

» Fig. 345	Octavia		Octavia 4x4		Octavia RS	
	A	B	A	B	A	B
Basic dimension	14	12.3	14.1	12.4	14.1[a)]	12.8[a)]

a) Only valid for some countries.

Departure angle (°) - Octavia Combi

» Fig. 345	Octavia Estate		OCTAVIA Estate 4x4		OCTAVIA Estate RS		Octavia Combi Scout	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
Basic dimension	13.9	12.2	14.2	12.5	14.1[a)]	12.6[a)]	-	-

a) Only valid for some countries.

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

1.0 l/85 kW TSI engine 296
1.2 ltr. / 63 kW TSI engine 296
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC engine 297
1.4 ltr./110 kW TSI engine 297
1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine 297
1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine 298
2.0 l/162 kW TSI engine 298
2.0 ltr./169 kW TSI engine 298
1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR engine 299
1.6 ltr./81 kW TDI CR engine 299
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR engine 299
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR engine 300
2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI CR engine 300

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The emissions standard is detailed in the technical vehicle documentation as well as in the certificate of conformity (COC document), which can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner[a)].

[a)] Only valid for some countries and some models.

1.0 l/85 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	85/5000-5500			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	200/2000-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3/999			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Gearbox	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	202	202	200	200
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.9	10	10.1	10.2

1.2 ltr. / 63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	63/4300-5300	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	160/1400-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1197	
Body	**Octavia**	**Octavia Estate**
Gearbox	**MG**	**MG**
Top speeds (km/h)	181	178
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12	12.2

1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	81/4800-6000			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	200/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Gearbox	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	195	195	193	193
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.9	11	11	11.1

1.4 ltr./110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	110/5000-6000			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Gearbox	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	219	219	216	216
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.1	8.2	8.2	8.3

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	81/5800			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	155/3800-4000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Gearbox	**MG**	**AG**	**MG**	**AG**
Top speeds (km/h)	192	190	191	188
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	12	10.8	12.2

1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	132 / 5100-6200 (132 / 4500-6200)[a]						
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250 / 1250-5000 (280 / 1350-4500)[a]						
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1798						
Body	**Octavia**			**Octavia Estate**			
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**MG**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4 Scout**
Top speeds (km/h)	231	231	229	229	229	227	216
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.3	7.4	7.4	7.4	7.5	7.5	7.8

[a] Applies to 4x4 vehicles.

2.0 l/162 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	162/4500-6200			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	350/1500-4400			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984			
Body	**Octavia RS**		**Octavia Combi RS**	
Gearbox	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	248	245	244	242
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.8	6.9	6.9	7.1

2.0 ltr./169 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	169/4700-6200			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	350/1500-4600			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984			
Body	**Octavia RS**		**Octavia Combi RS**	
Gearbox	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	250	249	247	245
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.7	6.8	6.8	7

1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	66/2750-4800	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	230/1400-2700	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598	
Body	**Octavia**	**Octavia Estate**
Gearbox	**MG**	**MG**
Top speeds (km/h)	186	183
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.2	12.3

1.6 ltr./81 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	81/3200-4000								
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1500-3000								
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598								
Body	**Octavia**				**Octavia Estate**				
Gearbox	**MG5**	**MG6**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**	**MG5**	**MG6**	**MG 4x4**	**MG 4x4 Scout**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	197	206	193	197	194	204	191	187	194
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	10.6	11.3	10.7	10.8	10.7	11.5	11.7	10.9

2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	105/3500-4000			
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	320/1750-3000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Gearbox	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	215	212	213	210
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	8.9	8.7	9

2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	110/3500-4000						
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	320 / 1750-3000 (340 / 1750-3000)[a]						
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968						
Body	**Octavia**			**Octavia Estate**			
Gearbox	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**MG 4x4 Scout**	**DSG**
Top speeds (km/h)	218	215	215	216	213	207	213
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.5/8.4[a]	8.5	8.6/8.5[a]	8.6/8.5[a]	8.6	9.1	8.7/8.6[a]

[a] Applies to cars with the EU6 emission standard.

2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	135/3500-4000								
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	380/1750-3250								
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968								
Body	**Octavia**				**Octavia Estate**				
Transmission	**MG RS**	**DSG RS**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4 RS**	**MG RS**	**DSG RS**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4 Scout**	**DSG 4x4 RS**
Top speeds (km/h)	232	230	228	228	230	228	226	219	224
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.9	7.9	7.1	7.6	8	8	7.2	7.8	7.7

Index

A

A2DP/AVRCP 153
Abort route guidance 181
ABS
Operation 201
Warning light 34
ACC 214
Settings in Infotainment 214
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 242
Accessories 240
Active steering assist (DSR) 202
Adaptive Chassis Control
Warning light 40
Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC) 221
Adaptive cruise control
Set/change desired speed 217
Warning light 33, 40
Adaptive Cruise Control 214
automatic stopping and starting 215
Malfunctions 218
Operation 215
Operation overview 216
Overtaking 218
Radar sensor 199
Set the clearance level 217
Settings in Infotainment 214
Special driving conditions 217
Start control 216
Stop/resume control 216
Trailer towing 218
Adaptive headlight
see xenon headlight 66
Additional keyboard languages 123, 130
Additional windows
Manoeuvre 180
Adjusting
Steering wheel 13
Adjusting seats manually 76
Adjusting the seats 12
Advice on tyre/wheel usage 260
AHL
see xenon headlight 66
Air-conditioning system
Air outlet vents 108
air bag 18
Airbag
Adjustments and impairments to the airbag system 241
Deactivation 21
Deployment 19
Warning light 35
Airbag system 18
Air conditioning 104
Air distribution control 107
Climatronic 105
Manual air conditioning 105
Air distribution control 107
Air outlet vents 108
Alarm 55
Trailer 239
All-year tyres 263
Alphanumeric keyboard 117
Alternative routes 128
Android Auto 166
Connection establishment 166
Disconnection 166
Home Page 166
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 201
Anti-theft alarm system 55
Trailer 239
Anti-theft wheel bolts 268
APN 124
Apple CarPlay 167
Connection establishment 167
Disconnection 167
Main menu 167
Armrest
Front 79
Rear 80
Ashtray 91
Assembling the
bar ball, Step 1 232
bar ball, Step 2 233
Assist systems 199
AT THE 133
Audio source 139
Auto check control 42
Automatic consumer shutdown 258
Automatic drive
Selector lever 194
Automatic driving light control 66
Automatic gearbox
Disengage selector lever 195
Kickdown 196
Launch control 196
Malfunction 37
Manual shifting on the multifunction steering wheel 195
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 277
Selector lever lock 195
Start and drive 196
Tiptronic 195
Warning light 37
Automatic transmission 194
AUX 85, 141
Settings 126
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 108
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 198

B

ball bar
ready position 232

Ball head
Check fitting 233
Ready position 231
Battery
Change in key 275
Replace the battery in the remote control in the auxiliary heating 275
Belts 15
Belt tensioners 17
Bluetooth
A2DP / AVRCP 124
Name 124
on / off 124
Paired external devices 124
rSAP 155
Set 131
set to 124, 126
Set to 124
Switch on/off 131
Update 122, 125
Updates 131
Visibility 124, 131
Bluetooth Player 141
Bluetooth profile 153
Bluetooth® update 153
Bonnet
Close 253
Open 253
Boot
Class N1 vehicles 100
see boot lid 56
Stow roof rack 103
Boot lid 57
Automatic locking 57
Open/close 58
Open/Close 56
Brake Assist (HBA) 202
Brake booster 191
Brake fluid 257
Check 257
specification 257
Brake linings
warning light 36
Brake pads
new 191
Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)
Warning light 37
Brakes
Brake booster 191
Brake fluid 257
Braking and stabilisation systems 200
Handbrake 192
Information on braking 191
Run in 196
Warning lights 33
Brake system 200
Breakdown call 157
Breakdown kit 270
Broadcasting 133
See main menu 133
Bulbs
Replacing 282
Button in driver's door
Electric windows 60

C

Call list
Call list 159
Camera
See reversing camera 207
CAR 187
Car battery
Automatic consumer shutdown 258
Check condition 259
Cover 259
Disconnecting and reconnecting 260
Replacing 260
Winter operation 259
CAR button 187
Car care
Exterior 245, 247
Interior 247
Car cleaning
Exterior 247
Windscreens 247
Car computer
see multifunction display 44
Care and maintenance 240
Cargo element 99
CAR menu 187
Car washing 244
Interior 247
washing 244
CD 139
Central locking 51
Problems 55
Central locking button 53
Change
battery 275
Changing
Windscreen wiper blades 278
Changing a wheel 266
Changing 266
Changing gear
Selector lever 194
Tiptronic 195
Changing wheels
Wheels 266
Charging a vehicle battery 259
Check
Brake fluid 257
Engine oil 256
Fit ball head properly 233
Oil level 256
Checking
Battery status 259
Coolant 257

Checks
Statutory checks 240
Children and safety 22
Child safety lock 54
Child seat 22
Classification 24
Fitting 25
Installation location 24
in the passenger seat 24
ISOFIX 25
on the front passenger seat 23, 24
TOP TETHER 26
Cigarette lighter 91
Clear calls 126
Climatronic 104
air distribution control 107
Automatic operation 107
Operate in Infotainment 106
Operating elements 105
Clothes hook 88
CNG 252
Gas gauge 31
Gas leaks 252
In an accident 252
Refuel 251
Regular checks 252
Sticker 252
Warning light 37
cockpit 29
Cockpit
Lighting 69
Comfort flashing 65
COMING HOME 68
Compartments 82
Compatible sources
DVD video 146
Pictures 145
Component protection 241
Compressed natural gas
see CNG 252
Computer
see multifunction display 44
Conditions for pairing 152
Conference call 160
Configuration wizard 118
Convenience operation
Tilting / sliding sunroof 62
Window 61
Coolant 256
Checking 257
Refilling 257
Temperature display 31
Warning light 38
CORNER
See Fog lights with CORNER function 68
Correct routing of seat belt 16
Correct seated position 12
Correct seating position 14
Crew Protect Assist 223
Cruise control 212
Warning light 37
Cruise Control System 212
Cup holders 85
Custom destination 175

D

DAB 133
Additional information 133
Radio Text and image presentation 133
Set 125, 132
DAB slideshow 133
Data connection 164
Data roaming 124
Data transfer of external devices 119
Date 123, 130
DAY LIGHT
See Daytime running lights 65
Daytime running lights 65
DCC 221
Warning light 40
De-icing the windscreen and rear window 71
Deactivation
Airbag 21
Default settings 187
Delayed locking of the boot lid
See boot lid 57
Delete destination 179
Demo mode 129, 180
Departure angle 295
destination
Search for 171
Destination
Custom destination 175
Enter destination using the address 172
entered in map 173
Favourite 174, 179
final destinations 173
Flagged destination 174
Home address 174
Image with GPS 176
Memory 179
Saved destination 174
Telephone contact 174
vCard 174
Destination details 179
Destination management
Destination details 179
Favourite 179
Storage 179
Destination memory 174
Detail of the traffic report 186
Diesel 250
Diesel fuel 250
Diesel particle filter (DPF) 39
Digital Clock 42
Digital radio reception
Set 132

Digital Service Plan 244
Dipped beam 64
Dipstick 256
display
natural gas supply 31
Petrol / diesel storage 31
Display
Cardinal points 41
Coolant temperature 31
Gear changes 42
In the instrument cluster 41
Service intervals 48
Display MAXI DOT 46
Disposal
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 242
Distance warning 219
Warning light 40
Diverting calls 126
Door
Child safety lock 54
Emergency locking 276
Emergency locking of the driver's door 276
Opening/ Closing 54
Door warning 41
double hooks 96
Drive
Driving through water 198
DriveGreen 197
Driving
Emissions 291
Fuel consumption 291
Maximum speed 296
through water 198
Driving data
Show 45
Driving mode 221
Adaptive Chassis Control (DCC) 221
Comfort 222
Eco 221
Individual 222
Individual mode settings 223
Mode selection and Infotainment display 223
Normal 222
Offroad 222
Sports 222
Driving Mode Selection 221
DSR 202
DVD 139
DVD video
Compatible sources 146
Supported file formats 146
Dynamic Road Sign Display
Additional display 228
Operation 227
Dynamic route
switch on / off 186

E

Economical driving 197
ECO TIP 41
Eco tips 41
Edit route 181
EDS 201
Electrical boot lid
set the top position of the lid 58
Electric boot lid
Force limiter 57
Manual operation 57
Open/close 58
Electric power windows 59, 61
Malfunctions 61
Electric tailgate
Malfunctions 58
Electric Windows
Button in driver's door' 60
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL, XDS) 201
Electronic immobiliser 188
Elevation 169
emergency
Jump-starting 272
Starting the engine / stopping at the push of a button 190
Emergency
Hazard warning light system 68
Jump-starting 272
Lever-release 277
Starting the engine / stopping the push of a button 189
Towing the using the tow hitch 275
Towing the vehicle 273
Tyre repair 270
Unlocking/locking the door 276
Unlocking / locking the door 276
Emergency call 157
Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 265
First aid kit 265
Jack 266
Reflective vest 265
Vehicle tool kit 266
Warning triangle 265
Emergency spare
Removing / stowing 267
Emission control system 35
Emissions 291
Engine
Information messages 38
Run in 196
Engine compartment 252
Brake fluid 257
Coolant 256
Engine oil 255
Overview 254
Vehicle battery 258
Windscreen washer fluid 254
Engine drag torque control (MSR) 201
Engine number 288

Engine oil 255
Check 256
Oil changing 255
Refilling 256
Specification 255
Warning light 38
Enter destination
Address 172
Destination on the map 173
Environment monitoring system
Settings in Infotainment 219
EPC 35
Equalizer 122
ESC
ESC Sport 200
Operation 200
Warning light 34
External device data transfer 123
External module
CD / DVD 139
SD card 140
SIM card 154
Video DVD 145

F

Factory settings 124, **131**
Fastening elements 94
Fatigue detection 228
Favourite 174, 179
file formats
media 142, 143
Requirements and Restrictions 142, 143
File formats
DVD video 146
Pictures 145
Films 245
Finish route guidance 181
Fire extinguisher 265
First aid kit 265
Flagged destination 174
Flashing 65
Floor covering in the luggage compartment 96
Flooring in the luggage compartment 96
Floor mats 194
See Floor mats 194
FM 133
Set 125, 131
Fog lights
Warning light 37
Fog lights/rear fog light 67
Fog lights with CORNER function 68
Force limiter
Electric boot lid 57
Sliding/tilting roof 62
Window 60
Front assist
Warning light 40
Front Assist 219
Deactivation/activation 220
Distance warning 219
Malfunctions 221
Operation 219
Radar sensor 199
Settings in Infotainment 219
Warning and automatic braking 220
Warning light 40
Front seats 76
fuel
Gas gauge 31
Gasoline / Diesel gauge 31
Fuel 248
Diesel 250
refer to Fuel 248
Refuel CNG 251
Refuelling 249
Unleaded petrol 249
Warning light 36
Fuel consumption 291
Fuel filter
Information messages 40
Fuel options 129
Fuel reserve
Petrol diesel 36
Function surfaces 116
Fuses 278
in the engine compartment 281
in the switchboard 279, 280
Plastic clip 281

G

Gas station 173
Gearbox
Information messages 37
Gear change
Gear recommendation 42
Information on the selected gear 42
Gear changing
lever 193
Genuine parts 241
Glasses compartment 87
GPS 169
Graphical driving recommendations 180
Guarantee 5

H

Handbrake 192
Warning light 33
Hazard warning light system 68
HBA 202
Headrests 80
Heating 104, 105
Air distribution control 107
Mirrors 74
Seats 81
Windscreen and rear window 71
HHC 202
High-beam assistant 67

High beam assistant
Warning light 39
Hill Start Assist (HHC) 202
hitch 235
Hitch 230
home address 128
Home address 174
Home Page
Android Auto 166
Hook 96
horn 29

I

I-PAD holder 92
Ignition lock 189
Images
Display 126
Main menu 144
Operation 144
safe removal of the data source 124
Select Image Source 144
Set to 126
Image viewer 144
Immobiliser 188
Import contacts 126, 132
Import destinations 175
Import my destinations 175
In an emergency
Changing a wheel 266
Inertia reels 17
Information about the towing process 273
Information call 157
Information system 41
Auto Check Control 41
Door alarm 41
Eco tips 41
Gear recommendation 42
Lap timer 47
MAXI DOT display 46
Multifunction display 44
Service interval display 48
Stop watch 47
Infotainment
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 110
connect to the telephone 152
Restart 117
Software update 122
Infotainment display
Driving data 45
Infotainment Hotspot 163
Infotainment language 123, 130
Infotainment menu
CAR 187
Media (video) 145
Sound 122
Infotainment menus 118
Infotainment operation 116
Infotainment screen 116
Infotainment operation using an application in the external device 119
Infotainment screen 123, 130
Areas 116
Important information 115
keyboard 117
Maintenance 115
Operation 116
Input screen
Language characters 130
Input screen with keyboard 117
Instrument cluster 30
Auto check control 42
Warning lights 32
interior light 69, 70
Interior monitor 56
Intermediate target 179
ISOFIX 25

J

Jack 266
Jukebox 141
Jump-starting 272

K

KESSY
Unlocking / locking 52
key
Starting / stopping the engine 189
Switch on/off ignition 189
Key
Change battery 275
Lock 51
Unlock 51
keyboard 117

L

L-band 126
Lamp failure
Warning light 39
Lamps
Warning light 39
Lane Assist
Malfunctions 226
See lane departure warning 224
Settings in Infotainment 225
Warning light 36
Lane Departure Warning 224
Activation / deactivation 226
Operation 225
Settings in Infotainment 225
Lane recommendation 180
Language characters 123
Lap timer 47
Last destinations 173
Latitude 169
LEAVING HOME 68

Lever
ACC 216
Cruise control 213
Front Assist 220
Operation of the information system 43
Turn signal/main beam 65
Windscreen wipers 72, 73
Liability for defects 5
light
High-beam assistant 67
Light 64
Cockpit 69
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 68
Daytime running lights 65
Flash 65
Fog lights/rear fog light 67
Fog lights with CORNER function 68
Hazard warning light system 68
Headlight cleaning system 73
Parking light 68
Replacing bulbs 282
Turn signal/main beam 65
Xenon headlight 66
Light Assist
See high-beam assistant 67
Lighting
Entry space 69
Interior lighting 69
Luggage compartment 93
Lights
Abroad 69
Automatic driving light control 66
Dipped beam 64
Headlight range control 64
Parking lights 64
Switching on and off 64
Warning lights 32
List
of available stations 134
of telephone contacts 158
With folder / track list 138
List of paired external devices 153
List of traffic reports 185
Load 291
Lock
Individual settings 53
KESSY 52
Key 51
Locking
Central locking button 53
in case of emergency 276
Remote control 52
Lock steering lock 188
Long cargo channel 89
Longitude 169
Luggage compartment 93
Compartment with cargo element 99
Cover 97
Fastening elements 94
Fastening the flooring 96
Fixing nets 95
Floor covering on both sides 96
foldable hook 96
Folding double hooks 96
Lighting 93
Net on the luggage compartment cover 97
Net partition 102
Roll-up cover 98
Storage compartments under the floor covering 99
unlock manually 276
Unlock the boot lid 276
Variable loading floor 100
Luggage compartment cover 97
Roll-up cover 98
Luggage storage
Multi-function pocket 100

M

Main beam 65
Warning light 37
Main menu
Apple CarPlay 167
CAR 187
Images 144
Media 136
Media Command 147
MirrorLink® 168
Navigation 170
Radio 133
SmartLink 165
SMS 161
Video DVD 145
Waypoint mode 183
Manage favourites 132
Manage Favourites 126
Manage memory 128
Managing paired devices 153
Managing saved routes 183
Manoeuvre
Graphical driving recommendations 180
Nav. announcements 181
Manoeuvring 205
Manual air conditioning
Air distribution control 107
Controls 105
Manual gear changing
See Gear changing 193
Map
Automatic scale 177
Display 170
Display of traffic signs 128
Display options 176
Display options in the split screen 178
Fast Map 177
Lane guidance 128
Main menu 170
Manual scale 177
Map alignment 178
Operation 170
POI display 128

Road sign 178
Show POI 176
|Alignment 177
MAXI DOT
See MAXI DOT display 46
MAXI DOT display
Assist systems menu item 47
Audio menu item 46
Lap timer 47
Main menu 46
Navigation menu item 46
Operation 43
Stop watch 47
Telephone menu item 47
Maximum speed 296
MCB 202
Mechanical window lifter
open/close 59
media
Compatible sources 142, 143
file formats 142, 143
Requirements and Restrictions 142, 143
Media
Audio source 139
AUX 85, 141
Bluetooth Audio 141
Browser 138
CD / DVD 139
Foreword 136
Jukebox 141
List 138
Main menu 136
Multimedia database 139
Operation 136
Playback operation 137
safe removal of the data source 124
Safe removal of the data source 130
SD card 140
Select audio source 137
Settings 126
Set to 132
USB 85, 140
Voice control 119
WLAN 142
Media Command
Control 148
Main menu 147
Supported formats 148
Memory 45
Memory Function for the seat 77
Menu
Setup 122, 130
Mirror 73
Vanity 71
MirrorLink® 167
Connection establishment 168
Disconnection 168
Function issues 168
Main menu 168
Operation 168
MODE button
See driving mode 221
Modes of the automatic transmission 194
Modifications and technical alterations 240
Most common routes 181
MSR 201
Multi-function pocket 100
Multi-media
AUX 141
Multicollision brake (MCB) 202
Multifunction display
Data 44
Functions 44
Memory 45
Multifunction pocket 95
Multifunction steering wheel 43
Multimedia
USB 140
Multimedia database 139
Multimedia holder 86
Mute 118
My destinations 175
My POIs 175

N

N1 100
Nameplate 288
Natural gas operation
Warning light 37
navigation
Map orientation 177
Start the route guidance 179
Navigation
Abort route guidance 181
Advanced settings 129
Alternative routes 128
Contacts 174
Demo mode 129, 180
Destination address 172
Destination details 179
Destination memory 174
Destination on the map 173
Destination presentation in the split screen 178
Destination representation 176
Dynamic route 128
Edit route 181
Favourites 174
Final destinations 173
Finish route guidance 181
Foreword 169
Fuel options 129
GPS 169
Graphical driving recommendations 180
Home address 174
Image with GPS 176
Import destination 175
Imported destinations 128
Intermediate target 179
Main menu 170

Manage memory 128
Map 128
Map alignment 178
Map scale 177
Most common routes 181
My destinations 175
Navigation data 170
nav. announcements 129
Nav. announcements 181
Options for map display 176
Options for map display in the split screen 178
Preferred type of route 128
Route 179
Route calculation 179
Route change 182
Route details 181
Route display 176
Route display in the split screen 178
Route guidance 179
Route information 181
Route list 183
Route options 128
Search for destination 171
Set to 128
Split screen 171
Status line 129
Top speeds 129
Traffic jam ahead 186
Traffic reports (TMC) 185
Trailer towing 180
Transit point 182
Update navigation data 170
Update the navigation data 129
Version information 129
Voice control 119
Waypoint mode 183
Navigation data 170
nav. announcements 129
Nav. announcements 181
Net partition 102
Nets 95, 97
Network
Data connection 124
Data roaming 124
Set 124
set to 126
Values of the downloaded data 124
New route 183
NGVs
see CNG 252

O

OFF ROAD 203
ABS 204
ASR 204
EDS 204
ESC 204
Hill Descent Assistant 203
Operation 203
OFF ROAD mode 203
Warning light 40
oil
see Engine oil 256
Oil
Information messages 38
Oil changing
Engine oil 255
On-board computer
see multifunction display 44
Online Owner's Manual 8
Operating weight 289
Operation
Images 144
Media 136
MirrorLink® 168
Radio 133
Telephone 151
Original accessories 241
overview
cockpit 29
Overview
Engine compartment 254
Fuses 278
Warning lights 32
Own POI categories 175

P

Pairing process 153
Park 205
Parking aid 204
Park assist
Parking 211
Park Assist 209
Automatic brake assist 212
Leaving a parallel parking space 211
Malfunctions 212
Operation 209
Search for parking space 210
Parking 193
Park Assist 209
Reversing camera 207
Parking aid 204
Automatic system activation when moving forward 207
Operation 205
Parking assistance
Activation / deactivation 206
Parking lights 64
Parking sensors
Display Infotainment screen 206
Settings in Infotainment 205
Parking spot 173
Parking the vehicle
see Parking 193
ParkPilot 204
Settings in Infotainment 205
Parts replacement 240

Passive safety
Before setting off 12
Driving safety 12
Passive Safety 12
Pedals 194
Floor mats 194
Personalisation
Configuration wizard 118
Personal POIs 175
Petrol 249
Petrol station logo 128
Phone
Bluetooth® update 153
Compatibility 153
Introductory information 149
rSAP 155
Voice control 119
Phonebox 84
Phone compatibility 153
Phone Premium
SIM card 154
Pictures
Compatible sources 145
File formats 145
Requirements and restrictions 145
Supported file formats 145
Pin code
set to 126
Playback
Video DVD 145
Plsyback
Media 137
Pockets 88
Pockets in the luggage compartment 95
POI 175
Choose on the map 176
Import 175
My POIs 175
Tap on the map 176
Pop-up window
Map 178
Positioning the
jack 269
Power limit
Tilt / slide sunroof 62
Power steering 33
Power windows
Button in the front passenger door 60
Button in the rear doors 60
Practical features
Pockets 88
Seat backrest with long cargo channel 89
Storage compartment for umbrella 87
Waste container 85
Preferred contacts 159
Preheating unit 35
Principles of Infotainment operation 116
Proactive passenger protection 223
Warning light 35

R

Rack 103
Radiator shutters 198
radio
Select station 133
Radio
Broadcasting 133
DAB - settings 132
DAB settings 125
FM - settings 125, 131
L-band 126
List of available stations 134
Main menu 133
Operation 133
Preface 133
Radio station logo 135
Save station 135
Scan 133
Search stations 133
set to 125, 131
Station buttons 135
Traffic program (TP) 136
Voice control 119
Radio station logo 135
Radio station logos
Update 125
Radio stations
Choose 133
Logo 135
Save station 135
Search stations 133
Select station 133
Station buttons 135
Raising the vehicle 269
Rear fog light 67
Warning light 34
Rear seats 79
Rear view mirror 73
Rear window - heating 71
Record waypoints 184
Refilling
Coolant 257
Engine oil 256
Windscreen washer fluid 254
Reflective vest 265
Refuelling 249
Fuel 249
Regulation
Headlight beam 64
Remote
Change battery 275
Remote control
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 110
Synchronisation process 55
Unlocking/locking the vehicle 52
Remote transfer of SIM data 155
Removable through-loading bag 89

Removing the
bar ball, Step 1 233
bar ball, Step 2 234
Repairs and technical alterations 240
Replace
Battery 275
Replacing
Bulbs 282
Fuses 278
Windscreen wiper blades 277
Restart Infotainment 117
restaurant 173
Rev counter 30
Reversing camera 207
Function surfaces 208
Operation 208
Orientation lines 208
Rims 260
Road sign 178
Roller blind
Luggage compartment cover 98
Roof
Weight 103
Roof rack 103
Route 179
New route 183
Route list 183
Store route 181
Route calculation 179
Trailer towing 180
Route details 181
Route information 181
Route list 183
Route options 128
rSAP 155
Run-in
Engine 196
Running in
Brake pads 191
Tyres 260

S

SafeLock 53
Safe removal of the data source 124, 130
safety
air bag 18
ISOFIX 25
Safety 12
Child safety 22
Child safety seats 22
Correct seated position 12
Headrests 80
ISOFIX 25
TOP TETHER 26
SAFE, SAFELOCK
See SafeLock 53
Save station 135
Saving electrical energy 197
Saving fuel 197
Screen
see Infotainment screen 115
Screen display 116
SD card 140
Safe removal 130
Search for car park 173
Search for destination 171
Search for petrol station 173
Search for restaurant 173
Seat belt
height adjustment 16
Warning light 37
Seat belts 15
Belt tensioners 17
fastening and unfastening 16
Inertia reels 17
Warning light 33
Seat electrical adjustment 77
Seats
Electrical adjustment 77
Folding front passenger seat 78
front 76
Front armrest 79
Headrests 80
Heating 81
Manually adjusting 76
Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat 77
Rear 79
Rear armrest 80
Rear seat backrests 79
Setting 76
Storing in memory of remote control key 78
Seats and head restraint 76
see Instrument cluster
see Instrument cluster 30
Select broadcasting
See main menu 133
Select Image Source
Images 144
Selector lever 194
Selector lever control 194
Selector lever lock
Warning light 37
Select source
Media 137
Select station
See main menu 133
Select video source
Video DVD 145
service 240
Service
Service interval display 48
Warning light 40
Service Interval 243
Service intervals 242
Service Plan 244

Setting
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 109
Headrests 80
Mirror 74
Positions of the variable loading floor 101
Seat belt height 16
Seats 76
settings
Images 126
Infotainment language 123, 130
Infotainment screen 123, 130
Video DVD 126
Settings
Additional keyboard languages 123, 130
Advanced settings 129
AUX 126
Bluetooth 124, 126, 131
Codecs 126
Configuration wizard 118
DAB 125, 132
Data connection 124
Equalizer 122
External device data transfer 123
FM 125, 131
Fuel options 129
Information regarding the version of the navigation data 129
infotainment 122
Infotainment 130
Manage favourites 159
Manage memory 128
Map 128
Media 126, 132
Navigation 128
Nav. announcements 129
Network 124
Pin code 126
Radio 125, 131
Reset to factory settings 124, 187
Restore factory settings 131
Route options 128
SmartLink 128
Software update 122
Software updates 131
Sound 122, 130
Sound system 122
Subwoofer 122
Surround 122
System information 122, 125, 131
Telephone 126, 132
Text messages 126
Time and date 123, 130
Top speeds 129
Units 123, 130
Update software 125
User profile 159
Vehicle 187
Voice control 124
Volume 118
WLAN 124
Settings Call 126
Setting the
Clock 42
Setup 122, 130
Show POIs on the map 176
SIM card
Change PIN code 154
Data connection 164
Insert 154
PIN code 154
Remove 154
Sliding/tilting roof
Activating operation of the sunshade 63
SmartGate
connection using Wi-Fi direct 49
Connection via Wi-Fi 49
introductory information 48
Password/PIN code change 50
Setting 50
SmartLink
Android Auto 166
Apple CarPlay 167
Main menu 165
MirrorLink® 167
Set to 128
SMS 161
New 161
Operation 161
Received 162
Snow chains 263
sockets
12-volt power socket in the luggage compartment 90
12-volt socket in the interior 90
Sockets
230 V 90
Software update 122
Software Update 125
Software updates 131
Sound 122, 130
Sound system 122
Spare wheel 262
Removing / stowing 267
Speed limitations 180
Speed symbol 263
Split screen
Audio 171
Compass 171
Manoeuvre 171
Map 171
Menus 171
Most frequent routes 171
Satellite data 171
Turn on/off 171
Waypoint tour 171
Spoiler 241
SSID 124
Stabilisation system 200
Stability Control (ESC) 200

START-STOP 190
Jump-starting 272
manually activate/ deactivate system 191
Operation 190
Warning light 39
START-STOP system 190
Start engine
Immobiliser 188
Jump-starting 272
Starter button
Lock / unlock the steering lock 188
Problems with the engine start 190
Starting / stopping the engine 189
Switch on/off ignition 189
Starting engine
Jump-starting 272
Starting the engine
Key 189
Starter button 189
Start the route guidance 179
Station
See main menu 133
Station logos
Update 122
status line
Navigation 129
Status line 116, 170
Telephone 151
Steering lock (KESSY system)
Warning light 33
Steering wheel
Buttons 43
Proper posture 13
Setting 13
Stopping
see Parking 193
Stopping the engine
Key 189
Starter button 189
Stop watch 47
Storage 82
Storage compartment
Glasses compartment 87
in the front centre console 84
in the rear centre console 88
on the driver's side 83
on the front passenger side 87
under the front arm rest 86
Storage compartments 82
Stored destinations
Destination memory 174
Final destinations 173
Store destination 179
Storing
seats 77
Storing skis 89
Stowage
compartments in the doors 83
Subwoofer 122
Sunblind for the tilt / slide sunroof 63
Sun visors 71
Supported sources
media 142, 143
Surround 122
Switch
Car battery 260
Switching the lights on and off 64
Switch off
Alarm 55
Switch off ignition 189
Key 189
Switch on ignition 189
Key 189
System information 122, 125, 131

T

Tablet holder 92
Tailgate 56
TCS
Deactivate/activate 201
Function 201
Warning light 34
TCS - off
Warning light 34
Technical data 288
telephone
conditions for pairing 152
Telephone
Additional telephone 149
Adjust text messages 126
Bluetooth profile 153
Breakdown call 157
Call list 159
Clear calls 126
Conference call 160
Connection types 149
Connect to Infotainment 152
Dialling the telephone number 157
Diverting calls 126
Emergency call 157
Enter telephone number 157
Functions 157
Import contacts 126, 132
Information service 157
Main menu 151
Main telephone 149
Manage favourites 132
Manage Favourites 126
Operation 151
Pair 152
Pairing process 153
Preferred contacts 159
Premium 126
rSAP 149
Set 132
Settings call 126
set to 126
SIM card 149

Swing Main menu 151
Telephone 151
Telephone book 158
Telephone call 160
Text messages (SMS) 161
User profile 126, 132
Voicemail 157
Telephone book 158
Telephone call 160
Telephone connection types 149
Telephone functions 157
Telephone number 157
Telephone Premium
rSAP 155
Text messages 161
New 161
Received 162
Through-loading bag 89
Ticket holder 83
Tilt / slide sunroof
Activate operation 62
Operation 62
Sunblind 63
Time 42, 123, 130
Tiptronic 195
Tire
Wear indicator 262
TMC
Detail of the traffic report 186
dynamic route 186
List of traffic reports 185
Requirements 185
TMC (Traffic reports) 185
Tone dialling 160
Tools 266
Top speeds 129
TOP TETHER 26
Touch screen 115
Towing 274
Towing away 273
Towing device
Accessories 235
Description 231
Vertical load 230
Towing eye 274
Towing protection 56
Towing the vehicle 273
Traction control (TCS) 34, 201
Traffic
Detail of the traffic report 186
dynamic route 186
List of traffic reports 185
Requirements 185
Traffic jam ahead 186
Traffic obstruction 186
Traffic program (TP) 136
Traffic reports (TMC)
Detail of the traffic report 186
List of traffic reports 185
Requirements 185
Traffic sign recognition 226
Traffic Sign Recognition
dysfunction 228
Information messages 228
Settings in Infotainment 227
Traffic signs
see Traffic sign recognition 226
Trailer
Connect and disconnect 235
Load 236
loading 236
Trailer operation 239
Trailer operation 239
Trailer stabilisation system (TSA) 202
Trailer towing 230
navigation 180
Transit point 182
Transport
Luggage compartment 93
Roof rack 103
Towing device and trailer 230
Transporting children 22
Triangle 265
TSA 202
Turning off Infotainment 117
Turning on Infotainment 117
Turn signal 65
Turn signal system
Warning light 36
Tyre load capacity 263
Tyre pressure 261
Warning light 35
Tyre pressure monitor
refer to the tyre pressure monitoring 229
Tyre pressure monitoring 229
Warning light 35
Tyre repair 270
Tyres 260
damage 260
Explanation of the label 263
new 260
Tyre pressure 261
Tyre size 263

U

Umbrella
Tray 87
Units 123, 130
Unlatch
KESSY 52
Key 51
Unlock
Individual settings 53

Unlocking
Central locking button 53
In case of emergency 276
Remote control 52
Unlocking and locking 51
Unlock steering lock 188
Update navigation data 170
Update the navigation data 129
USB 85, 140
Safe removal 130
Used vehicles
Acceptance and recycling 242
Useful equipment
230-volt socket 90
Clothes hook 88
Cup holders 85
Glasses compartment 87
Multimedia holder 86
Removable through-loading bag 89
Useful features
Storage compartment 82
Useful Features
12-volt power socket in the luggage compartment 90
12-volt socket in the interior 90
Ashtray 91
Cigarette lighter 91
Reflective vest 265
Ticket holder 83
User account
Configuration wizard 118
User profile 126, 132

V

Variable loading floor 100
vCard 174, 175
Vehicle- settings 187
Vehicle battery
charging 259
Safety instructions 258
Warning light 37
Vehicle care 244
Vehicle cleaning 244
Vehicle condition
See auto check control 42
Vehicle data sticker 288
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate 288
Vehicle dimensions 292, 293
Vehicle height 292, 293
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 288
Vehicle length 292, 293
Vehicle systems 187
Vehicle tool kit 266
Vehicle washing
Exterior 245
Vehicle width 292, 293
Vest 265
Video DVD
Main menu 145
Playback 145
Select video source 145
Set to 126
Video DVD menu 146
Menu 146
Video player 145
VIN
Vehicle Identification Number 288
Visibility 70
Visors 71
Voice control 119
Commands 121
Correction of a voice command input 121
Help 121
Not recognising a voice command 121
on / off 120
Operation principle 120
Settings 124
Stop / restore command 121
Voicemail 157
Volume 118
Volume setting 118

W

Waiter
Voice control 120
Warning at when speeding 45
Warning display low temperature 39
Warning lights 32
Warning symbols
see Warning lights 32
Warning triangle 265
Waste container 85
Water in the fuel filter 40
Waypoint mode 183
Main menu 183
Record waypoints 184
Set waypoint manually 184
Waypoint tour memory 184, 185
Waypoint tour memory 184, 185
Weather conditions 240
Weights 288, 289, 291
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolts 268
Caps 268
Loosening and tightening 269
Wheels 260
Full trim 267
Load Index 263
Snow chains 263
Speed symbol 263
Tyre age 260
Tyre damage 260
Tyre pressure 261
Tyre storage 260

Unidirectional tires 261
Winter tyres 263
Wi-Fi 49
Wi-Fi direct 49
Window
operation 59
Window operation 59
Windscreen
Heating 187
Windscreen - heating 71
Windscreen heating 187
Windscreen washer fluid
Refilling 254
Warning light 39
Windscreen washing systems 72
Windscreen wipers and washers 72
Activation 72
Add fluid 254
Replacing the windscreen wiper blade 278
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 277
Service position of the windscreen wiper arms 277
Winter operation 263
All-year tyres 263
Car battery 259
Diesel fuel 250
Snow chains 263
Winter tyres 263
Winter tyres 263
Wipers and washer
Warning light for windscreen washer fluid level 39
Wipers and washers
Actuate 73
Wipers and Washers
automatic rear window wiper 73
Wiping interval 72
Wireless Internet Hotspot
set to 124
WLAN 142, 163
Client 163
Connect 163
Infotainment Hotspot 163
Search 163
WLAN on / off 163
WPS 124
WLAN client
set to 124
WLAN hotspot 163
WPS 124

X

XDS 201
Xenon headlight 66

Reprinting, duplicating, translating and any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2016

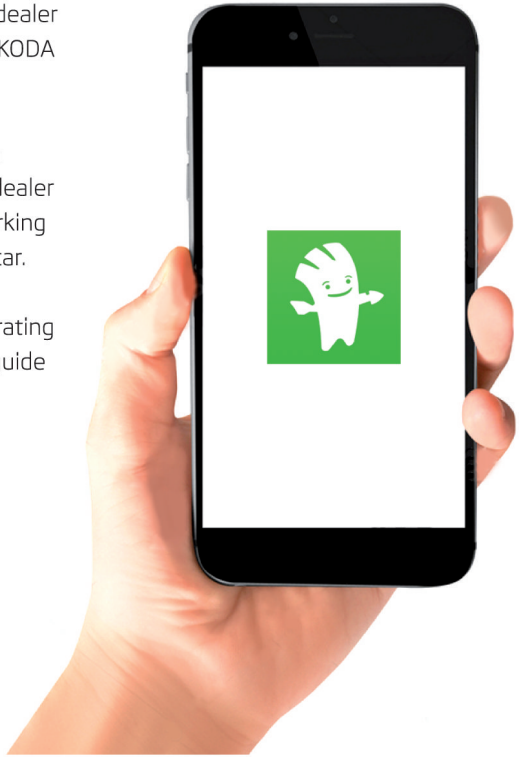
My ŠKODA App – ŠKODA personal assistant in your pocket

My ŠKODA App is provided for smartphones with Android or iOS systems. Its principal task is to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road. With its notification functionalities, the app also will advise its user not to miss important events.

My dealer – Select your preferred dealer and read about its latest offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use Last Parking Position Prediction to locate your car.

My car – Access the complete operating instructions and User's Manual, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.



Get notifications about your car, traffic and weather from PAUL (Personal Assistant U Love). Use Smart Wake Up to make it to your appointments on time.

- Choose an event to attend
- Check when you must leave according to your location and estimated travel time
- Get a graphical overview between start and end points
- Receive notification about changing conditions as your travel is ongoing

Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android

GET IT ON Google play

Available on the App Store

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Octavia anglicky 11.2016
S65.5610.29.20
5E0012720AK

